

8/13/22

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This text is the result of work by members of the Department of Classical Languages at Phillips Exeter Academy over a number of years from 1992 to the present. In addition, many explanations and exercises are drawn directly from, or based on, those in J. Kirtland and G. Rogers' *An Introduction to Latin* (Phillips Exeter Academy Press, 1914). Some readings have been adapted from the following texts: J.C. Kirtland's revision of Ritchie's Fabulae Faciles (Longman's, Green, & Co., 1903); B.L. D'Ooge, Easy Latin for Sight Reading (Ginn & Co., 1897); H.R. Heatley, H.N. Kingdon, & W.C. Collar, Gradatim (Ginn & Co., 1895).

The Department would like to express its thanks to Kathleen Pottle, Alma O'Hearn, and Bridgette Wiksten in the Academy's Document Support Services for their help in producing the text over many years, and to two students, Christoph Birnbaum '07 and William Cioffi '06, whose proofreading of two editions led to the elimination of numerous errors and the addition of useful changes.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Acknowledgments	i
Table of Contents	iii
Introduction Review of English grammar; alphabet & pronunciation	vii
The Latin Language	1
Lesson	
1 Case & number; first declension: nominative, genitive, and accusative; adjective-noun agreement; predicate adjectives and nouns; the verb <i>to be</i> ; est and sunt before subject; word order (<i>Insula Sicilia</i>)	2
2 Person, number, and voice; first conjugation and sum : present active indicative and present infinitive; (<i>A Girl of Sicily</i>)	7
3 Dative case, first declension; indirect object; special adjectives with dative; word order (<i>The Girl's Story</i>)	11
4 Ablative case, first declension; full paradigm of first declension; ablative and accusative with prepositions; complementary infinitive; apposition (<i>The Goddess of the Woods</i>)	14
5 Future active indicative, first conjugation and sum ; imperative mood, first conjugation; vocative case, first declension; double accusative (<i>The Girl and the Goddess, Part 1</i>)	17
6 Perfect active indicative, first conjugation and sum ; ubi with perfect indicative; third principal part (<i>The Girl and the Goddess, Part 2</i>)	21
7 Imperfect active indicative, first conjugation and sum (<i>Minerva, Goddess of War and Web, Part 1</i>)	25
8 Second declension: neuter nouns; gender and adjective-noun agreement; substantive use of adjectives (<i>Minerva, Goddess of War and Web, Part 2</i>)	29
9 Second declension: masculine -us and -er nouns, including vocative case; full declension of bonus , -a , -um (<i>The Wrath of Latona</i>)	34
10 Second declension -er adjectives; declension of vir ; plural of deus (<i>Ceres and Triptolemus</i>)	39
11 Vocative of -ius nouns & meus ; ablative of means; Latin versions of English <i>to</i> ; prepositions with verbs (<i>Ceres and Proserpina</i>)	43
12 Second conjugation: present, imperfect, and future active indicative; infinitive; present imperative (<i>Hippocrates of Gela</i>)	48
13 Passive voice, present tense, first and second conjugations; ablative of agent (<i>The Capitoline Geese</i>)	51
14 Perfect active indicative, second conjugation; third principal part (<i>The Battle of the Gods and Giants</i>)	55
15 Demonstratives hic & ille ; absum & adsum (<i>The Danaids</i>)	59

CONTENTS

16	Interrogative pronoun; questions with num , nōnne , & -ne (<i>Pliny's Letter on the Eruption of Vesuvius</i>)	64
17	Interrogative adjective (<i>Another Story of .Vesuvius</i>)	68
18	Imperfect passive indicative, first and second conjugations; predicate accusative (<i>Romulus and Remus</i>)	71
19	Demonstrative & personal pronoun is , ea , id (<i>Early Kings of Rome</i>)	75
20	Future passive indicative, first and second conjugations; dum with present indicative (<i>The Last Kings of Rome</i>)	79
21	Reflexive Pronoun (<i>Echo and Narcissus</i>)	82
22	Reflexive Adjective; postquam with perfect indicative; review of prepositions (<i>Narcissus and Narcissus</i>)	86
23	Third declension: regular masculine and feminine nouns (<i>The Schoolmaster of Falerum</i>)	89
24	Third declension: regular neuter nouns (<i>Horatius at the Bridge</i>)	92
25	Third declension: i -stem nouns (<i>Another Tale from School</i>)	95
26	Perfect passive participle (<i>The Story of Mucius Scaevola</i>)	99
27	Perfect passive indicative, first and second conjugations (<i>Apollo and Daphne</i>)	104
28	Ablative of accompaniment, ablative of manner, ablative absolute (<i>The First Sicilian Revolt</i>)	109
29	Third conjugation: present active and passive indicative; imperative; irregular imperatives dic , dūc (<i>Alexander's Horse</i>)	114
30	Third- io conjugation: present active and passive indicative; imperative (<i>Daedalus and Icarus</i>)	118
31	Fourth conjugation: present active and passive indicative; imperative; third and fourth conjugation: perfect active and passive indicative (<i>Manlius and the Gaul, Part 1</i>)	121
32	Third and fourth conjugation: imperfect active and passive indicative (<i>Manlius and the Gaul, Part 2</i>)	125
33	Third and fourth conjugation: future active and passive (<i>The Snowstorm</i>)	129
34	Third declension: adjectives of one ending (<i>Theseus and the Minotaur</i>)	133
35	Third declension: adjectives of two and three endings (<i>Orpheus and Eurydice</i>)	137
36	Present and future participles (<i>Amor Omnia Vincit?</i>)	141
37	Regular comparison of adjectives; -rimus and -limus superlatives; comparison with quam ; ablative of comparison; cardinal numerals 1-10 (<i>Niobe the Proud, Part 1</i>)	147
38	Irregular comparison of adjectives and adverbs; declension of plūs (<i>Niobe the Proud, Part 2</i>)	152
39	Relative pronoun (<i>The Judgement of Paris, Part 1</i>)	156

40	Indirect Statement; indirect reflexive (<i>The Judgement of Paris, Part 2</i>)	159
41	Present, future, and perfect infinitives (<i>Iphigenia at Aulis, Part 1</i>)	163
42	Fourth declension (<i>Iphigenia at Aulis, Part 2</i>)	168
43	Personal Pronouns; vōs (<i>The Wrath of Achilles, Part 1</i>)	172
44	Pluperfect active and passive indicative (<i>The Wrath of Achilles, Part 2: The Embassy</i>)	175
45	Irregular verb eō, īre ; ablative of respect (<i>Hector and Achilles, Part 1</i>)	178
46	Fifth declension; accusative of duration of time; ablatives of time when and within which (<i>Hector and Achilles, Part 2</i>)	182
47	Irregular verbs ferō, volō, nōlō (<i>Hector and Achilles, Part 3</i>)	186
48	mīle ; partitive genitive; accusative of extent of space; īdem, quīdam (<i>The Trojan Horse</i>)	190
49	Deponent verbs (<i>The Horse, Sinon, and Laocoön</i>)	195
50	Ipse ; gerund; future active participle with sum (<i>The Sack of Troy, Part 1</i>)	199
51	Possūm ; imperatives of sum ; negative imperative (<i>The Sack of Troy, Part 2</i>)	203
52	Future perfect active and passive; future more vivid condition; quisque (<i>Agamemnon's Return</i>)	206
	 Additional Readings	214
	(<i>Nisus and Scylla, The Fountain of Arethusa, The Flood, The Story of Phaethon, The Abduction of Helen, Priam and Achilles, Orestes' Revenge</i>)	
53	Imperfect subjunctive, active and passive; cum situational and causal clauses; (<i>The Voyage of Odysseus; The Lotus-Eaters</i>)	218
54	Pluperfect subjunctive, active and passive; cum concessive clause; indirect question (<i>The Lotus-Eaters, Continued</i>)	222
55	Adverbial purpose clause; relative purpose clause; dative with special intransitive verbs (<i>The Rescue; The One-Eyed Giant</i>)	227
56	Substantive clause of volition; dative with special compound verbs; (<i>The Giant's Supper; A Desperate Situation</i>)	230
57	Present subjunctive, active and passive; impersonal verbs; sequence of tenses, step 1 (<i>A Plan for Escape</i>)	233
58	Present subjunctive of irregular verbs; adverbial result clause; defective verbs (<i>A Drunken Giant; Vengeance</i>)	237
59	Ablative with special deponent verbs (PUFF V); dative of possession (<i>A Second Trick; And a Third to Escape</i>)	241

CONTENTS

60	“Terrible ten” pronomial adjectives; semi-deponent verbs (<i>Out of Danger?</i> ; <i>The Land of the Winds</i>)	244
61	Gerundive; gerundive expressing purpose (<i>The Sailors’ Folly</i>)	247
62	Passive periphrastic; dative of agent (<i>Another Dangerous Island</i> ; <i>The House of the Enchantress</i>)	250
63	Perfect subjunctive, active and passive; sequence of tenses, step 2 (<i>The Magic Potion</i>)	253
64	Clause of fearing; indirect dependent clause (<i>A Bit of Divine Aid</i> ; <i>Men Again</i> ; <i>On the Sea Again</i>)	257
Appendix I: Forms		263
Appendix II: A Brief Grammar		295
Latin - English Glossary		301
English - Latin Glossary		319
Index		329

INTRODUCTION

LATIN 110 – REVIEW OF THE BASICS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Language is one of the more marvelous and wondrous of human capabilities. Everyone uses language for communication of all sorts (Dr. Doolittle notwithstanding). For the intellectual and sophisticated, language has assumed a set of standards needed to ensure that everyone speaking the same language will be understood by everyone else and that all levels of complex thought can be expressed adequately so as to be comprehensible by all. These standards can be termed by a variety of words. Suffice it to say that syntax and grammar are two of the words which describe the standards applied to intelligent, comprehensible communication between and among human beings.

Most of us have grown up speaking and then reading and writing our own language (English for most of us). We might have been unaware of the “rules” applied to language until we began our school years and then through gradual instruction learned (or should have learned) about the various parts of speech and what their function was, along with a variety of other exercises to increase both our understanding of and ability to use our own language in a graceful, intelligent way.

We have had a great deal of time to do this. The process of learning a foreign language in a classroom is a bit different. We must now concentrate our efforts into a relatively brief period of time if we are to make any progress with the language. To do this requires some degree of effort and commitment coupled with a knowledge of the way in which the English language operates (i.e. what is its syntax and grammar).

For those who are well versed in English grammar, Latin grammar is not really that difficult; for those not well versed in English grammar, Latin grammar will be of immense help in understanding the grammar and usage of English and of other languages. Indeed, because of the original chaotic development of English where virtually anything goes, an attempt was long ago made to adapt English grammar to conform to Latin grammar. Many of you may already be aware that a very great portion of English vocabulary is Latin in origin.

Now for the basics (and we do mean basics):

Most languages (alas, English not included) have a more or less strict way of dealing with words. Terms are applied to their usage. (Noun, Verb, Pronoun, Adjective, etc.). Because most languages other than English pay strict attention to these parts of speech in their composition, it is important that you understand what they are and how they are used both in English and, in this course, in Latin. The exercise is not difficult but again requires of you some effort and a willingness to learn.

INTRODUCTION

PARTS OF SPEECH

Nouns are words which name a person, place, or thing.

Michaela is writing a letter in the house.

Michaela, letter, and house are Nouns.

Michaela epistulam in casā scrībit.

Michaela, epitstulam, and casa are Nouns in Latin.

Pronouns are words which stand in the place of or refer to nouns.

She is writing it in the house.

She and it are Pronouns; they stand in the place of or refer to the Nouns Michaela and letter.

Illa eam in casā scrībit.

Ille and eam are Pronouns because they stand in the place of or refer to Nouns.

Adjectives are words which describe or modify or give some characteristic of Nouns and Pronouns.

Michaela is writing a long letter in the white house.

Long and white are Adjectives because they describe (modify) the Nouns letter and house respectively.

Michaela epistulam longam in casā albā scrībit.

Longam and albā are Adjectives because they describe (modify) the Nouns epistulam and casa respectively. You will learn later that the terminology in Latin is that Adjectives must agree in gender, number, and case.

Verbs are words which indicate an action or a state of being. All verbs must have a subject (either a Noun or a Pronoun) which performs the action. Most verbs also have a direct object (either a Noun or a Pronoun) which directly receives the action of the verb. Some verbs may not, by their very nature, have a direct object.

Michaela is writing a long letter in the white house.

The form is writing is the Verb in this sentence because it indicates the action taken by the subject who is Michaela. The sentence also

indicates that letter is the direct recipient (direct object) of the verbal action of writing. We could also have phrased the verb as writes or does write depending on something called tense and aspect or shade of meaning which we may wish to convey.

Michaela epistulam longam in casā albā scrībit.

Here scribit is the Verb because it indicates the action taken by Michaela. The sentence also demonstrates that epistulam directly receives the action (is the direct object) of scrībit. You will note that in Latin the aspect is always expressed in the same way, i.e., there is no way of indicating, as we do in English, “is writing” as opposed to “does write” or “writes”.

Adverbs are words which are used to describe or modify or give a characteristic of Verbs. They are employed much as Adjectives are, except that they do not, as Adjectives do, agree with anything.

Michaela is quickly writing a long letter in the white house.

The word quickly is the Adverb here because it describes or modifies or gives some characteristic of the Verb is writing; effectively, it tells “how” Michaela is writing the letter.

Michaela epistulam longam in casā albā celeriter scrībit.

Here the word celeriter is an Adverb because it describes or modifies or gives some characteristic of the Verb scrībit.

GRAMMAR SUPPLEMENT

DAY 1

The poet writes a long letter.

‘writes’	is the main word in this sentence, since it names the action. It is called a VERB.
‘poet’	is also a very important word; indeed, it is the focal point of interest, since it is the doer of the action. It is called a NOUN, because it names something that exists, and it is called a SUBJECT, because the thing that it names is the doer of the action.
‘letter’	is also a thing and so it is also called a noun. Because it is the product of the action of the verb, it is called a DIRECT OBJECT of the verb. As is clear from ‘poet’ and ‘letter’, the words that are called nouns refer to various kinds of things; besides persons and inanimate physical objects nouns can name places or abstract ideas, such as hope or truth.
‘long’	is a quality that describes the letter; therefore, the word ‘long’ is said to ‘modify’ the noun ‘letter’. A word that modifies a noun is called an ADJECTIVE, because it is ‘thrown at’ or ‘attached to’ a noun.

These words form a SENTENCE, which is a group of words correctly connected together around a subject and a verb.

=====

Label the underlined words in the following sentences:

1. The woman has a house.
 2. The sailors praise the large forest.
- =====

In the letter the poet often praises the girl and the goddess.

‘in’	is a word that comes before a noun and indicates its relation to the rest of the sentence. Because it is placed before a noun, it is called a PREPOSITION.
‘letter’	is still a thing and therefore a noun, but is used here to name a location, a place where something occurs.
‘poet’	is the same as in the previous sentence.
‘often’	is a quality that describes how the action occurs; therefore, the word ‘often’ is said to modify the verb ‘praises’. A word that modifies a verb is called an ADVERB, because it is attached ‘to a verb’; in fact, a word that modifies a verb, or an adjective, or another adverb is an adverb.
‘praises’	is the same as ‘writes’ in the previous sentence.
‘girl’	is the recipient of the action of the verb and so is called the direct object, just like ‘letter’ which was the product of the action of ‘writes’ in the previous sentence.

‘and’ is a word that comes between two equals and connects them; because it connects them, it is called a CONJUNCTION. Here the equals are two nouns ‘girl’ and ‘goddess’; this sort of conjunction can also connect equal phrases or clauses such as ‘in the city and in the country’ or ‘He runs track and she plays basketball.’

Label the underlined words in the following sentence:

1. The sailor praises the farmer often in a letter.
 2. You should choose the milk or the juice.
-

Hey, who is the poet?

‘Hey’ is an attention-getting word that is called an INTERJECTION, because it is thrown in among other words, but without any grammatical connection to them. An interjection expresses some sort of undefined emotion.
‘who’ is a word that refers to a person or thing without naming it. Such a word is called a PRONOUN, because it stands in place of a noun. There are several kinds of pronouns; this one is called an INTERROGATIVE, because it asks a question. Here the pronoun is the subject.
‘is’ is a different kind of verb from those which produce a result or affect a recipient of an action. It is called a LINKING verb, because it stresses the link or connection between two other words.
‘poet’ is the word linked to the subject by the linking verb. It is called a SUBJECT COMPLEMENT or PREDICATE NOUN.

Verb, noun, adjective, preposition, adverb, conjunction, interjection, and pronoun are the eight PARTS OF SPEECH.

Identify the part of speech of each underlined word:

1. She is a poet.
 2. Wow, the house is a gift for him.
-

Day 2

We need to look a little more closely at the functions that verbs and nouns have in a sentence. This is just a preview; there will be more later. Meanwhile, we will say that the function of verbs is to govern the relation of nouns and so to make a sentence. For now we will identify three types of verbs:

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| The poet writes a letter. | 1) <u>action</u> which has a direct object |
| The poet walks to the house. | 2) <u>activity</u> which has no direct object but may have place reference. |
| The poet is a farmer. | 3) <u>linking</u> which has a predicate noun or adjective but not a direct object. |

The following sentence will illustrate some important functions of nouns in a sentence:

In the house the poet gives the letter of the farmer to the woman.

'gives'	- an action verb
'house'	- a noun that operates in a place construction as the source, goal, or current location of an action or activity.
'poet'	- subject
'letter'	- direct object
'woman'	- the secondary recipient, usually a person, of the direct object of the action, which is generally an action of giving, telling, or showing. It is called the INDIRECT OBJECT. In English when it comes after the direct object it is preceded by 'to', but when it comes before the direct object, there is no 'to'.
'farmer'	- a noun that indicates the POSSESSOR of something else, here the 'letter'; the noun 'farmer' depends grammatically upon the noun 'letter'. All the other nouns in the sentence depend upon the verb.

Label the forms and sentence functions of the underlined words:

1. The sailor is a poet.
2. The queen gives the poet a letter.
3. The woman's mother walks into the temple.

The Latin Alphabet and Pronunciation

Below are the letters of the Roman alphabet, along with their pronunciations in classical Latin. Any letter that has no explanation beside it is pronounced as the same letter in American English. For vowels, the first pronunciation given is the short, the second the long, sound of that vowel.

A a	<u>sofa</u>	<u>father</u>	<u>Diphthongs</u> - the three most important are:	
B b				
C c	always <u>can</u> , never <u>dance</u>		ae <u>aisle</u>	
D d			au <u>house</u>	
E e	<u>except</u> <u>late</u>		oe <u>toil</u>	
F f				
G g	always <u>gate</u> , never <u>gentle</u>		<u>Aspirates</u>	
H h			ch always as in <u>chorus</u>	
I i	<u>hit</u>	<u>breeze</u>	ph <u>alphabet</u>	
J j	<u>yes</u>			
K k				
L l				
M m				
N n				
O o	<u>hot</u>	<u>wrote</u>		
P p				
Q q	(NB: qu- always as kw-, as in English)			
R r				
S s	always <u>risk</u> , never <u>ease</u>			
T t				
U u	<u>rust</u>	<u>flute</u>		
V v	<u>wait</u>			
X x	as -ks-, as in <u>exact</u>			
Y y	<u>hit</u>	<u>eat</u>		
Z z				

Pronunciation Practice

1. sagitta	6. amāvī	11. aurum	16. appropinquāverātis
2. fēminaē	7. pulcher	12. equēs	17. appropinquāveritis
3. coepī	8. arbitror	13. moeniīs	18. jūstitiā
4. īra	9. Mūsae	14. quis	19. domūs
5. silva	10. amāvērunt	15. appropinquō	20. mōnte

Syllables and Stress Accents

Syllables

1. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **de-a, de-ae**.
2. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the vowel following it: **a-mat, a-qua**. Notice that **u** is not a vowel when it follows **q**, and that **qu** counts as a single consonant: **e-quus**
3. When there are two or more consonants between two vowels, the first consonant is pronounced with the vowel before it: **mit-tō, cas-tra, at-que**.
4. When, however, the first consonant is a mute (**p, b, t, d, c, g, f**) and the second is **l** or **r**, both are regularly pronounced with the vowel following them: **a-grī, in-flu-it**.

Quantity of Syllables

1. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **rēgēs, cau-sae**.
2. A syllable is long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by **x**; but the vowel is pronounced short: **mit-tunt, ux-or**.
3. When, however, the first consonant is a mute and the second is **l** or **r**, the syllable is regularly short: **a-grī**.
4. A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by another vowel or by a single consonant: **de-a, a-mat, a-qua**.

Accent

1. In words of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable: **ár-bor, á-mō**.
2. In words of three or more syllables the accent falls on the penult (next-to-last syllable), if this is long; but if the penult is short, the accent falls on the antepenult (syllable before the penult): **in-ter-vén-tus, e-quí-ti-bus, a-mā-vís-tis**.

Pronunciation Practice

1. agger, puella	5. lātē, īre, valē, mare	9. virtūtibus, equa
2. ratiō, item	6. filiīs, filiārum	10. jūdicia, jūdex
3. nautae, paucitās	7. absum, propinquus	11. amābāmus, amābimus
4. ageris, agēris, coepī	8. virtūs, virtūtis	12. jaciō, eat, fīnēs

Some Latin Mottos and Phrases for practicing pronunciation

Hīc quaerite, puerī puellaeque, virtūtem et scientiam.
Here seek, boys and girls, goodness and knowledge.

Fīnis orīgine pendet.
The end depends on the beginning.

Fortūnam ā deō petendam, ā sē ipsō sūmendam esse sapientiam.
Seek fortune from god, from yourself get wisdom.

Disce, puer, virtūtem ex mē vērumque labōrem, fortūnam ex aliīs.
Son, learn from me virtue and truthful toil, but fortune from others.

Nātūrae sequitur sēmina quisque suaे.
Each follows the seeds of one's own nature.

Nōn aetāte vērum ingeniō adipiscitur sapientia.
Wisdom is attained not by age but by talent.

Omnium magister ūsus.
Experience is the teacher of all.

Per variōs ūsūs artem experientia fēcit.
By various trials experience fashions art.

Cōnsuētūdinem quam secundam nātūram prōnūntiāvit ūsus.
Experience calls custom second nature.

Bene facere jam ex cōnsuētūdine in nāturam venit.
To do well becomes one's nature from habit.

Labor omnia vīcit.
Toil conquered all.

Quid autem praeclārum non idem arduum?
But what is outstanding that is not also difficult?

Omnia vincit amor.
Love conquers all.

LUDUS – LESSON 1

The Latin Language

Latin derives from what was once only one of many related languages spoken in Italy in the first half of the first millennium B.C. These Italic languages are considered one major branch, or family, of Proto-Indo-European, which is the root, or parent language of many still spoken today in Europe, Russia, the Middle East, India, and the Americas.

The gradual spread of Rome's political and economic power in the Mediterranean world from circa 500 B.C. on was the prime cause of Latin's prominence in antiquity and of its long history thereafter. Yet the importance and influence of Latin rests also on the literary creativity of the Romans themselves, who, while drawing inspiration from other ancient cultures (most notably that of the Greeks) fashioned their own corpus of remarkable works – epic and lyric poetry, history, oratory, and novels. As English today is spoken and written fluently by many who are neither natives of England nor descendants of those natives but have learned English as a second language, so many thousands within the Roman Empire and beyond spoke and wrote Latin, whether as a matter of practical necessity or as medium for the expression of ideas in speech, prose, and poetry.

Latin as a living language, in the common sense of that expression, did not survive much beyond 500-600 C.E. By the time of the emperor Charlemagne (800 C.E.), a conscious program was required to restore the knowledge of Latin to a level sufficient for the reading and understanding of documents in that language, especially works pertaining to the Christian religion (in western Europe).

In some sense, however, Latin survived through a kind of evolution. Like virtually every living language, its most frequent use was in oral communication. Oral languages tend to change in pronunciation and grammar over time, often to suit the needs of the speakers. Several modern European languages, such as French, Spanish, and Italian, are the results of this evolution. Pronunciation of words has changed, and, more important, the grammar of the oral forms of these languages has been considerably simplified, to the extent, in fact, that a speaker of French and a speaker of ancient Latin would be mutually unintelligible (as would be a speaker of modern English and one of Old English).

Ludus 1

*Nominative, genitive, & accusative cases
Adjective-noun agreement
Subject-verb agreement; Word order*

Īnsula Sicilia

Sunt multae īnsulae. Multae īnsulae sunt parvae, sed multae quoque sunt magnae. Sicilia īnsula est. Magna īnsula est. Multās et magnās silvās nōn habet, sed incolae Siciliae insulam saept laudant. Agricolae Siciliam amant quod terram bonam habet. Terram bonam īnsulae laudant. Fēminae quoque Siciliam laudant. Sicilia nōn est īnsula perīculōsa. Vīta agricolārum et fēminārum est bona quod Sicilia terra bona est.

Required Vocabulary

terra incognita

amant – <i>they love, like</i>	agricola, -ae – <i>farmer</i>
est – <i>he, she, it is</i>	incola, -ae – <i>inhabitant</i>
habet – <i>he, she, it has, holds</i>	īnsula, -ae – <i>island</i>
laudant – <i>they praise</i>	puella, -ae – <i>girl</i>
sunt – <i>they are</i>	silva, -ae – <i>forest, woods</i>
vident – <i>they see</i>	terra, -ae – <i>land, earth</i>
videt - <i>he, she, it sees</i>	vīta, -ae – <i>life</i>
bona (adjective) – <i>good</i>	et (conjunction) – <i>and</i>
magna (adjective) – <i>large, great</i>	nōn (adverb) – <i>not</i>
multae (adjective) – <i>many</i>	quod (conjunction) – <i>because</i>
parva (adjective) – <i>small</i>	quoque (adverb) – <i>also, too</i>
perīculōsa (adjective) – <i>dangerous</i>	saepe (adverb) – <i>often</i>
	sed (conjunction) – <i>but</i>

Classical Latin, the subject of this textbook, differs from English most fundamentally in being an inflected rather than a positional language. What this means is that, whereas in English the function of words in a sentence is indicated by the order of those words, in Latin it is the ending of each word that indicates its function. As a simple example, consider these two sentences:

The dog chases the cat.

The cat chases the dog.

The form of the three words *dog*, *cat*, and *chases* never changes, but a simple shift in word order creates two sentences with quite different meanings. Now look at the Latin equivalents of these same two sentences.

Canis fēlem īnsequitur.

Fēlis canem īnsequitur.

Here, too, the order of words changes, but it is the different endings, **-is** and **-em**, that show which noun is the subject and which the direct object. (The ending of **īnsequitur**, by the way, shows that it must be a verb.) The order of words is unimportant in expressing the basic meaning of the sentence. We could actually rewrite the first sentence as **Fēlem canis īnsequitur** without changing the meaning; **canis** is still the subject and **fēlem** is still the direct object because of their endings.

Case

Latin nouns change their endings to show their function. The different types of forms produced by changing the endings are called “cases”. **Canis** and **canem** are, in some sense, the same word (*dog*), but each is in a different case. While this difference does not affect the basic meaning of the noun, it does affect the meaning of the sentence.

(A Latin adjective must always be in the same case as the noun it modifies.)

Number

Nouns and adjectives can refer to one thing or more than one thing. Of the two nouns *dog* and *dogs*, we say the first is singular in number and the second plural in number.

(A Latin adjective must always be in the same number as the noun it modifies.)

Nominative Case

In Latin, a subject or predicate noun or adjective is in the nominative case. Any adjective that modifies a subject or predicate noun must also be in the nominative case. In the Latin equivalent of *The girl chases the cat*, *girl* would have to be nominative in case and singular in number. In the Latin equivalent of *The girls are strong*, *girls* would have to be nominative in case and plural in number; *strong* would have to be nominative plural also, since it modifies *girls* (as a predicate adjective).

In the first type of Latin nouns and adjectives we will encounter, the nominative singular and plural endings are **-a** and **-ae**, respectively. Thus, **terra** (*land*) is the nominative singular, and **terrae** (*lands*) is the nominative plural. Here are some examples.

*The land is large.
The lands are large.*

**Terra est magna.
Terrae sunt magnae.**

Adjective-Noun Agreement

Notice that in the first example above the (predicate) adjective **magna** is in the same case and number as the subject, which it modifies. The same is true with adjectives modifying nouns directly. In the following sentence, **magna** must be in the nominative plural, **magnae**, in order to modify the noun **terrae**.

Large lands are good. **Magnae terrae sunt bonae.**

This fundamental rule about the relation of adjectives to the nouns they modify is referred to as adjective-noun agreement.

LESSON 1

Genitive Case

When a Latin noun is the possessor, it is in the genitive case. The singular and plural endings of this case are **-ae** and **-ārum**, respectively. For example:

the land of the farmer, the farmer's land **terra agricolae**
the land of the farmers, the farmers' land **terra agricolārum**

N.B.: A possessive genitive usually follows the noun it modifies.

Accusative Case

A Latin noun that functions as the direct object must be in the accusative case. The singular and plural endings for this case are **-am** and **-ās**, respectively. For example:

The farmer has land. **Agricola terram habet.**
The farmer has good lands. **Agricola terrās bonās habet.**

The set of endings for the three cases described above, singular and plural, can be written as follows:

CASE	NUMBER	
	SING(ular)	PLUR(al)
NOM(inative)	-a	-ae
GEN(itive)	-ae	-ārum
ACC(usative)	-am	-ās

If we use the noun **terra** as a model, we can write its forms in the same format:

	SING	PLUR
NOM	terra	terrae
GEN	terrae	terrārum
ACC	terram	terrās

All nouns of the type called “first declension” use these same endings. For now, all adjectives also use these endings. (For the full declension of **terra**, see p.15.) To make any of these forms of a noun or adjective, you must drop the **-a** of the nominative singular and add the appropriate ending. For example, to form the genitive singular of **nauta**, *sailor*, we take the stem **naut-** and add **-ae**: **nautae**.

Two Adjectives Modifying One Noun

When more than one adjective modifies the same noun, the two Latin adjectives are often joined by **et**, *and*: **multae et bonae terrae**, *many good lands* (literally, *many and good lands*).

Three Notes about Verbs and Sentences

1) Verbs change their forms to agree with their subject in number. If the subject is singular, the verb has a singular form; if the subject is plural, the verb has a plural form.

The land is good. **Terra est bona.**
The lands are good. **Terrae sunt bonae.**

She sees the land. **Terram videt.**
They see the land. **Terram vident.**

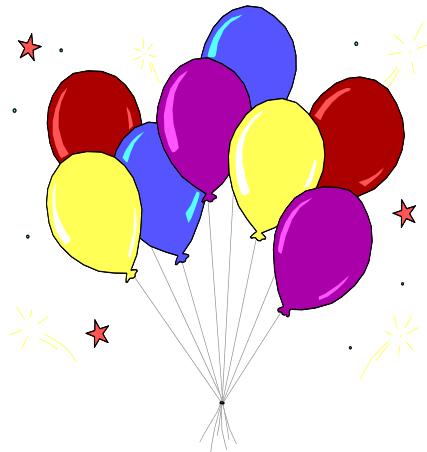
2) The standard order of words in a Latin sentence is **subject-object-verb (SOV)**. Linking verbs, such as *to be*, can come between the subject and (predicate) adjective or noun, as in the examples directly above.

3) When the verb **est** or **sunt** comes before its subject, then it has the sense of the English *There is...* or *There are....* **Est īnsula.** *There is an island.* (Such use of the verb *to be* in English is called the “expletive”.)



1 A Translate into English.

1. Silva est magna.
2. Silva nōn est magna.
3. Silvae nōn sunt magnae.
4. Sunt multae et parvae īnsulae.
5. Agricolae īsulās saepe nōn amant.
6. Incola magnam silvam quoque habet.
7. Agricolae silvās amant, sed silvae parvae sunt.
8. Puellae terram nōn laudant quod terra silvam nōn habet.
9. īsulās amant. īsulae magnae sunt.
10. īsulās amant et īsulae magnae sunt.
11. īsulās amant quod īsulae sunt magnae.
12. Terra incolae est magna et bona.
13. Magnās īsulās nautārum videt.
14. Multās et bonās silvās vident.
15. Vītam agricolārum laudant sed vītam perīculōsam nōn amant.



LESSON I

1 B Write in Latin.

1. The land is large.
2. There are small islands.
3. The land of a farmer is large and good.
4. The lives of the girls are good.
5. He does not have many (and) small islands.
6. The inhabitant has little land because the island has many forests.
7. The islands are many but small.
8. She sees the inhabitant's island.
9. They often praise the farmer because they love the land.
10. The life of girls is good.

Ludus 2

Person, number, & voice
1st conjugation & sum: present active
Infinitive

A Girl of Sicily

Parva puella est filia agricolae et in insulā habitat. Incola Siciliae est. Epistulās amat. Multās et longās epistulās scrībit. Fābulās quoque scrībit. Nautās saepe spectat. Vītam nautārum videt. Vīta nautae est perīculōsa. Puella longam fābulam scrībit et vītam perīculōsam nautārum laudat, sed vītam nautārum nōn amat. Epistulās et fābulās amat.

Agricola puellam videt et exspectat. Puella et agricola ambulant et puella longam fābulam bene narrat. Agricola fābulam parvae puellae amat et laudat. Puellam laudat.

Cūr vīta puellae est bona? Puella magnam pecūniām nōn habet sed multās epistulās scrībit et fābulās bene narrat.

prō bonō pūblicō

ambulō, ambulāre (1) – walk	epistula, -ae – letter
amō, amāre (1) – love, like	fābula, -ae – story
exspectō, exspectāre (1) – wait for, await	filia, -ae – daughter
habitō, habitāre (1) – dwell, live (in)	nauta, -ae – sailor
laudō, laudāre (1) – praise	pecūnia, -ae – money
narrō, narrāre (1) – tell, relate	longa (adj.) – long
portō, portāre (1) – carry, bring	multa (adj.) – much
scrībit – he, she, it writes	bene (adv.) – well
spectō, spectāre (1) – look at, watch	cūr (adv.) – why?
sum, esse – be	

Verbs - Person, Number, and Voice

Latin verbs change their endings to agree with the person and number of the subject. The three persons are *I, we* (first person, the speaker), *you* (second person, the person addressed), and *he, she, it, they* (third person, some person or thing other than the speaker or addressee). Each of these persons can be singular (only one person or thing) or plural (two or more). For instance, *I* is first person singular, while *we* is first person plural.

In an English sentence we express the person and number of the subject with a noun or

LESSON 2

pronoun – *I, you, the barbers*, etc.; otherwise, it is unclear who or what the subject is. In Latin the ending of a verb changes to agree with the person and number of the subject. *He walks* in Latin is **ambulat**. To say *they walk*, on the other hand, we need the ending **-nt**, thus **ambulant**.

It is often unnecessary to express a Latin subject with a pronoun, since the verbal ending tells us the person and number. **Amant** means *they love*; the Latin sentence needs no word for *they* because the **-nt** at the end of the verb indicates that the subject is third person plural. Notice as well that when we translate a sentence such as **Terram amant** into English, we must supply a subject: *They love the land*. Of course, if we want to say *The farmers walk*, we need to express the subject in Latin, just as we do in English: **Agricolae ambulant**.

The term “voice” simply refers to whether a verb shows an action or activity being done by the subject – active voice – or being done to the subject – passive voice. For instance, in *He builds the temple* the verb (*builds*) is active, and the subject is doing the building; in *The temple is built by him*, the verb (*is built*) is passive, and the subject is receiving the action of the verb, since it is being built, not doing the building.

First Conjugation - Present Active Indicative

The first group of Latin verbs you will learn is the first conjugation. Below are the six forms of the present tense, active voice, of **amō**, *love*, which belongs to the first conjugation. All other verbs of the first conjugation form their present active in this way.

Notice that this one tense in Latin corresponds to three different tense formations in English. In translating, you will need to choose the best equivalent based on the context.

PRESENT ACTIVE - FIRST CONJUGATION

amō, love

		NUMBER	
PERSON	SING		PLUR
1 st	amō , <i>I love, am loving, do love</i>		amāmus , <i>we love, are loving, do love</i>
2 nd	amās , <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>		amātis , <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>
3 rd	amat , <i>he, she, it loves, is loving, does love</i>		amant , <i>they love, are loving, do love</i>

The letters in boldface can be considered the personal endings for the present active of all regular verbs, and they can be written and learned in the following format:

	SING	PLUR
1 st	-ō	-mus
2 nd	-s	-tis
3 rd	-t	-nt

For first conjugation verbs, these endings are added to the present stem, which always ends in **-a**. In the model verb **amō**, they are added to the stem **ama-**, with one exception: the first person singular, **amō**, does not have an **-a-** directly preceding the ending **-ō**.

The Verb *to be*

The verb *to be* in Latin, as in English, is irregular, so its forms must be learned as a

special set. In the forms of the present tense below, however, you will see many of the personal endings used for first conjugation verbs.

PRESENT ACTIVE

sum, be

	SING	PLUR
1 st	sum, <i>I am</i>	sumus, <i>we are</i>
2 nd	es, <i>you are</i>	estis, <i>you are</i>
3 rd	est, <i>he, she, it is</i>	sunt, <i>they are</i>

Indicative and Infinitive Moods

Verbs forms such as **amō**, **sumus**, **laudātis**, etc. are said to be in the indicative mood, which is used to state what the speaker or writer regards as fact. These are also finite forms because they have definite person and number, whereas the infinitive mood is non-finite; it simply states the action or activity of the verb – in abstract form, so to speak. In English, the infinitive is made with the preposition *to*: *to walk*, *to join*, *to see*. In Latin, the present active infinitive of first conjugation verbs like **amō** adds the ending **-re** to the present stem:

amāre, *to love***ambulāre**, *to walk***laudāre**, *to praise*.

The present active infinitive of **sum** is irregular: **esse**, *to be*.

Principal Parts

The present infinitive is given along with the first person singular present active indicative in the vocabulary listing of any verb, e.g., **laudō**, **laudāre**, and it is always important to learn these two forms along with the meaning. These two forms are part of what are called the “principal parts” of a verb. The name refers to the fact that these forms provide crucial information about the verb and its forms. Most verbs have a total of four principal parts.



Portion of a Roman Inscription
Via Appia outside Rome



2 A

1. Puella sum. Nautae sunt.
2. Cūr pecūniām nautae spectātis?
3. Terram bonam amās quod es agricola.
4. Multās terrās spectant sed parvam īnsulam agricolae nōn amant.
5. Fīliae nautārum sumus.
6. Ambulātis et longam fābulam bene narrātis.
7. Nauta pecūniām nōn habet, sed vīta nautae est bona.
8. Cūr epistulās fīliae portātis?
9. Saepe ambulant et multās silvās vident.
10. Vītam puellae bonae laudāmus.

2 B

1. She often carries the inhabitants' letters.
2. You are the daughter of the sailor.
3. He does not see (his) daughters.
4. The life of the sailor is also good.
5. Why are we waiting for the farmers?
6. I walk well, they see well, but he does not write well.
7. You are many but not large.
8. Why are they looking at the money?
9. There is a long (and) large island.
10. They are telling the story well.

Ludus 3

Dative case
Dative indirect object
Dative with special adjectives
Word order

The Girl's Story

Puella in Siciliā (*on Sicily*) habitat et īsulam amat. Ibi fābulam bonam hodiē scribit. Mihi fābulam mōnstrat. Saepe fābulās puellae nōn laudō quod saepe nōn sunt bonae. Nunc fābulam spectō et laudō. Hodiē fābula est bona.

Fēmina et Nauta

Fēmina terrās bonās et magnam silvam habet. Agricolae terram bonam amant. Terrae fēminae agricolīs grātae sunt quod bonae sunt. Fēmina est bona, sed agricolae fēminam nōn amant; terrās fēminae amant sed nōn occupant.

Fēmina nautam videt et amat. Nauta fēminam pulchram videt; fēmina nautae quoque grāta est. Fēmina nautam vocat. Nauta et fēmina ambulant. Fēmina nautae multās epistulās dat quod nautam amat. Nauta quoque fēminae epistulās dat.

Hodiē nauta labōrat. Fēmina quoque labōrat et nautam exspectat. Silvae pulchrae propinqua est et epistulam scribit. Sunt multae et bonae puellae fēminae propinquae. Agricolae fēminam et puellās nunc vident et clāmant: “Cūr ibi estis? Silva est perīculōsa!” Fēmina, “Silva mea (*my*),” inquit (*she says*), “nōn est perīculōsa, sed agricolās laudō quod puellās servāre dēsiderātis (*want*).” Agricolīs terram dat. Nunc fēmina et agricolae nōn pugnant. Agricolae fēminam laudant.

Fēmina nautae quoque terram et pecūniām dat, sed nauta fēminam, nōn pecūniām, amat. “Vīta perīculōsa est,” inquit (*he says*), “sed mihi grāta est quod fēminam bonam amo.”

persōna nōn grāta

clāmō, clāmāre (1) – shout	fēmina, -ae – woman
dō, dare (1) – give	mihi (pronoun, Dative) – to me, for me
labōrō, labōrāre (1) – work, toil	grāta (adj. + Dative) – pleasing (to)
mōnstrō, mōnstrāre (1) – show, display	propinqua (adj. + Dative) – near (to), nearby
necō, necāre (1) – kill	pulchra (adj.) – beautiful, handsome
occupō, occupāre (1) – seize, capture	
pugnō, pugnāre (1) – fight	hodiē (adv.) – today
servō, servāre (1) – save, preserve	ibi (adv.) – there, in that place
superō, superāre (1) – defeat, conquer, overcome, surpass; win	nunc (adv.) – now
vocō, vocāre (1) – call, summon	

Dative Case

For the first declension, the dative endings in the singular and plural are **-ae** and **-īs**, respectively: **terrae**, **terrīs**.

Dative Indirect Object

The sentence *We give money to the sailor* contains both a direct object, *money*, and an indirect object, *sailor*, to whom the direct object is given. Notice that we can express the same thing in English by placing the indirect before the direct object and omitting the preposition *to*: *We give the sailor money*. Latin uses the dative case for the indirect object of verbs of giving, showing, and telling.

We give money to the sailor. Nautae pecūniām damus.

You tell stories to the girl. Puellae fābulās narrātis.

She shows a forest to the farmer. Agricolae silvam mōnstrat.

We give the women land. Fēminīs terrām damus.

Dative with Special Adjectives

Certain Latin adjectives that show a relationship, such as ones meaning *dear*, *near*, and *pleasing (to)*, can take a dative noun: *The girl is near the forest*, **Puella est silvāe propinqua**. In the English sentence below, you can see that the preposition *to* is sometimes used to connect a noun to this sort of adjective. In the Latin equivalent, the noun thus connected to the adjective is in the dative case without any preposition.

The special adjective itself must, of course, agree with whatever noun it modifies. In the sentence below, **grāta** modifies **vīta**, but it also governs a dependent noun in the dative, **nautīs**.

Life is pleasing to sailors. Vīta est nautīs grāta.

Two notes on Latin word order

- 1) A dative indirect object usually precedes the direct object.
- 2) A dative noun with special adjective usually precedes the adjective.

What is the case and function of the underlined word in each sentence below?

- 1) Fēminaē fabulam narrās.
- 2) Fabula est fēminaē grāta.
- 3) Fabula fēminaē est bona.

**3 A**

1. Hodiē agricolae pecūniam nōn dās.
2. Ibi pugnant et nautam servant.
3. Feminās amō quod mihi pecūniam saepe dant.
4. Cūr agricolīs epistulam fēminaē mōnstrās?
5. Īnsulae sunt terrae propinquae.
6. Magnās terrās agricolārum nunc occupātis.
7. Puellās pulchrās silvae propinquās vocāmus.
8. Agricolae bene labōrant quod pecūnia grāta est.
9. Terra bona est agricolīs grāta.
10. Nautae incolās superant sed nōn necant.

3 B

1. Life is pleasing because they often give money to me.
2. The women are near the farmer's land.
3. There you (s.) are saving the land but you are not fighting.
4. We are seizing the large forests and the small island.
5. Now they are shouting and calling the farmers.
6. I conquer but I do not kill.
7. A farmer's life is not pleasing to sailors.
8. We do not give money to the farmer because he is not working.
9. The beautiful island is near the land.
10. You (pl.) are pleasing to me because you are telling a story to the inhabitants.

Ludus 4

Ablative Case, 1st decl.
1st declension - full paradigm
Prepositions with ablative & accusative
Complementary infinitive
Apposition

The Goddess of the Woods

Agricola in īsulā Siciliā habitat. Nōn pecūniā sed terrās ūrae propinquās habet. Terrās laudat quod bonae sunt. Vītam nautae nōn dēsiderat; in terrā labōrat.

Est parva et pulchra silva in terrā agricultae. Dea bona in silvā habitat. Agricola deam amat. Dea quoque agricultam amat. Agriculta deam pulchram in orā saepe exspectat. Saepe deam videt et vocat. Ab orā ambulant. Agriculta deae fābulam narrat et dea agricultam spectat et laudat. Nunc agriculta deae silvam mōnstrat. Ibi cum deā ambulāre dēsiderat. Silvam nōn timent quod nōn est perīculōsa. In silvam ambulant.

Hodiē agriculta puellam pulchram, fīliam nautae, in orā videt. Puellae parvam īsulam ūrae propinquam mōnstrat. “Parvam īsulam,” inquit, “habeō.” Puella īsulam laudat; agriculta puellam laudat et amat. Sed dea, nōn agriculta, īsulam habet. Dea agricultam et puellam videt; nunc agricultam nōn amat. Itaque cum agricultā in silvā nōn ambulat.



Portion of a Roman Inscription
Via Appia outside Rome

Agriculta deam in orā saepe exspectat sed nōn videt. Aquam spectat. In silvam saepe ambulat et clamat; deam vocat. Dea agricultam videt sed ab agricultā ambulat quod agricultam spectare nōn dēsiderat. Agriculta ē silvā ambulat. Nunc vīta agricultae nōn est bona. Silva agricultae grata nōn est. In orā ambulat et aquam spectat.

ex nihilō

dēsiderō, dēsiderāre (1) – *desire, wish*

habeō – *I have*

timent – *they fear*

aqua, -ae – *water*

dea, -ae – *goddess*

flamma -ae – *flame*

ūra, -ae – *shore, coast*

ā, ab (prep. + Ablative) – *from, away from*

cum (prep. + Ablative) – *with*

ē, ex (prep. + Ablative) – *from, out from, out of*

in (prep. + Ablative) – *in, on;*

(+ Accusative) – *into, onto*

itaque (conj.) – *and so, therefore*

Ablative Case

The singular and plural endings for the ablative case in the first declension are **-ā** and **-īs**, respectively. (Note that the **-ā** of the singular ending is long, as opposed to the short **-a** of the nominative singular.) We can now complete the paradigm of the noun **terra** for the five basic cases, singular and plural, to serve as a model for all first declension nouns.

FIRST DECLENSION

terra, land		ENDINGS	
	SING	PLUR	SING PLUR
NOM	terra, land	terrae, lands	-a -ae
GEN	terrae, of land	terrārum, of lands	-ae -ārum
DAT	terrae, to, for land	terrīs, to, for lands	-ae -īs
ACC	terram, land	terrās, lands	-am -ās
ABL	terrā, land	terrīs, lands	-ā -īs

Ablative with Prepositions

The ablative has many uses, but its most common one is with certain prepositions, such as **ab**, **ex**, and **in**. To say *in the forest*, Latin requires the ablative case: **in silvā**. Below are two more examples.

away from the forest **ā silvā**
out of the dangerous islands **ex īnsulīs perīculōsīs**

Accusative with Prepositions

The accusative is used with certain prepositions, often in connection with a verb of motion. The preposition **in** together with an accusative expresses *into*. Notice the difference in context and meaning from the use of **in** with the ablative case.

<i>It lives <u>in</u> the water.</i>	In aquā habitat.	<small>(stationary verb)</small>
<i>It walks <u>into</u> the water.</i>	In aquam ambulat.	<small>(verb of motion)</small>

Another note on word order

When a one-syllable preposition, such as **in**, works with a noun modified by an adjective, it tends to stand between the adjective and noun: **magnā in silvā, in a large forest**.

Complementary Infinitive

Certain verbs in Latin, as in English, use an infinitive to *complete* their meaning. Such infinitives are called “complementary”. They have no subject of their own and are grammatically dependent on another verb.

I want to walk. Ambulāre dēsiderō. *They want to conquer. Superāre dēsiderant.*

LESSON 4

Apposition

In both English and Latin, one noun can modify another noun without any verb or conjunction to link them. The modifying noun is said to be in apposition to the other noun. In Latin both nouns must be in the same case:

*the girl, a daughter puella filia
the island (of) Sicily īnsula Sicilia
We praise the island (of) Sicily. īnsulam Siciliam laudāmus.*



4 A

1. Est fēmina mihi grata; in terrā agricolae habitat.
2. Cūr nauta ā flammīs nōn ambulat?
3. Multās et bonās terrās agricolārum nunc occupāmus.
4. Īnsulam fēminīs grātam nōn amant quod aquae perīculōsae propinquā est.
5. Fēmina puellās vocat et puellae cum fēminā in aquam ambulant.
6. Magnā in terrā bene labōrō; itaque agricola mihi pecūniām dat.
7. Dea puellam ē silvīs perīculōsīs portat.
8. Fēminae nautīs flammās aquae propinquās mōnstrant.
9. Sunt magnae silvae in ūrā propinquā, sed agricolae silvās nōn timent.
10. Cum nautīs pugnāmus quod puellās servāre dēsīderāmus.

4 B

1. There are many islands.
2. The daughters often carry water out of the forests.
3. Why do you praise the inhabitants?
4. The land is near the water.
5. There they do not fight with the farmers but they do conquer.
6. We do not often walk away from the water.
7. There is much good land on the island.
8. They want to carry the money onto the shore because they fear the sailors.
9. Therefore we show the flames to the women also.
10. There the islands are pleasing to me because they are near the land.

Ludus 5

Future active, 1st conj. & sum
Imperative mood, 1st conj.
Vocative case, 1st decl.
Double accusative

The Girl and the Goddess, Part 1

Filia agricolae sum. Incolae Siciliae sumus. Pater (*My father*) in terrā pulchrā ōrae propinquā labōrat, sed nōn pecūniā, nōn terrā habet. Mercenārius (*As a hired laborer*) in terrīs fēminaē Rōmānae labōrat. Ego (*I*) quoque labōrō: aquam portō; vestēs (*clothing*), cibum (*food*), et parva animālia (*animals*) cūrō (*take care of*). Pater fēminam pecūniā saepe ūrat, sed fēmina agricolīs pecūniā nōn dat.

Pater pecūniā dēsīderat quod bene labōrat et vītam bonā dēsīderat. Itaque mox fēminam pecūniā iterum ūrat. “Bene labōrō, fēmina; parvam pecūniā ūrō.” Fēmina īrāta est. “Pecūniā, agricola, nōn dabō.” Pater, “Cūr mihi,” inquit, “pecūniā nōn dabis?” “Nōn bene labōrās.”

Fēmina patrī meō ([dat.] *my father*) et mihi terrām propinquām mōnstrat ubi est magna et perīculōsa silva. Silva ūrae propinqua nōn est. “Magnam silvam spectā, agricola. Terrās nōn amās. Itaque hīc in terrīs bonīs nōn labōrābis. Ibi cum fīliā habitābis.” Agricola, “In silvā perīculōsā esse,” inquit, “fēmina, nōn dēsīderō. Hīc cum fīliā in terrā bene labōrābō. Vītam parvae fīliae servāre dēsīderō.” Itaque vīta nōn est bona, sed noctū in ūrā cum patre (abl.) saepe ambulō et lūnam spectō.

hīc situs est

ōrō, ūrāre (1) – beg, ask for, pray (can take double accusative)	īrāta (adj.) – angry
stō, stāre (1) – stand	celeriter (adv.) – quickly
lūna, -ae – moon	hīc (adv.) – here, in this place
rāna, -ae – frog	iterum (adv.) – again, a second time
clāra (adj.) – bright, famous	mox (adv.) – soon
	noctū (adv.) – at night
	ubi (conj.) – where; when (+ perf. indic.)

Future Tense

To express actions, activities, or states that will occur after the present moment, Latin uses the future tense, which corresponds to the English future with *will* and *shall* as auxiliary verbs (e.g., *I shall walk*). Latin uses the same personal endings as for the present tense, but between those endings and the stem it places **-bi-** as a tense marker: **specta-bi-t**, *he will watch*. For the future active of first conjugation verbs, the endings are as follows:

LESSON 5

FUTURE INDICATIVE - ACTIVE ENDINGS

	SING	PLUR
1 st	-bō	-bimus
2 nd	-bis	-bitis
3 rd	-bit	-bunt

Notice that in the first singular the vowel **-i-** is lost before **-ō**, and that the third plural has **-bu-** instead of **-bi-**. The future active indicative of **amō** and its English equivalents are as follows:

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

amō

	SING	PLUR
1 st	amābō , <i>I will love</i>	amābimus , <i>we will love</i>
2 nd	amābis , <i>you will love</i>	amābitis , <i>you will love</i>
3 rd	amābit , <i>he, she, it will love</i>	amābunt , <i>they will love</i>

The future tense of **sum** is irregular, although you can see that the endings are the same as those for first conjugation but without the consonant **-b-**.

FUTURE INDICATIVE

sum

	SING	PLUR
1 st	erō , <i>I will be</i>	erimus , <i>we will be</i>
2 nd	eris , <i>you will be</i>	eritis , <i>you will be</i>
3 rd	erit , <i>he, she, it will be</i>	erunt , <i>they will be</i>

Imperative Mood

The form of a verb used to give a direct command is the imperative. In English, these are forms such as stand up!, be quiet! For our purposes, we are dealing with the present imperative in Latin, and its forms are considered second person ones. While English has only one form of the imperative, no matter how many people are being addressed, Latin uses one form in giving an order to a single person and another form in giving an order to more than one person. First conjugation verbs use the endings **-ā** and **-āte** for imperative singular and plural, respectively.

<i>shout!</i>	clamā (addressing one person) clamāte (addressing two or more people)
<i>work!</i>	laborā , labōrāte

Vocative Case

To address someone directly in Latin, the noun must be in the vocative case. Since the endings of the vocative are usually the same as those of the nominative, the vocative is not listed in the paradigms of nouns and adjectives. In the first declension, the vocative thus has the endings -a and -ae, the same as the nominative endings.

The vocative is frequently seen together with imperatives, but it can be used in any kind of sentence.

Aquam, nautae, portā!	<i>Carry the water, sailors!</i>
Cūr, agricolae, semper pugnātis?	<i>Why do you always fight, farmers?</i>
Puellae, fēmina, bene labōrant.	<i>The girls are working well, woman.</i>
Mihi pecūniām, puella, mōstrā.	<i>Girl, show me the money!</i>

Word order

Note that in Latin both the imperative and vocative normally come after one or more words in the sentence, while in English we frequently put them first.

Double Accusative

Some verbs of asking, such as **ōrō**, take two direct objects, one being the thing asked for, the other the person of whom the thing is asked.

I ask the women for water. Fēminās aquam ōrō.



Terra Cotta Frog, National Museum, Rome



5 A

1. Aquam ab ūrā noctū portābimus.
2. Mihi pecūniā iterum dabunt.
3. Hīc stāte, puellae, ubi est aqua bona.
4. Magnās īnsulās nautārum occupābis, sed terrām agricolārum servābis.
5. Celeriter ambulant quod silvām perīculōsam timent.
6. Noctū lūnam clāram spectābit et agricolīs mōnstrābit.
7. Fēmina et puella nōn erunt in silvīs.
8. Puellās, nauta, ā flammīs vocā.
9. Puellae nautam aquam saepe ūrābunt.
10. Ubi nauta habitābit?
11. Fēmina cum puellīs in parvā silvā ambulat sed rānam nōn videt.
12. Dea īrāta est quod fēminae deae aquam nōn dant.
13. Est magna dea in lūnā et terrās noctū spectat.
14. Cūr, agricolae, in aquā stātis?
15. Puellae sunt parvae sed silvām nōn timent; ibi cum deā habitāre dēsiderant.

5 B

1. Why are you walking out of the water quickly?
2. Stand there! I shall stand here with my daughter.
3. Where and why do they desire to look at the moon?
4. There there will be many islands near the land.
5. They will not beg the woman for water.
6. The life of farmers is not pleasing to me.
7. You (pl.) will seize the islands, but you will not kill the frogs.
8. At night they see the great goddess but they are not afraid.
9. Life will soon be pleasing because we will not work.
10. He will often call the girls but they will not desire to walk at night.

Ludus 6

Perfect active, 1st conj. & sum
Third principal part; *dedī, jūvī, stetī*
Ubi + perfect indicative

The Girl and the Goddess, Part 2

Ōlim cum patre noctū lūnam spectāvī. Pater, “Mihi, filia, fābulam,” inquit, “dē deā lūnae narrā.” “Est dea bona,” inquam (*I say*), “in lūnā. Diāna est dea lūnae. Deam laudāmus quod magna et pulchra est. Silvae quoque deae gratae sunt et dea in silvīs esse dēsiderat. Sunt multae et pulchrae puellae cum deā in silvīs; deae quoque sunt. Deam bonam semper laudābō. Puellās bonās amat; itaque ōlim mē juvābit.”

Subitō dea Diāna in ūrā stetit. Deam vīdī sed nōn fuī territa. Pater et ego deam spectāvimus sed ā deā properāre nōn temptāvimus. Nunc Diāna, “Mē, agricola et puella,” inquit,

“bene laudāvistis! Fīlia bona quoque fūistī, puella, quod patrem (acc.) saepe juvistī. Itaque tē ē terrā portābō. Fīliae, agricola, vītam bonam in īnsulā pulchrā dabō. Dea erit. Mox deam lūnae et deam novam (*new*) laudābis!”

Ōlim vīta agricolae et fīliae nōn fuit bona, sed bona erit quod dea mē jūvit. Patrem mercenārium quoque jūvit. Nunc pater fēminam Rōmānam nōn amāvit, sed bene labōrāvit et pecūniām nōn ūrāvit. Noctū lūnam saepe spectāvit et deam bonam vocāvit et laudāvit. “Vītam agricolae spectā! Nunc bona est quod filiam, Diāna, servāvistī!”

Nunc cum patre nōn habitō quod dea sum, sed agricolās Siciliae juvāre semper temptābō.



Diana as Huntress
National Museums, Rome

LESSON 6

semper fidēlis

juvō, juvāre (1), juvī – <i>help, aid</i>	mē (pron., Accusative) – <i>me</i>
properō, properāre (1), properāvī – <i>hurry, hasten</i> ,	tē (pron., Accusative) – <i>you (s.)</i>
temptō, temptāre (1), temptāvī – <i>try, attempt</i>	terrīta (adj.) – <i>frightened, scared, terrified</i>
(+ infin.)	
vīdī – <i>I saw, have seen</i>	dē (prep. + Ablative) – <i>about, concerning</i>
vīdit – <i>he, she, it saw, has seen</i>	ōlim (adv.) – <i>once, formerly, sometime</i>
	semper (adv.) – <i>always</i>
	subitō (adv.) – <i>suddenly</i>

Perfect Tense

To express an action, activity, or state that has been completed or occurred at some time in the past, Latin uses the perfect tense. To form this tense, we must use the third principal part of a verb. For the first conjugation, this is normally the present stem, plus **-vī**, e.g., **amā-vī**, **ōrāvī**, **necāvī**. This form is actually the first singular perfect active indicative. Using it, we can make the other five forms of the perfect active simply by changing the **-ī** to the appropriate ending. The full set of endings for the perfect active of any verb is given below:

PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE - ENDINGS

	SING	PLUR
1 st	-ī	-imus
2 nd	-istī	-istis
3 rd	-it	-ērunt

By adding these endings to the perfect active stem (=stem of the third principal part), we create the perfect active of **amō**.

PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

amō

	SING	PLUR
1 st	amāvī , <i>I loved, have loved</i>	amāvīmus , <i>we loved, have loved</i>
2 nd	amāvīstī , <i>you loved, have loved</i>	amāvīstis , <i>you loved, have loved</i>
3 rd	amāvit , <i>he, she, it loved, has loved</i>	amāvērunt , <i>they loved, have loved</i>

The third principal part of **sum** is **fuī**. Notice that even this irregular verb uses the same six endings as **amō** for the perfect active.

PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

sum

	SING	PLUR
1 st	fuī , <i>I was, have been</i>	fuimus , <i>we were, have been</i>
2 nd	fuistī , <i>you were, have been</i>	fuistis , <i>you were, have been</i>
3 rd	fuit , <i>he, she, it was, has been</i>	fuērunt , <i>they were, have been</i>

Translation of the Perfect

As you can see from the paradigms above, the English equivalents of the Latin perfect are the present perfect, (*I have loved*), and the simple past, (*I loved*). The present perfect tends to be used of a completed action that has a result or affect in the present: *I have arrived* implies *I am here*. The simple past merely states that something happened at some time in the past: *I arrived, I stood*. Often the context will determine which translation is more appropriate.

Ubi “When” + Perfect Indicative

When **ubi** means *when*, it uses the perfect indicative in Latin, but the verb should be translated with *had*, i.e., in the pluperfect tense. For example:

Ubi pueram vocāvērunt, ad ōram ambulāvit.
When they had called the girl, she walked toward the shore.

Third Principal Part of *Dō, Juvō, Stō, and Sum*

The third principal part of every verb should be learned along with the other vocabulary forms and meaning. The principal parts of most first conjugation verbs follow the pattern **-ō, -āre, -āvī** (**amō, amāre, amāvī**), but there are three verbs that break from this pattern in the third principal part:

dō, dare, dedī, give
juvō, juvāre, jūvī, help
stō, stāre, stetī, stand

The first three principal parts of *to be* are **sum, esse, fuī**.



Conjugate in the perfect active: **ōrō, stō, mōnstrō, vocō, juvō, dō.**

6 A

1. Hīc stetimus quod tē spectāre dēsiderāvimus.
2. Aqua ūrae propinqua semper fuit bona.
3. Ōlim ibi fuērunt magnae et pulchrae silvae.
4. Agricolae ab īsulā clārā subitō properāvērunt.
5. Cūr puellās bonās et nautam nōn jūvistis?
6. Ubi fēmina rānās vīdit, subitō ex aquā properāvit.
7. Tē vocābō et in silvam celeriter ambulābimus.
8. Parvam īsulam, nauta, occupāvistī et agricolīs dedistī.
9. In silvā ambulāvit et filiae fābulam dē deā lūnae narrāvit.
10. Ubi puella mē vīdit, mihi dē agricolīs narrāre temptāvit.

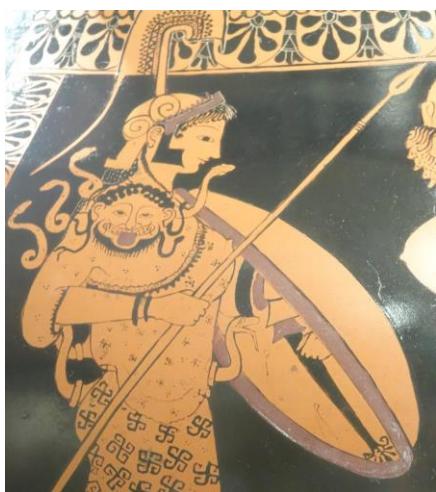
6 B

1. When the girl had seen the flames, she, frightened, walked quickly away from the forest.
2. The woman was on the land near the coast.
3. They have always told me about the forest and the islands.
4. You (pl.) have often stood on the shore with the famous woman.
5. At night they will walk out of the forest and conquer the inhabitants.
6. Many frogs have hastened out of the land into the water.
7. He has given the money to me.
8. When you had asked for water, the sailor's daughter wanted to help you.
9. I am pleasing to the farmer because I have worked well and have helped you.
10. There there will be many angry goddesses.

Minerva, Goddess of War and Web, Part 1

Ōlim Caecilia, fīlia fēminaē bonae, habitābat in īsulā Siciliā. Fēmina quattuor fīliās habēbat (*had*) et in telā (*loom*) semper labōrābat. Fīliae quoque labōrābant, sed nōn Caecilia. Cum fēminīs et puellīs esse nōn dēsiderāvit. Agricolās et nautās semper laudāvit quod in terrā et in aquā labōrāvērunt.

Itaque hodiē ā fēminīs et puellīs properāvit et in ūrā ambulāvit ubi nautae labōrābant. Diū nautās spectābat. Vītam perīculōsam nautārum dēsiderāvit. Clāmābat et deam Minervam vocābat: “Mihi, ō magna dea, vītam novam dā!”



Athena Promachos
Red-figure vase, ca. 530 B.C.E.
Staatliche Museum, Berlin

habet. Puellam nōn amō.” Dea erat īrāta.

Posteā puella in ūrā magnam hastam vīdit. “Hasta est magna et pulchra,” inquit, “quod est hasta deae Minervae! Nunc cum nautīs pugnābō!” Hasta autem (*however*) erat hasta nautae, nōn Minervae, sed puella hastam dēsiderāvit. Itaque hastam ab ūrā portābat. Ubi nauta puellam vīdit, clāmāvit: “Mihi hastam, puella, dā!” Puella clāmāvit: “Caecilia Magna sum! Tibi hastam nōn dabō!” Cum nautā pugnābat sed parva erat; nautam nōn superāvit.

Subitō erant magnae flammæ in ūrā. Nunc puella et nauta nōn pugnāvērunt. Deam Minervam in flammīs vīdērunt. Dea nautam vocāvit: “Cūr cum parvā puellā, nauta, pugnās?” “Puella nōn bona est quod hastam meam (*my*)

rēs novae

habent – *they have, they hold*
vīdērunt – *they saw, they have seen*

nova (adj.) – *new, strange, unusual*
quattuor (indeclinable adj.) – *four*

hasta, -ae – *spear*
tibi (pron., Dative) – *to you, for you (s.)*
via, -ae – *street, road, way*

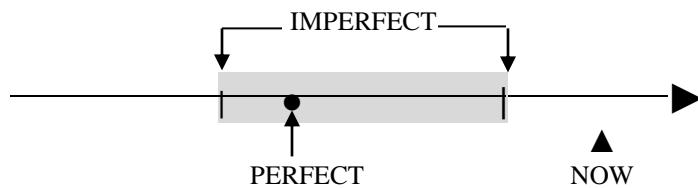
diū (adv.) – *for a long time*
posteā (adv.) – *afterward, later*
tum (adv.) – *then, at that time*



Via Appia outside Rome
(first consular road), 311 B.C.E.

Imperfect Tense

The Latin imperfect tense expresses a past action, activity, or state as ongoing, repeated, or habitual. The English equivalent are forms with *was/were* used as auxiliary verbs: *they were walking, I was talking* (also *you used to walk*). In some cases, it is appropriate to translate the imperfect with the simple past: *they walked*. The imperfect, however, shows a different aspect of past action than does the perfect, which expresses an action or state as simply having occurred at some point in the past. A common way of demonstrating this difference graphically is to think of the perfect tense as a point on a time-line, the imperfect tense as a segment of the line.



The endings of the imperfect active indicative are distinguished by the tense marker **-ba-**, which is attached to the present stem of the verb; to this are added the usual active endings, with the exception that the ending for the first person singular is **-m**, rather than **-ō**. Here are the six endings, along with the imperfect active indicative of **amō**, with translations.

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE - ENDINGS

	SING	PLUR
1 st	-bam	-bāmus
2 nd	-bās	-bātis
3 rd	-bat	-bant

IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

amō

	SING	PLUR
1 st	amābam , <i>I was loving, loved, used to love</i>	amābāmus , <i>we were loving, loved, used to love</i>
2 nd	amābās , <i>you were loving, loved, used to love</i>	amābātis , <i>you were loving, loved ,used to love</i>
3 rd	amābat , <i>he, she, it was loving, loved, used to love</i>	amābant , <i>they were loving, loved, used to love</i>

The imperfect of **sum** is irregular.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

sum

	SING	PLUR
1 st	eram , <i>I was</i>	erāmus , <i>we were</i>
2 nd	erās , <i>you were</i>	erātis , <i>you were</i>
3 rd	erat , <i>he, she, it was</i>	erant , <i>they were</i>

**7 A**

1. Aquam dēsiderāmus quod in terrā diū labōrāvimus.
2. In viā cum puellīs saepe ambulābātis.
3. Ubi ad parvam īnsulam properāvistis, fēminās ex aquā portāvistis.
4. Fēmina quoque hastam dabit.
5. Tē ab orā vocāvit; posteā tibi dē terrīs novīs narrābat.
6. Quattuor agricolīs pecūniām semper dabam.
7. Tum erat via clāra ōrae propinqua. Nunc aqua viam superāvit.
8. Agricolae terram occupābant sed puellās servāvimus.
9. Vīta agricolae fuit longa.
10. Cūr in terram agricolārum properāre temptābās?

OPTIONAL

11. Agricolae nōn semper labōrāvērunt.
12. Multās et bonās hastās semper habent.
13. Cūr puellās bonās juvāre nōn temptāvistis?
14. Ōlim dea quattuor puellās ab īnsulā vocāvit.
15. Diū in terrā novā cum deā bonā habitābant.

7 B

1. You (pl.) were trying to walk into the farmer's lands.
2. At that time the road was new.
3. Now the sailors do not have water, but soon they will carry water out of the forest.
4. When they had hastened away from the road, they looked at the moon.
5. Afterward there were forests here for a long time.
6. Formerly they always worked quickly.
7. Why were they trying to seize the land again?
8. Today we told you about the spears.
9. And so they will be on the shore with the girl and the woman.
10. Why have you (s.) stood in the road for a long time?



**Shepherds and flock
Via Appia near Rome (2007)**

Minerva, Goddess of War and Web, Part 2

Dea Minerva prō puellā Caeciliā stetit. “Cūr, puella, tēlum nautae habēs? Cūr cum aliīs fēminīs nōn labōrās?” Puella nōn erat territa. “Dea bellī (*of war*) es et saepe pugnās. Vītam fēminārum nōn amās. Ego (*I*) quoque pugnāre dēsiderō; itaque hastam portābam.”

“Nōn semper,” inquit dea, “pugnō. Tēlam (*loom*) quoque amō et diū labōrō. Fēminās juvō quod bene labōrant. Sed nunc tēla sunt tibi grāta. Itaque puellae hastam, nauta, dā.” Nauta Caeciliae hastam dedit. “Tibi, nauta, dōnum bonum dabō.”



Women
Weaving
(based on a
Greek Black-
Figure vase
painting of ca.
550-530 BCE)

Minerva puellam iterum spectāvit. “Mihi, Caecilia, cāra es. Ōlim eris magna; pugnābis et fēminās et incolās Siciliae servābis. Nunc in tēlā bene labōrā; hastam pulchram portā in templum antīquum, ubi tēlum diū servābō. Ē caelō tē spectābō, et posteā hastam ē templō portābis.”

Ubi Caecilia diū ab ūrā ambulāvit, magnam hastam in templum portāvit. Noctū fēmina filiam vīdit. “Ubi fuistī, filia?”

“Minerva mihi magnam hastam dedit; in templum deae tēlum portāvī. Bona sum. In tēlā nunc labōrāre dēsiderō. Mox parva nōn erō; prō fēminīs et agricolīs saepe pugnābō et cum nautīs nāvigābō. Minerva mē juvābit!”

Nunc Caecilia cum fēminā et puellīs labōrāre temptābat sed nōn labōrābat quod dēfessa (*exhausted*) erat. Fēmina filiae Caeciliae multa narrāre dēsiderābat, sed fēmina et puellae Caeciliām dēfessam spectābant et ridēbant (*were laughing*).



Model of a Greek loom with ancient terracotta loom weights (Mus. of Magna Graecia, Italy)

caelum ipsum stultitiā petimus

habēs – you (s.) have, you hold	templum , -ī, n. – temple
manet – he, she, it remains	
nāvigō , nāvigāre (1), nāvigāvī – sail	alia (neuter aliud) (adj.) – another, other**
āra , -ae, f. – altar	antīqua (adj.) – ancient, old
caelum , -ī, n. – sky, heaven	cāra (adj. + Dative) – dear, precious
dōnum , -ī, n. – gift	prō (prep. + Ablative) – in front of, before, on behalf of
sagitta , -ae, f. – arrow	
tēlum , -ī, n. – weapon, spear	

**The genitive & dative singular are irregular; these endings will be given later.



Portion of a Roman Inscription
Via Appia outside Rome

Second Declension, Neuter Nouns

The second group of nouns includes ones that have a nominative singular ending in **-um**. As you can see in the paradigm below, many of their case endings are different from those of first declension nouns. Here are the endings for these nouns and the full declension of the model for this type of noun, **dōnum**, gift.

SECOND DECLENSION NEUTER NOUNS

dōnum , n., gift		ENDINGS			
	SING	PLUR	NOM	SING	PLUR
NOM	dōnum	dōna		-um	-a
GEN	dōnī	dōnōrum		-ī	-ōrum
DAT	dōnō	dōnīs		-ō	-īs
ACC	dōnum	dōna		-um	-a
ABL	dōnō	dōnīs		-ō	-īs

The vocatives of this type of noun are the same as the nominative singular and plural. The cases of **dōnum** are used in the same ways as those of first declension nouns. The dative is used for indirect objects, the nominative for subjects and predicate nominatives, etc.

Neuter Gender & Adjective-Noun Agreement

In the study of Latin, the term “gender” is used in its grammatical sense, i.e., as a term for categorizing different types of nouns. There are three grammatical genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. (Grammatical gender is not the same thing as natural gender.) All the first declension nouns you will learn in this book are feminine, except for **agricola** and **nauta**, which are masculine, and **incola**, which can be either masculine or feminine (“common”).

All nouns of the -um second declension type are neuter in gender. Two special features of all neuter nouns is that their accusative forms are exactly the same as the nominative, and the nominative and accusative plural always ends in -a. (In the next lesson we will deal with the masculine gender.)



Inscription on Via Appia outside of Rome

Until now, you have seen and used only feminine forms of adjectives modifying feminine nouns, e.g., **puella clāra**, but when a neuter noun is modified by an adjective, that adjective must also be in the neuter gender, as well as in the same case and number as the neuter noun. For now, the neuter forms of adjectives will have the same ending as the noun they modify (**aliud**, *other*, is an exception). As examples of adjective-noun agreement, here are the full declensions of *famous temple* and *good water.a*

famous temple

	SING	PLUR
NOM	templum clārum	templā clāra
GEN	templī clārī	templōrum clārōrum
DAT	templō clārō	templīs clārīs
ACC	templum clārum	templā clāra
ABL	templō clārō	templīs clārīs

good water

	SING	PLUR
NOM	aqua bona	aquae bonae
GEN	aquae bonae	aquārum bonārum
DAT	aquae bonae	aquīs bonīs
ACC	aquam bonam	aquās bonās
ABL	aquā bonā	aquīs bonīs

Substantive Use of Adjectives

A few Latin adjectives, such as **multa**, **bona**, and **alia** sometimes stand on their own as pronouns (substantives) rather than adjectives. In such cases, we must often, though not always, supply a noun in English, e.g., **multa** (neuter plural), *many things, much*; **bona** (neuter plural), *good things, goods, possessions*; **alia** (feminine singular), *another woman*.



8 A

1. Erant multa et antīqua tēla in templīs.
2. Posteā puellae dōnum dedit.
3. Diū filia territa fēminaē clārae novō in templō manet.
4. Magnae deae in caelō habitāvērunt, sed terram quoque amāvērunt.
5. Nautam juvā, agricola! Nautae aliud tēlum dā!
6. Agricolae magnā in silvā templō propinquā nōn habitābant.
7. Prō templō stābātis quod deae bonae dōnum dare dēsiderābātis.
8. Cūr mihi multa dē dōnīs narrāvit?
9. Āra est parva et antīqua, sed est agricolīs cāra.
10. Nautae ā templīs properābant quod deae erant īrātae.

8 B

1. Terrified, they hurry into the temple near the shore.
2. On the road stood a woman; she saw the girls.
3. We want other weapons because the arrows are old.
4. In front of the altar I was begging the goddess for water.
5. Where will they stand and try to look at the sky?
6. He said much (=many things) to you about the sky.
7. When I had seized the altar, the farmers tried to kill me.
8. You (s.) always gave gifts to me because I was dear to you.
9. There I will work with other sailors.
10. You (pl.) will seize four of (**ex**) the famous temples.

Ludus 9

2nd decl. nouns in **-us** & **-er**

2nd decl. vocative case

Bonus, -a, -um

Adjs. with masc. 1st decl. nouns

The Wrath of Latona

Diāna erat filia deae Lātōnae. Apollō quoque puer Lātōnae erat. Jūnō īrāta erat quod Juppiter Lātōnam amāvit. Itaque nūlla terra Lātōnam dēsiderābat, sed īnsula Dēlos Lātōnam jūvit. Posteā hīc erant templa clāra puerōrum Lātōnae.

Jūnō Lātōnam et parvos puerōs in īnsulā vīdit et iterum īrāta erat. Itaque Lātōna ex īnsulā properāvit, sed in nūllā terrā diū habitābat quod Jūnō Lātōnam ē caelō semper spectābat. Lātōna nāvigāre saepe temptābat. Itaque nautae bonō dōnum dare temptāvit, sed nauta erat territus quod Jūnō erat īrāta. Latonam nōn jūvit.

Ōlim Lātōna dēfessa in aliam terram properāvit ubi magnum agrum et multam aquam bonam vīdit. Multī agricultae cum equīs in agrō aquae propinquō labōrābant; multum frūmentum ex agrō portābant. Lātōna prō puerīs aquam multōs agricultās ḍrāvit: “Dea sum. Puerīs meīs, amīcī, aquam date.” Agricultae nōn erant bonī et Lātōnam nōn amābant. īrātī erant; nūllus deae aquam dedit.

Lātōna agricultās spectāvit et in aquam ambulāre temptāvit, sed multī agricultae in aquam properāvērunt et ibi ambulāvērunt. Aqua nunc nōn erat bona. Dea īrāta, “Deae Lātōnae,” inquit, “fidī nōn estis.” Agricultae in aquā stetērunt et rīsērunt (*laughed*). “Aquam sōlam, agricultae, amātis! Itaque in aquā semper eritis!” Nunc nōn erant multī agricultae in aquā, sed multae et parvae rānae. Hīc, nōn in agrīs, habitābant et clāmābant, “Brekekekex koax koax!”

testis ūnus *testis* nūllus

ager, agrī , m. – <i>field</i>	servus, -ī , m. – <i>enslaved person, slave</i>
amicus, -ī , m. – <i>friend</i>	
equus, -ī , m. – <i>horse</i>	fidus, -a,-um (adj. + Dative) – <i>faithful, loyal</i>
frūmentum, -ī , n. – <i>grain</i>	meus, -a,-um (adj.) – <i>my, mine</i>
gladius, -īi , m. – <i>sword</i>	nūllus, -a,-um (adj.) – <i>no, none</i> **
periculum, -ī , n. – <i>danger</i>	sōlus, -a,-um (adj.) – <i>alone, only</i> **
puer, puerī , m. – <i>boy; (pl.) boys, children</i>	tuus, -a, -um (adj.) – <i>your, yours (s.)</i>

**The genitive & dative singular are irregular; these endings will be given later.

Masculine Second Declension Nouns

Second declension nouns that end in **-us** and **-er** are masculine. All **-us** nouns are declined like **equus**.

MASCULINE SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN **-us**

equus, m., *horse*

	SING	PLUR
NOM	equus	equī
GEN	equī	equōrum
DAT	equō	equīs
ACC	equum	equōs
ABL	equō	equīs

Nouns that end in **-er** in the nominative singular are of two types, those that decline like **puer** and those that decline like **ager**. Whereas the **e** in the nominative singular of **puer** is part of the actual stem, the one in **ager** is not, and so it disappears in the rest of the declension. In order to know with which type of **-er** noun you are dealing, you must observe and learn the form of the genitive singular in the vocabulary lists. Notice that, except for the nominative singular's **-er**, these nouns have exactly the same endings as the **-us** nouns. (Notice also that all these masculine nouns have the same endings as the neuter **-um** nouns in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular and in the genitive, dative, and ablative plural).

MASCULINE SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN **-er**

ager, m., *field* **puer**, m., *boy*

	SING	PLUR	SING	PLUR
NOM	ager	agrī	puer	puerī
GEN	agrī	agrōrum	puerī	puerōrum
DAT	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs
ACC	agrūm	agrōs	puerum	puerōs
ABL	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs

LESSON 9

SUMMARY OF SECOND DECLENSION ENDINGS

	MASCULINE		NEUTER	
	SING	PLUR	SING	PLUR
NOM	-us, -er	-ī	-um	-a
GEN	-ī	-ōrum	-ī	-ōrum
DAT	-ō	-īs	-ō	-īs
ACC	-um	-ōs	-um	-a
ABL	-ō	-īs	-ō	-īs

Vocative Case

The vocative forms of **-er** nouns are the same as the nominative for both singular and plural (**ager, agrī**), but for -us nouns the vocative singular ends in a short e: equē, amīce, etc. The vocative plural of **-us** nouns is the same as the nominative (**equī, amīci**).

First and Second Declension Adjectives

Below is the full declension of the adjective **bonus, -a, -um**, which uses the endings of the first and second declensions. Its masculine forms, including the vocative singular, use the same endings as **equus**, its feminine forms the same as **terra**, and its neuter the same as **dōnum**. Almost all the adjectives seen thus far have the same forms as **bonus, -a, -um**. (For the one difference in the declension of **pulchra**, see the next lesson). As adjectives, they must, of course, use the ending that matches the case, number and gender of the noun they modify. To express *large horse*, we must write **magnus equus**; *good gift* is **dōnum bonum**.

bonus, -a, -um, good

SINGULAR

	M	F	N
NOM	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLUR

	M	F	N
NOM	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

The ending of a noun and its adjective will not, however, always have the same spelling. Since **puer** is masculine, in order to express *good boy*, we must write **puer bonus**. Even though the endings are different in spelling, both endings are actually masculine nominative singular, and so they are in agreement.

At this point it is important to remember that there are a few masculine nouns in the first declension, such as **nauta** and **agricola**. Therefore, when modified by an adjective, these nouns take adjectives with masculine endings, e.g., **nauta bonus**, **nautae bonī**, **nautae bonō**, **nautam bonum**, and so on.



Fragmentary Inscription, Roman Forum



Decline these pairs fully in Latin:

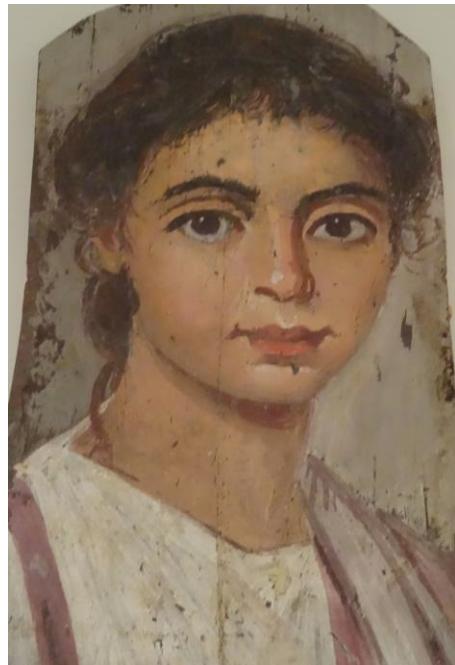
- | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| a) much danger | b) frightened farmer | c) large field, |
| d) nearby boy | e) faithful sailor | f) my life |

9 A

1. Puerō gladium bonum et sagittās novās dedī. Cūr mihi nūllum dōnum dabit?
2. Ibi, puer, meus sōlus amīcus erās; hīc multōs amīcōs habeō.
3. Servī equōs et pecūniām ab īnsulā portābant.
4. Perīculum nōn timent quod multōs gladiōs habent.
5. Nautae bonī multīs cum agricolīs nunc bene labōrant et mox pecūniām habēbunt.
6. Fīliae aliōs equōs in viā vīdērunt.
7. Fēmina sōla quattuor puerōs in silvā perīculōsā servāre temptāvit.
8. Equīs amīcōrum fīdōrum frūmentum dabimus.
9. Cūr, amīce, fīliae tuae templum nōn mōnstrāvistī?
10. Puer in agrō silvae propinquō cum amīcō fīdō ambulābit.

9 B

1. My friends, save the large horse and the famous farmer.
2. I am looking at the strange frog and I am frightened.
3. There is no danger because they do not have swords.
4. Friend, you are my only friend; I like you.
5. Your (s.) field is near the pleasing island.
6. Boy, carry the farmer's grain out of the small field.
7. The friends of the four boys were always faithful.
8. No danger is a good danger.
9. The slave has been the dear friend of other slaves.
10. And so the goddess has given the good sailor gifts.



Mummy Portrait of a Boy
Egypt, ca. 100-150 C.E.
Staatliche Museum, Berlin

Ludus 10

1st and 2nd decl. adjs. in -er
Vir; plural of deus

Ceres and Triptolemus

Dea Cerēs Siciliam amāvit et ibi cum filiā Proserpinā habitāvit. Agricolās semper jūvit. Ubi virī diū in terrīs labōrāvērunt, Cerēs virīs frūmentum dedit.

Tum Triptolemus puer bonus, quamquam in īnsulā Siciliā nōn habitābat, deae fīdus erat. Itaque Cerēs ā Siciliā properāvit et puerō multum frūmentum dedit. “Frūmentum portā, puer,” inquit, “in multōs agrōs. Tibi equōs meōs et currum (*chariot*) meum dabō. Agricolīs dōnum prō deā dabis. Ab agricolīs aurum nōn postulābō: erit parvum dōnum, frūmentum, in ārā meā.”



Ceres, Triptolemus, & Proserpina*
relief from Eleusis, Greece (ca. 440 B.C.E.)

Posteā, quamquam Lyncus deae frūmentī grātus nōn erat, Bacchō fīdus erat. Bacchus quoque, deus vīnī (*of wine*), agricolīs cārus erat. Lynx cum Bacchō saepe stābat.

Puer, “Tē juvābō,” inquit, “magna dea!” Puer sōlus equōs Cereris (*of Ceres*) statim vocāvit et currum parāvit. In Scythiam properāvit, ubi Lyncus erat rēx (*king*). Prō templō stetit et Lyncō frūmentum mōnstrāvit. Ubi Lyncō dōnum novum dedit, ā virō nūllum praemium postulāvit.

Lyncus nōn erat vir bonus; īrātus erat. “Cūr in terrās meās, puer, properāvistī et quid mihi dedistī?”

“Dōnum prō deā Cerere in terrās portō ubi fuit nūllum frūmentum.”

Nunc Lyncus agricolīs dōnum dare dēsiderāvit quod glōriam (*fame*) dēsiderāvit. Noctū Triptolemum necāre temptāvit, sed dea perīculum vīdit et statim puerum servāvit. Dea Lyncum in lyncem (*lynx*) mūtāvit; Lyncus erat miser quod nōn erat Lyncus.

sīc semper tyrannīs

mūtō, mūtāre (1), mūtāvī – <i>change; change one thing into another (+ in + Accus.)</i>	vir, virī , m. – <i>man, male, husband</i>
parō, parāre (1), parāvī – <i>prepare (+ infin.)</i>	līber, lībera, līberum (adj.) – <i>free</i>
postulō, postulāre (1), postulāvī – <i>demand</i>	miser, misera, miserum (adj.) – <i>wretched, miserable</i>
aurum, -ī , n. – <i>gold</i>	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (adj.) – <i>beautiful, handsome</i>
deus, -ī , m. – <i>god</i> ; dī (Nom. pl.), dīs (Dat. & Abl. pl.)	quamquam (conj.) – <i>although</i>
praemium, -īī , n. – <i>reward</i>	statim (adv.) – <i>immediately, at once</i>
quid (interrogative pron., neut. Nom. & Accus. sing.) – <i>What?</i>	

First and Second Declension Adjectives in -er

Some adjectives have a masculine singular ending of **-er** instead of **-us**. As with the two types of **-er** nouns (**ager, agrī**; **puer, puerī**), there are **-er** adjectives such as **līber, lībera, līberum, free**, in which the **-e-** of the masculine nominative singular is part of the stem and remains throughout the declension; there are also ones such as **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful**, in which the **-e-** appears only in the first form, the masculine nominative singular. The nominative singular line given for these adjectives in the vocabulary lists indicates whether the **-e-** of the first form is part of the stem or not. Below are the full declensions of **līber** and **pulcher**. Notice that all the endings other than the masculine nominative singular are the same as those of **bonus, -a, -um**.

līber, lībera, līberum, free

SING

	M	F	N
NOM	līber	lībera	līberum
GEN	līberī	līberae	līberī
DAT	līberō	līberae	līberō
ACC	līberum	līberam	līberum
ABL	līberō	līberā	līberō

PLUR

	M	F	N
NOM	līberī	līberae	lībera
GEN	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
DAT	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
ACC	līberōs	līberās	lībera
ABL	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful

SING

	M	F	N
NOM	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
GEN	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
DAT	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
ACC	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
ABL	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLUR

	M	F	N
NOM	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
GEN	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
DAT	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
ACC	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
ABL	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

As always, these adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify. Thus the genitive singular of *the free farmer* is **agricolae liberī**; of *the free boy* is **puerī liberī**; of *the beautiful boy* is **puerī pulchrī**.

Vir and Deus

Vir, man (in the sense of *male*), is a second declension noun that is irregular only in its nominative singular form. The second declension noun **deus, god** has irregular endings in the nominative, dative, and ablative plural.

vir, man**deus, god**

	SING	PLUR	SING	PLUR
NOM	vir	virī	deus	dī
GEN	virī	virōrum	deī	deōrum
DAT	virō	virīs	deō	dīs
ACC	virum	virōs	deum	deōs
ABL	virō	virīs	deō	dīs

*Source for relief of Ceres & Triptolemus, p.39: Author : Napoleon Vier; Licence: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/en:GNU_Free_Documentation_License; Location: <https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/06/Eleusis2.jpg>



Make each adjective agree with its noun; then decline each pair fully in Latin:

- a) **vir** + **miser** b) **puella** + **pulcher** c) **puer** + **pulcher**
d) **deus** + **liber** e) **praemium** + **meus** f) **ager** + **cārus**

10 A

1. Quamquam nauta fidus olim tē juvābat, nunc tibi grātus nōn est.
2. Puerī aurum nunc postulant quod virōs in īsulā servāvērunt.
3. In magnō agrō equōs pulchrōs fēminaē spectābam.
4. Quid hodiē dē vītā deōrum narrāvit?
5. Tum multī agrōs agricolārum miserōrum occupāvērunt.
6. Cūr semper cum amīcīs et magnīs virīs pugnāre parābās?
7. Posteā erant multī virī in viā.
8. Fēminaē līberae dōna statim parābunt et deō dare properābunt.
9. Puer miser in epistulā multa scrībit.
10. Magnī dī virīs et fēminīs multa et magna praemia dant.

10 B

1. The free farmer was a good man.
2. At once he gave you a large reward; later he gave you another.
3. Although the good god tried to help the men, they were miserable for a long time.
4. What did you (s.) demand from my friend?
5. Hasten immediately from the shore, boy, and carry the grain into other lands!
6. And so the gold was not pleasing to the woman.
7. The gods have changed the horse into a handsome man.
8. The wretched girls were walking out of the fields with the men.
9. You (pl.) are preparing to fight, but you will not conquer the slaves.
10. Although there is no danger here, we are carrying swords and long spears (not **hasta**).

Ludus 11

Vocative of *-ius* nouns & *meus*
Ablative of Means
“to” in Latin

Ceres and Proserpina*

Proserpina, filia pulchra Cereris (gen. sg.) et Jovis (*of Jupiter*), in Siciliā habitābat. Ōlim in locō lacū Pergō (Lake Pergus, dat. sg.) propinquō cum aliīs puellīs ambulābat et flōrēs

(flowers, acc. pl.) spectābat. Tum Venus, dea amōris (*of love*), ante templum ad Erycem (Eryx, acc. sg.) stetit et ē locō altō (*high*) puellam vīdit. Deinde filium Cupīdinem (Cupid, acc. sg.) vocāvit. “Nunc,” inquit, “rēgnū meū, mī fīlī, magnum est quod virī, fēminaē, et dī sagittās tuās timent. Sed Plūto, deus terrae mortuōrum (*of the dead*), nunc sōlus est līber. Itaque Plūtōnem sagittā tuā statim vulnerā (*wound*). Posteā rēgnū



Hades Abducts Proserpina
Pinax from Locri, Italy
500-450 BCE

omnium (all, gen. pl.) terrārum erit
meum!”

Plūto in Siciliā ad montem Aetnam (*Mt. Aetna*) fuit. Ubi Cupīdō (nom.) deum vulnerāvit, deus filiam Cereris subitō vīdit et amāvit. Proserpinam sub (*under*) terram currū (*chariot*, abl. sg.) et equīs portābat. Puella territa clāmābat: “Māter (*Mother*) cāra, servā me!”

Proserpina & Hades Board Chariot
Pinax from Locri, Italy
500-450 BCE



*This reading is loosely based on those in the *Homeric Hymn to Demeter* and Book 5 of Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

Erat templum Cereris altō in locō oppidī Hennae (*of Enna*).^{**} Dea hīc stābat et filiam audīvit (*heard*) sed oculīs (*eyes*, abl. pl.) nōn vīdit quod nunc puella sub terrā cum Plutōne erat. Diū per viās, per oppida et aliōs locōs īinsulae properābat et clāmābat: “Filia, ubi es? Tē servāre temptābō. Mē et filiam, incolae Siciliae, juvāte!”

Deinde dea —īrata quod nec terrae nec incolae Siciliae deam juvērunt—ā Jove (abl.) filiam postulāvit: “Frāter (*brother*, nom. sg.) tuus filiam meam et tuam sub terrā habet! Misera sum quod filiam nōn jam habeō! Filiā servā.” Deus, “Sed nunc Sicilia,” inquit, “est misera quod agricolās frūmento nōn juvās; itaque agricolae dīs dōna non dant. Sed Proserpina nunc uxor (*wife*, nom.) frātris (*gen. sg.*) meī et rēgīna (*queen*, nom.) mortuōrum est. Mihi grātum est, sed filiam tibi iterum dabō: dīmidium annī (*for half of the year*) cum mātre, deinde cum Plutōne, habitābit.”

Dea cum filiā nōn fuit misera, sed ubi filia iterum ad Plutōnem redit (*had returned*) Sicilia frūmentum non habuit. Itaque hodiē quoque dīmidium annī aut grātum aut nōn grātum agricolīs est.



Proserpina & Hades Enthroned
Pinax from Locri, Italy
500=450 BCE

^{**}For an image of the site of Ceres' sanctuary at Enna, see p. 109.



**Mt. Eryx, Sicily
Site of Temple of Venus*****



Lake Pergusa, Sicily

***Author: Grzegorzmusical Location: https://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/68/Erice_2015.jpeg
License: <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/deed.en>

ab ovīs usque ad māla

bellum , -ī, n. – <i>war</i>	ante (prep. + Accus.) – <i>before, in front of</i>
filius , -ī, m. – <i>son</i>	aut (conj.) – <i>or</i>
nōs (pron., Nominative and Accusative) – <i>we, us</i>	aut...aut – <i>either...or</i>
oppidum , -ī, n. – <i>town</i>	deinde (adv.) – <i>then, next (in a series)</i>
rēgnūm , -ī n. – <i>kingdom, rule, reign, throne</i>	jam (adv.) – <i>now, already, by now</i>
novem (indecl. Adj.) – <i>nine</i>	nōn jam – <i>no longer</i>
sex (indecl. adj.) – <i>six</i>	per (prep. + Accus.) – <i>through</i>
ad (prep. + Accus.) – <i>near, at (with stationary verb)</i>	post (prep. + Accus.) – <i>after, behind</i>
ad (prep. + Accus.) – <i>to, toward (with verb of motion)</i>	postrīdiē (adv.) – <i>(on) the next day</i>
	trāns (prep. + Accus.) – <i>across</i>

Vocative of **-ius** nouns and **meus**

The vocative singular of **-ius** masculine second declension nouns, such as **filius**, ends in **-ī**. The masculine vocative singular of **meus** is **mī**.

Frūmentum, filī, ex agrō portā. *Carry the grain out of the field, son.*
Mē, mī amīce, *saepe jūvistī.* *You, my friend, have often helped me.*

You have now encountered the only three vocative forms that differ from the nominative forms. Make a list of them.

Ablative of Means

To express the thing(s) by means of which someone does something, Latin uses the ablative case without a preposition.

The farmers conquer the town by/with spears.
We overcome the flames by/with water.
The girl saved the horse with a sword.

Agricolae oppidum hastīs superant.
Flammās aquā superāmus.
Puella equum gladiō servāvit.

Two notes on Grammar and Translation

1) It is important to remember that prepositions in Latin connect words to verbs. In English prepositions can also link words to nouns to form a descriptive phrase, e.g., *the farmer in the dell*, *the girl from Florida*, or *a cat on a hot tin roof*. When translating a Latin prepositional phrase, however, always attach it to its verb—usually by placing it after that verb.

Puella in aquā stābat. *The girl was standing in the water.*
 (NOT: *The girl in the water was standing.*)

Equus trans aquam ad templum properat. *The horse hastens across the water to the temple.*
 (NOT: *The horse across the water hastens to the temple.*)

2) The English preposition *to* is used in a variety of ways: *we sail to the island* (preposition); *we want to stand* (complementary infinitive); *we gave gold to our friends, too* (introducing indirect object); *we gave gold to avoid war* (infinitive expressing purpose). Latin has a different construction for each of these four expressions (three of which you have learned), but in only one case is there a Latin word that corresponds to the English *to*:

Ad insulam nāvigāmus. **Stāre dēsiderāmus.** **Amīcīs quoque aurum dedimus.**



11 A

1. Ante bellum in silvā cum novem amīcīs saepe ambulābat.
2. Postrīdiē aut per silvam aut ad īoram ambulābit.
3. Ad templum deae dōnum novum portāvistī; deinde, mī amīce, ad īaram stetistī.
4. Nauta aliis filiīs meīs magna praemia dedit.
5. Mox magnum et clārum oppidum, filī, spectābimus.
6. Per agrum, vir bone, ambulā et incolās frūmentō juvā.
7. Hodīē tēla et gladiōs parābant quod rēgnū tuū occupārē dēsiderābant.
8. Posteā puellam trāns viam in oppidū equō portārē parāvistis.
9. Longum post bellū agricolae erant līberī
10. Fēmina territa trāns aquam nōn jam nāvigāvit.

11 B

1. In front of the town they will be seizing the gold or fighting with the slaves with weapons.
2. After the reign of the six good man, my son, there were no longer many horses in the fields.
3. They lived on the land for a long time; then they sailed across the water to the island.
4. After the danger I demanded a great reward from the gods.
5. When you (pl.) had stood at the ancient temple, you hastened to the shore on (by means of) horses.
6. Before the war the woman loved her sons; now she will not often look at her sons.
7. Nine free inhabitants were preparing to walk out of the town.
8. Your wretched friend has already seen you and asked you for money.
9. Although we were trying to carry the arrows through the forest into the road, you were not helping us.
10. At that time the gods praised the boys by means of other gifts.

Hippocrates of Gela*

Ōlim Graecī (*Greeks*) ab oppidō Corinthō (*Corinth*) ad Siciliam nāvigāvērunt. Ibi in oppidō novo, Syrācūsās (*Syracuse*), habitāvērunt. Hīc magnum et altum templum Jovis (*of Jupiter*) aedificāvērunt (*built*). Erat multum aurum in templō quod virī deō multa dōna dabant. Sacerdōs (*priest*) templum et aurum servāre dēsiderāvit. Itaque ad templum semper manēbat.

Hippocrates, rēx Gelae (*of Gela*), Syrācūsās occupāre temptāvit. In magnō bellō cum Syrācūsānīs (*the Syracusans*) pugnāvit sed Syrācūsānōs nōn superāvit. Tamen templum Jovis occupāre temptāvit quod aurum dēsiderābat. Servī ad templum properāvērunt et sacerdōtem ita monēbant: “Maximē timēmus quod Hippocrates hīc mox erit. Dōna ē templō portābit. Ā templō statim properāre dēbēmus.” Sed sacerdōs, “Deō,” inquit, “fidī esse dēbēmus. Aurum servābimus.”

Tamen servī territī iterum clāmābant: “Quid – nōs (*ourselves*) aut aurum – servāre dēbēmus?” Sacerdōs, “Juppiter,” inquit, “saepe nōs monēbat et servābat. Hīc manēte, servī.

Auxilium ūrō. Mē juvāte!”



Temple of Hephaestus, Athens (ca. 450 B.C.E.)

Sacerdōs et servī ad templum manēbant. Aurum post templum in parvam silvam portāre parābant, sed Hippocrates jam in templō stetit et sacerdōtem vīdit; servōs et aurum vīdit. Quamquam aurum habēre maximē dēsiderāvit, malus tamen nōn erat. “Manēte, virī. Aurum Jovis nōn jam dēsiderō. Sacerdōtem et servōs laudō quod aurum prō deō servāre temptāvērunt.”

Deinde ā templō ambulāvit et ad āram stetit. “Nunc deō dōna dabō.” Gladium et aurum novum ad āram portāvit. Itaque Syrācūsānī Hippocratem (acc.) nōn jam timēbant sed laudābant.

* This story is loosely based on the account in the *History* (Bk. 10.24.1-2) of Diodorus Siculus, a Greek inhabitant of Sicily who wrote in Greek ca. 60-30 BCE. If factual, the event described by Diodorus occurred in ca. 491 BCE.

ad nauseam

dēbeō, dēbēre (2), **dēbuī** – *owe* (+ d. o.);
ought, must (+ infin.)

habeō, habēre (2), **habuī** – *have, hold*

maneō, manēre (2), **mānsī** – *stay, remain*

moneō, monēre (2), **monuī** – *warn, advise*

timeō, timēre (2), **timuī** – *fear, be afraid of*

videō, vidēre (2), **vīdī** – *see*

auxilium, -iī, n. – *help, aid*

altus, -a, -um (adj.) – *high, tall, deep*

malus, -a, -um (adj.) – *bad, evil, wicked*

ita (adv.) – *so, thus*

maximē (adv.) – *very much, especially; yes*

tamen (adv.) – *nevertheless*

Second Conjugation

Verbs of the second conjugation use the same personal endings as those of the first conjugation, but they have an **-e-**, instead of an **-a-** between the stem and ending; we can call **e** the characteristic vowel of this conjugation. Here are the first three principal parts of the model verb **moneō**, *warn*, and those of the model verb for the first conjugation:

moneō, monēre, monuī

amō amāre, amāvī

Notice that the first form of **moneō** ends in **-eō** and the present infinitive in **-ēre**. (The **e** before the **-re** of the infinitive is always long.) This pattern **-eo**, **-ere** in the first two principal parts is a sure sign that the verb belongs to the second conjugation. Notice also that the third principal part does not have the form typical of a verb like **amō** (**-āvī**). In fact, many second conjugation verbs have the ending **-uī** in the third principal part, e.g., **habeō, habēre, habuī**, *have*, but since several do not, it is crucial to memorize all three principal parts.

Below are the forms of the present, imperfect, and future of **moneō**. All second conjugation verbs are conjugated in the same way.

PRESENT ACTIVE

moneō, warn

SING

- 1st **moneō**, *I warn, am warning, do warn*
- 2nd **monēs**, *you warn, are warning, do warn*
- 3rd **monet**, *he, she, it warns, is warning, does warn*

PLUR

- monēmus**, *we warn, are warning, do warn*
- monētis**, *you warn, are warning, do warn*
- monent**, *they warn, are warning, do warn*

IMPERFECT ACTIVE

- 1st **monēbam**, *I warned, was warning*
- 2nd **monēbas**, *you warned, were warning*
- 3rd **monēbat**, *he, she, it warned, was warning*

- monēbāmus**, *we warned, were warning*
- monēbātis**, *you warned, were warning*
- monēbānt**, *they warned, were warning*

LESSON 12

FUTURE ACTIVE

1 st	monēbō , <i>I will warn</i>
2 nd	monēbis , <i>you will warn</i>
3 rd	monēbit , <i>he, she, it will warn</i>

monēbimus , <i>we will warn</i>
monēbitis , <i>you will warn</i>
monēbunt , <i>they will warn</i>

Imperative

The endings for the imperative singular and plural of the second conjugation are **-ē** and **-ēte**, respectively: **monē, monēte**, *warn!*



12 A

1. Manē, puella! Hīc magnum auxilium habēs.
2. Multa et longa tēla, amīcī, in īnsulam portāre dēbētis.
3. Aliī rēgnum, ubi est multum aurum, occupāre temptābunt.
4. Cūr, puerī, in ḍrā nōn manēbātis sed in altam aquam ambulāre parābātis?
5. Fēmina fīliās ita monēbit: “Bonae mala nōn dēsīderant.”
6. Nautae fīliīs multa dē magnō bellō iterum narrāre dēbent.
7. Deum īrātum videt et ē templō statim properat.
8. Itaque aurum amici meī trāns aquam equīs portāvī.
9. Quamquam puerī agricolās maximē timēbant, in agro manēre dēsīderābant.
10. Dī tibi bona dabunt quod templum et āram gladiō tuō servāvistī.

12 B

1. Fear the rule of evil men, my son.
2. The deep water will remain in the small fields for a long time.
3. Therefore we ought to have many things in the tall temple.
4. The evil man nevertheless prepared to praise the gods very much with gifts.
5. They will always tell the stories in this way (=thus).
6. Next the women were hurrying across the road and warning another friend.
7. After the war we will try to help our daughters with much gold.
8. Why shall I demand help? Where do you see great danger?
9. At night you ought not to walk alone toward the shore.
10. Many frogs remained near the town. We saw the frogs but were not afraid.

Ludus 13

*Passive voice, present tense, 1st & 2nd conj.
Ablative of Agent*

The Capitoline Geese (a honk in time...)

Est in Capitoliō (*the Capitoline hill*) Templum Jūnōnis Monētae ubi multī anserēs (*geese*) habitant. Ita fābula ā Rōmānīs narrātūr.

Oppidum ā Gallīs oppugnātur. Gallī sunt magnī et altī; āriter pugnant. Rōmānī tamen cum Gallīs pugnant sed sagittīs et gladiīs superantur. Multī ex agrīs et oppidō in Capitōlium properant. Ita Rōma ā Gallīs occupātur et Gallī castra ad oppidum habent. Per viās Rōmae ambulant; aurum in castra portant. Deinde oppidum flammīs vastant.

Rōmānī ē Capitoliō Gallōs vident et timent. Gallī Capitōlium occupāre maximē dēsiderant quod ibi est multum aurum. Multī Gallī aurum dare dēsiderant, sed M. (*Marcus*) Manlius, vir bonus, “Aurum, virī,” inquit, “dare nōn dēbēmus. Rōmam armīs, nōn aurō, servābimus.” Multī tamen clāmant: “Ā dīs, Manlī, nōn jam juvāmur. Gallī aurum dā! Posteā Gallī ab oppidō properābunt.”

Manlius tamen, “Hīc sunt,” inquit, “magna templa deōrum Rōmānōrum. Manēte et templa servāte! Dī Rōmānīs auxilium jam dedērunt et iterum dabunt!”

Diū Rōmānī in Capitoliō manent et vigilant. Nūllum frūmentum habent sed anserēs nōn necant; dīs fīdī sunt. Ōlim noctū Gallī Capitōlium occupāre temptant. Ā Rōmānīs nōn videntur quod Rōmānī male vigilant. Anserēs tamen bene vigilant. Clāmant quod Gallī templō Jūnōnis propinquī sunt. Anserēs nunc Manlium monent. Manlius statim virōs vocat: “Anseribus (abl. pl.), Rōmānī, monēminī! Arma celeriter portāte!” Deinde Manlius sōlus in perīculum statim properat et Gallum necat.

Rōmānī gladiīs et scūtīs āriter pugnant. Mox Gallī ā Rōmānīs superantur et Capitōlium servātūr. Itaque post bellum Manlius maximē laudātūr et vocātūr “Capitolīnus”. Tum anserēs quoque ā Rōmānīs laudantur.

Posteā Rōmānī ita narrāvērunt: templum vocātūr “Jūnōnis Monētae” quod anserēs deae Rōmānōs monēbant.

nōn fuī, nōn sum, nōn cūrō

oppugnō, oppugnāre (1), **oppugnāvī** – attack
vastō, vastāre (1), **vastāvī** – destroy, devastate
vigilō, vigilāre (1), **vigilāvī** – keep watch, stay awake

arma, -ōrum, n. pl. – arms, weapons
castra, -ōrum, n. pl. – camp
Rōma, -ae, f. – Rome
scūtum, -ī, n. – shield

lātus, -a, -um (adj.) – wide
Rōmānus, -a, -um (adj.) – Roman;
(noun) m./f. *a Roman*; m. pl. – *the Romans*

ācriter (adv.) – fiercely
male (adv.) – badly, poorly

Passive Voice

The verbs we have used so far have all been in the active voice, which means that the verb expresses either a state or activity which its subject is in or is carrying on, or an action which its subject is performing on someone or something (the direct object). Action verbs, such as *carry, warn, attack, help, hold*, are frequently used in the passive voice, in which case the subject is not performing the action but is the person or thing directly affected or produced by the action. Consider these two English sentences:

The son carries the money.

The money is carried by the son.

The first sentence has an active (transitive) verb; the subject, *son*, is the one carrying, and the object, *money*, is the thing directly receiving, or affected by, the action of carrying. In the second sentence, whose verb is passive, the functions of the nouns are reversed, though the basic meaning of the sentence remains unchanged: the subject is now *money*, the thing directly affected by the action of the verb, while the noun *son* is no longer the subject, but is still the person by whom the action is performed.

Latin, as you might expect, uses a different set of personal endings to create the passive voice of a verb. For the present tense of both first and second conjugation, these endings are as follows:

PRESENT PASSIVE – ENDINGS

	SING	PLUR
1 st	-r	-mur
2 nd	-ris	-minī
3 rd	-tur	-ntur

To form the present passive, we add these endings to the present stem (**amā-**, **monē-**). Therefore to express *the money is carried*, we have in Latin **pecūnia portā-tur**.

PRESENT PASSIVE – FIRST CONJUGATION

amō

	SING	PLUR
1 st	amor , <i>I am loved, am being loved</i>	amāmur , <i>we are loved, are being loved</i>
2 nd	amāris , <i>you are loved, are being loved</i>	amāminī , <i>you are loved, are being loved</i>
3 rd	amātur , <i>he, she, it is loved, is being loved</i>	amantur , <i>they are loved, are being loved</i>

PRESENT PASSIVE – SECOND CONJUGATION

moneō

	SING	PLUR
1 st	moneor , <i>I am warned, am being warned</i>	monēmur , <i>we are warned, are being warned</i>
2 nd	monēris , <i>you are warned, are being warned</i>	monēminī , <i>you are warned, are being warned</i>
3 rd	monētur , <i>he, she, it is warned, is being warned</i>	monentur , <i>they are warned, are being warned</i>

Notice that an **-o-** precedes the personal ending in the first person singular of both conjugations, and that in the second conjugation the characteristic **-e-** precedes the **-o-** (**amor**, **moneor**); all other forms are simply stem + characteristic vowel + personal ending.

Ablative of Agent

To express *the money is carried by the boy*, we need the verb **portātur**, but we also need a way to express *by the boy*, i.e., the person by whom the action of the verb is carried out. In Latin, this personal agent is put in the ablative case and introduced by the preposition **ā/ab**.

Agricolae ā fēminīs monentur. *The farmers are being warned by the women.*
Pecūnia ā puerō portātur. *The money is carried by the boy.*

BUT: **Pecūnia ā flammīs portātur.** *The money is carried away from the flames.*

The ablative with **ā/ab** only expresses the personal agent when the noun is a person noun and the verb is passive. In that case, the preposition must be translated *by*; otherwise, you should translate it (*away*) *from*.

Notice that the ablative of means and the ablative of agent differ in some important ways, even though both may be translated with *by*:

	Type of noun	Latin preposition	Verb	Eng. trans.
ABL. OF AGENT	person	ā/ab	passive	<i>by</i>
ABL. OF MEANS	object	NONE	active or passive	<i>by, with</i>



13 A

1. Castra agricolārum ācriter oppugnāmus.
2. Fēmina cum puerō bene labōrat sed puer epistulās male scrībit.
3. Tamen castra tua ab agricolīs servantur.
4. Cūr lātī agrī Rōmānōrum ā nautīs vastantur?
5. Armīs parvum oppidum occupāre nōn dēbētis.
6. Sex scūta et novem equōs in castra jam portāvimus et mox virīs dabimus.
7. Nunc ā nautā bonō, fīlī, dē aquā malā monēris.
8. In bellō magnīs gladiīs et lātīs scūtīs pugnāvistis.
9. Praemium ā Rōmānā nōn jam postulātur.
10. Vir sōlus semper vigilābat. Ita Rōmam servāvit.

13 B

1. He ought to tell many things about the arms and the man.
2. I stood there with a wide shield because I was keeping watch in the town.
3. The son of the beautiful goddess will remain in danger for a long time.
4. You are seen by the girl, frog, but you are not loved.
5. They have attacked the camp with arrows.
6. The town is being seized by many men; they have large weapons.
7. Why are rewards not demanded by the women?
8. We fiercely attacked the Romans because they were destroying the farmers' fields.
9. The goddess is especially feared by the six bad gods.
10. The camp is near the town.

The Battle of the Gods and the Giants

Juppiter erat rēx (*king*) deōrum et Jūnō erat rēgīna. Decem aliī dī terrās et aquās habuērunt. In terrā erant Gigantes (*Giants*), magnī et malī; rēgnum Jovis occupāre dēsiderāvērunt. Cōpiae Gigantum (gen. pl.) deōs minimē timuērunt; tēcta deōrum armīs vastāre parābant.

Ubi Mercurius, nūntius deōrum, ad Jovem properāvit, deum dē perīculō monuit et Gigantas mōnstrāvit. Juppiter aliōs deōs statim vocāvit et auxilium ḍrāvit. “Diū rēgnum caelī et terrārum habuimus, amīcī, sed nunc ā Gigantibus (abl. pl.) arma portantur et caelum oppugnātur. Aut pugnābitis aut Gigantes nōs superābunt!”

Minerva, dea bellī, “Bene,” inquit, “nōs monuistī, magne Juppiter! Cūr Gigantes ā magnīs dīs timentur? Cūr hīc manētis, dī? Cūr ad arma nōn properāvistis?”

Tum Gigantes et in caelō et in terrā magnō proeliō cum dīs pugnāvērunt. Minerva tēlō multōs superābat. Apollō et Diāna sagittīs āriter pugnābant. Quamquam dī diū et āriter cōpias Gigantum oppugnābant, tamen nōn superāvērunt.

Subitō Mercurius ad parvās īsulās Siciliae propinquās properāvit ubi erat tēctum Vulcānī. Ibi Cyclōpes flammīs labōrābant. “Portāte arma Jovis, Cyclōpes fidī.” (Arma Jovis sunt fulmina [*lightning bolts*]).



Jupiter hurling a lightning bolt (bronze sculpture ca. 450 B.C.E.),
National Museum, Athens

LESSON 14

“Quid, Mercurī, nūntiāvistī? Cūr bellum ā dīs semper dēsiderātur?”

“Nunc perīculum est magnum! Terraē et populī et altum caelum oppugnantur. Gigantes rēgnū deōrum vastāre temptant, sed arma Jovis nōs servābunt. Gigantes nūllum auxilium habēbunt.”

Itaque Cyclōpes fulmina statim parāvērunt et Mercuriō dedērunt. Deinde Juppiter arma habuit et flammīs clārīs Gigantas celeriter superāvit.

dē mortuīs nīl nisi bonum

nūntiō, nūntiāre (1), nūntiāvī – <i>announce, report</i>	tēctum, -ī, n. – <i>roof, house</i>
cōpia, -ae, f. – <i>supply, abundance</i>	centum (indecl. adj.) – <i>one hundred</i>
cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl. – <i>forces, troops</i>	decem (indecl. adj.) – <i>ten</i>
nūntius, -ī, m. – <i>message, messenger, news, report</i>	mortuus, -a, -um (adj.) – <i>dead</i>
populus, -ī, m. – <i>nation, people</i>	minimē (adv.) – <i>least, not at all; no</i>
proelium, -ī, n. – <i>battle</i>	et...et (conj.) – <i>both...and</i>
rēgīna, -ae, f. – <i>queen</i>	



Battle of the Gods and Giants, Roman sarcophagus,
2nd cent. C.E. from a 2nd cent. B.C.E. Greek original, Vatican Museums

Perfect Active Indicative of Second Conjugation Verbs

As you know, all Latin verbs form the perfect tense in the same way. The perfect endings are added to the stem of the third principal part.

PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE - SECOND CONJUGATION

moneō, warn

	SING	PLUR
1 st	monuī, <i>I warned, have warned</i>	monuimus, <i>we warned, have warned</i>
2 nd	monuistī, <i>you warned, have warned</i>	monuistis, <i>you warned, have warned</i>
3 rd	monuit, <i>he, she, it warned, has warned</i>	monuērunt, <i>they warned, have warned</i>

Review of Principal Parts

First

Second

Third

FIRST CONJUGATION

amō
laudō

amāre
laudāre

amāvī
laudāvī

and so all others, except

dō
juvō
stō

dare
juvāre
stāre

dedī
jūvī
stetī

SECOND CONJUGATION

dēbeō
habeō
moneō
timeō
maneō
videō

dēbēre
habēre
monēre
timēre
manēre
vidēre

dēbuī
habuī
monuī
timuī
mānsī
vīdī

IRREGULAR

sum

esse

fui

LESSON 14



**Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome**



14 A

1. Tēcta populī clārī flammā et armīs vastāvimus.
2. Magnae deae semper laudāvī quod ita mē saepe monuistī.
3. Populus in oppidō manēre minimē dēsiderat quod ibi sunt magnae flammae.
4. Multae et antīquae fabulae ā puellā narrantur.
5. Nautam, virum miserum, nōn jam in oppidō vīdērunt.
6. Quid copiīs ante proelium nūntiāvit?
7. Longō in proeliō multī aut sagittīs aut gladiīs āriter pugnāvērunt, sed nunc mortuī sunt.
8. Magnam cōpiam frūmentī, amīce, in tēctum meum portāre dēbēs.
9. Et arma et equōs habuimus; itaque tē minimē timuimus.
10. Nūntius ita dīcit: bene vigilāte quod cōpiae rēginae sunt castrīs propinquae.

14 B

1. You call the men to arms because you have seen the troops of the queen.
2. You (s.) are being praised by the Roman people.
3. The nation has both one hundred horses and an abundance of water.
4. They ought to report the battle to the queen.
5. The next day we tried to carry the grain out of the town with horses.
6. The camp is seen by my friends.
7. They have not feared the gods; therefore they prepare to seize the kingdom of heaven.
8. The message is being reported to me by my loyal daughter.
9. I have not had many (and) new friends.
10. We will remain here because the camp is being attacked with spears by the Romans.

The Danaids

Danaides erant filiae Danaī. Hae ā multīs nōn probantur quod cōnsilium malum probāvērunt.

Rēgnum Danaī fuit in Graeciā. Frāter (*brother*) hūjus virī, Aegyptus, erat rēx Aegyptī. Hic quīnquāgintā (*fifty*) filiōs, ille quīnquāgintā filiās habuit. Aegyptus, vir malus, “Parvum rēgnum meum,” inquit, “nōn satis est. Illud Danaī habēbō.” Deinde in epistulā ita scrībit: “Frāter meus es sed in Graeciā abes. Itaque fīliī meī fīliās tuās in mātrimōnium (*marriage*) dūcent (*will lead*). Mox in Graeciā aderimus.” Servus epistulam illīus in Graeciam portāvit.

Ubi Danaus haec audīvit, ita clāmāvit: “Quam novum et malum cōnsilium! Aegyptō haec nuntiā, serve: fīliīs tuīs fīliās meās nōn dabō. Et ab ōrīs Graeciae et ā tēctō meō semper abesse dēbēs.”

Propter haec Aegyptus bellum parāvit et mox ad Graeciam cum fīliīs nāvigāvit. Contrā cōpiās Danaī pugnāvit et illās celeriter superāvit. Nunc in tēctō Danaī aderat. Illī fīliōs mōnstrāvit et fīliās illīus postulāvit. Danaus territus, “Hīs fīliās meās,” inquit, “mox dabō.”

Posteā illīs puellīs hoc cōnsilium dedit. “Post mātrimōnium virōs tuōs necābitis. Ita līberae eritis.” Deinde quīnquāgintā gladiī illīs ā Danaō dantur. “Hīs virōs noctū superāte.”

Nunc lūna in caelō erat. Danaides virōs dormientēs (*sleeping*) gladiīs superāvērunt. Hypermnestra sōla virum amāvit et necāre nōn temptāvit. Posteā fāmam bonam habēbat quod virum servāvit.

Multōs post annōs cēterae (*the rest*) erant in locīs mortuōrum. Ibi est Tartarus, ubi malī habitant. Illae Danaides malae maximē laborant quod amphorās (*jars*) malās semper portant. Hae sunt rīmōsae (*leaky*); aqua in hīs nōn manet. Aquam tamen hīs portāre temptāre semper dēbent.



Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome

Quid rīdēs?...Dē tā fābula narrātūr.

absum, abesse, āfūī – <i>be absent, be away</i>
adsum, adesse, adfūī – <i>be present, be at</i>
audīvit – <i>he, she, it heard, listened</i>
probō, probāre, probāvī (1) – <i>approve (of)</i>
annus, -ī, m. – <i>year</i>
cōnsilium, -īī, n. – <i>plan, advice; judgment, understanding</i>
fāma, -ae, f. – <i>rumor, reputation</i>
locus, -ī, m. – <i>place, location</i>
loca, -ōrum, n. pl. – <i>places, locations</i>

satis (noun & adv.) – <i>enough, sufficient(ly)</i>
hic, haec, hoc (demonstrative pron.) – <i>this (s.), these (pl.)</i>
ille, illa, illud (demon. pron.) – <i>that (s.), those (pl.)</i>
contrā (prep.+ Accus.) – <i>against</i>
propter (prep. + Accus.) – <i>on account of</i>
quam (adv.) – <i>how (in exclamations)</i>

Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives

Demonstratives are words that point out someone or something for special attention. They can function as adjectives or stand alone as pronouns. Two of the Latin demonstratives are **hic**, *this*, *these*, and **ille**, *that*, *those*. **Hic** generally denotes something that is near the speaker in place, time, or thought, **ille** something that is more remote. Notice that in the standard English translation of both **hic** and **ille** different words are used for singular and plural.

hic, this (s.), these (pl.)

SING

	M	F	N
NOM	hic	haec	hoc
GEN	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus
DAT	huic	huic	huic
ACC	hunc	hanc	hoc
ABL	hōc	hāc	hōc

PLUR

	M	F	N
NOM	hī	hae	haec
GEN	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC	hōs	hās	haec
ABL	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, that (s.), those (pl.)

SING

	M	F	N
NOM	ille	illa	illud
GEN	illīus	illīus	illīus
DAT	illī	illī	illī
ACC	illum	illam	illud
ABL	illō	illā	illō

PLUR

	M	F	N
NOM	illī	illae	illa
GEN	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC	illōs	illās	illa
ABL	illīs	illīs	illīs

When used as adjectives, **hic** and **ille** must agree in case, number, and gender with the noun they modify: **hoc perīculum**, *this danger*; **illae cōpiae**, *those troops*; **illōrum nuntiōrum**, *of those messengers*.

When **hic** and **ille** are used as pronouns, they normally refer to a person or thing already mentioned, or soon to be mentioned. In translation, you will often need to supply a noun along with the demonstrative.

Terra mihi grāta est, sed nauta hanc nōn amat.

The land is pleasing to me, but the sailor does not like this (land).

In some cases, **hic** and **ille** may refer to two preceding things or ideas; in such cases, **hic** generally refers to the closer of two, *the latter*, and **ille** to the first, *the former*.

Tēctum in oppidō et aliud ad silvam habeō; illud est pulchrum, sed hoc quoque amō.

I have a house in the town and another near the woods; the former is beautiful, but I also love the latter.

The Compound Verbs **Absum**, and **Adsum**

Absum, *be away, be absent*, and **adsum**, *be present, be at*, are typical examples of compound verbs made with prefixes. These two consist of the verb **sum** and the prefixes **ab-** and **ad-**. They are conjugated exactly like **sum** in all tenses; the prefixes remain unchanged, except that in the perfect **ab-** becomes **ā-**.

LESSON 15

absum, *be away, absent*

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
SING	PLUR	SING	PLUR
1 st absum	absumus	aberam	aberāmus
2 nd abes	abestis	aberās	aberātis
3 rd abest	absunt	aberat	aberant

FUTURE		PERFECT	
SING	PLUR	SING	PLUR
1 st aberō	aberimus	āfuī	āfuimus
2 nd aberis	aberitis	āfuistī	āfuistis
3 rd aberit	aberunt	āfuit	āfuērunt

adsum, *be near, present*

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
SING	PLUR	SING	PLUR
1 st adsum	adsumus	aderam	aderāmus
2 nd ades	adestis	aderās	aderātis
3 rd adest	adsunt	aderat	aderant

FUTURE		PERFECT	
SING	PLUR	SING	PLUR
1 st aderō	aderimus	adfuī	adfuimus
2 nd aderis	aderitis	adfuistī	adfuistis
3 rd aderit	aderunt	adfuit	adfuērunt

Though it may seem redundant to us, these verbs are frequently used with the prepositions **ab** and **ad**, from which their prefixes come.

Ad templum adest.
Ab oppidō āfuērunt.

He is (present) at the temple.
They were away from/absent from the town.

A Note on Compound Verbs

Although the literal meaning of the prefix and verb is usually not an accurate translation of the meaning of the compound, by recognizing the parts that make up a compound verb you can more easily learn the principal parts and meanings of that verb.

What other Latin compound verbs made with a prefix have you already encountered?

Decline:

sing. & plur.: a) this faithful sailor	b) this pleasing plan
sing.: c) that daughter	
d) this camp	

**15 A**

1. Nūntius ad illum locum properābit ubi parvī puerī habitant.
2. Haec est puella cāra; ille est puer pulcher.
3. Amīcī in illā ūrā cum equīs ambulant; ā nūllō videntur.
4. Tum contra aliās cōpiās illīus populī pugnāre parābant.
5. Multī agricolae hīs in locīs habitāvērunt.
6. Post hunc annum Rōmāna bona ab oppidō diū aberat.
7. Hic ager est illī oppidō propinquus.
8. Haec ab hīs satis bene probantur; ab illīs nōn laudantur.
9. Quam miser eris propter illud cōnsilium!
10. Hae cōpiae in proeliō nōn aderunt quod perīculum timēbunt.

15 B

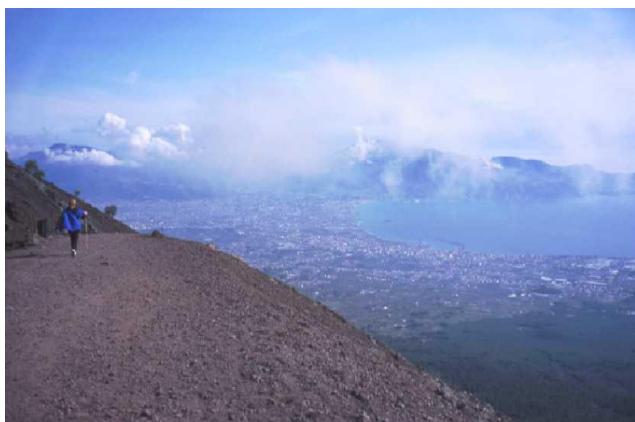
1. He often heard much (many things) about the reputation of those ten inhabitants .
2. On account of this news, one hundred men will keep watch in the camp.
3. These gods also ought to fight against this nation.
4. Next you (pl.) will seize the temple and destroy the altars.
5. This place is away from the town.
6. The next day we did not walk into that deep water because we were afraid.
7. The former women are being watched in the field, the latter in the town.
8. That plan is being sufficiently approved by the queen.
9. The son of this farmer was present and reported this: “We have seen the Roman troops.”
10. The year of that war was long.

Pliny's Letter on the Eruption of Mt. Vesuvius (79 CE)*

C. (=Gaius) Plinius Cornelio Tacitō suō (*his own [friend]*) salūtem (*health*).

Nuntiumne dē morte (*death*) avunculī (*uncle*) meī dēsiderās? Puer (*as a boy*) cum avunculō habitābam. Tēctum illīus erat in locō altō nōn longē ab oppidō Mīsēnō (*Misenum*) et ūrae maritimae (*of the sea*) propinquum. Ōlim māter (*mother*) mea ibi ambulābat et subitō clāmāvit, “Quid videō? Spectā, mī filī, flammās clārās! Quam obscūrum (*dark*) est caelum!”

Caelum spectāvī. Ex Vesuviō magna et clāra flamma vēnit; ibi erat multus fūmus dēnsus (*dense smoke*) quoque. Statim Pliniō, avunculō meō, flammās mōnstrāvī. Ille ita dīxit: “Vocā servōs! Amīcī meī sunt in magnō perīculō propter Vesuvium; tecta illōrum sunt Vesuviō



View from near summit of Vesuvius toward Pompeii

propinqua. Illōs juvāre dēbeō. Nōnne servī adsunt? Quī mē juvābunt?” Deinde avunculus mihi dīxit, “Num in perīculum properāre dēsiderās? Hīc cum mātre manē.” Ille ad ūram properāvit et celeriter ad tecta amīcōrum nāvigāvit. Librōs (*books*) meōs habuī et diū labōrāvī. Noctū quoque vigilābam quod avunculum meum exspectābam.

Postrīdiē fuit magnus tremor (*shaking*) terrae. Propter fūmum dēnsum caelum nōn vīdimus. Cinis (*ash*) fuit altus in terrā et circum mūrōs tēctī. Hoc novum perīculum timuimus; itaque longē ā tēctō per viās Mīsēnī properāvimus, sed viae erant obscūrae; multī territī per viās properābant et clāmābant, “Ubi properābimus? Ā quō auxilium ūrābimus? Cūr dī nōs necāre dēsiderant?”

Multās post hōrās iterum ad tēctum ambulāvimus. Avunculus āfuit. Itaque clāmāvimus, “Nōnne Plinius venit? Num ad Vesuvium mānsit?”



Ubi postrīdiē nūntius vēnit, mihi dē avunculō Pompeian Victim of Vesuvius' Eruption in 79 C.E. meō narrāvit. “Vesuvius,” inquit, “multōs oppidōrum Pompeiōrum et Herculāneī necāvit; agrōs et tēcta vastāvit. Avunculus tuus amīcōs fortiter servāvit sed nunc est mortuus.”

*This reading is loosely based on Pliny the Younger's actual letter (6.16) in answer to the historian Tacitus' request for an account of Pliny the Elder's death.

Annō Dominī (A.D.)

dīcit – <i>he, she, it says, speaks, tells</i>
dīxit – <i>he, she, it said, spoke, told, has said</i>
mittit – <i>he, she, it sends</i>
venit – <i>he, she, it comes</i>
vēnit – <i>he, she, it has come, came</i>
quis, quid (interrogative pron.) – <i>who?, what?</i>
socius, -ī , m. – <i>ally, companion</i>

barbarus, -a, -um (adj.) – <i>foreign, barbarous; (noun) m./f. – foreigner, barbarian, stranger</i>
fortiter (adv.) – <i>bravely</i>
-ne (enclitic) – expects a <i>yes or no</i> reply
nōnne (interrog. adv.) – expects a <i>yes</i> reply
num (interrog. adv.) – expects a <i>no</i> reply

Interrogative Pronoun

In English we often begin questions with the words *Who*, *What*, *Whose* and *Whom*. These words are called interrogative pronouns because they stand in place of an unknown person or thing about which a question is asked. *Who is that girl? To whom did you show this? By whom were you told that? What did you say?*

In Latin, the interrogative pronoun has the forms listed below. Notice that in the singular there is one form for both masculine and feminine, while in the plural there are separate feminine forms. While these forms are a combination of various types of endings, you will recognize some of the same irregular forms seen in the demonstratives, e.g., **cūjus** (**hūjus**), **cui** (**illī**).

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

SINGULAR

	M, F	N
NOM	quis	quid
GEN	cūjus	cūjus
DAT	cui	cui
ACC	quem	quid
ABL	quō	quō

PLURAL

	M	F	N
NOM	quī	quae	quae
GEN	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC	quōs	quās	quae
ABL	quibus	quibus	quibus

As in English, these pronouns come at the beginning of a question, or after one or two words, such as a preposition. Study the examples below.

LESSON 16

Quis mē vocat?	<i>Who is calling me?</i>
Quid narrāvit?	<i>What did he say?</i>
Cūjus equus est tibi grātus?	<i>Whose horse is pleasing to you?</i>
Quem amābās?	<i>Whom did you used to love?</i>
Cui nūntium narrāvistis?	<i>To whom did you tell the news?</i>
Ā quibus castra oppugnantur?	<i>By whom is the camp being attacked?</i>

-ne, nōnne, and num

A simple question expecting a *yes* or *no* answer can be indicated in Latin by the particle **-ne**, which is attached to the end of the first word in the question (which is the emphatic word, i.e., the one on which the question turns). In English, we reverse the order of subject and (auxiliary) verb to express this sort of question.

<i>Is the boy walking?</i>	Puerne ambulat?
<i>Did she hear the story?</i>	Fābulamne audīvit?
<i>Will you give the sailors gold?</i>	Nautīsne aurum dabis?
<i>Will you give the sailors gold?</i>	Aurumne nautīs dabis?

Notice that this construction may change the standard Latin word order.

A question expecting the answer *yes* is introduced in Latin by the adverb **nōnne**.

Nōnne hoc audīvit?	<i>Did he not hear this? (Didn't he hear this?)</i>
	<i>or</i>
	<i>He did hear this, didn't he?</i>

Nōnne filius est īrātus?	<i>Is not the son angry? (Isn't the son angry?)</i>
	<i>or</i>
	<i>The son is angry, isn't he?</i>

A question expecting the answer *no* is introduced by the adverb **num**.

Num hoc audīvit?	<i>He did not (didn't) hear this, did he?</i>
Num filius est īrātus?	<i>The son is not (isn't) angry, is he?</i>

A note on punctuation

Classical Latin, in its written form, seems to have lacked the sort of regular punctuation we have in English. Nevertheless, it is standard practice in writing Latin today, as you have noticed, to use periods, commas, colons, and semicolons as we would in English. This practice includes the use of question marks at the end of Latin questions, even though Latin usually introduces questions with very distinctive interrogative words.

**16 A**

1. Quis gladiōs et equōs ad haec castra mittit?
2. Cūjus filiās spectās?
3. Sagittīs cum amīcīs contrā barbarōs fortiter pugnābāmus, sed jam ab illīs superāmur.
4. Cui illam pecūniām dedistis?
5. Fēmina ad tēctum vēnit. Servusne huic multa dīxit?
6. Quōs ante templūm vīdērunt?
7. Aut sociī aderunt aut sōlī cum cōpiīs barbarōrum pugnāre temptābimus.
8. Num trāns aquam venit? Nōnne trāns agrūm venit?
9. Nōnne in hōc proeliō sociōs armīs juvāre dēbēmus?
10. Tēlane illīus deae timēs?

16 B

1. Who has said those things? What does he say now?
2. Whose companion is coming?
3. To whom did we give those wide shields?
4. Whom did you see and what did you report?
5. By whom is that boy being warned?
6. Who (pl.) will approve this battle?
7. Is he sending the foreign women to the town of Rome?
8. He is sending the troops to the town, isn't he? Yes.
9. He is not sending a supply of grain to the camp, is he? No.
10. Whom (pl.) did they try bravely to save?

Another Tale of Vesuvius (79 CE)*

Quis sum? Herculaneī (*at Herculaneum*) serva (*slave*) Līviae fuī. Ā dominā (*owner [female]*) meā Anna vocor. Quō nōmine (*By what name*) ōlim pater et māter mē vocāvērunt? Nōn meminī (*remember*). Illī pauperēs (*poor*) et miserī mē vendidērunt (*sold [into slavery]*).

Quō in locō Herculaneum fuit? Illud oppidum fuit inter Vesuvium et ōram maritimam (*of the sea*). Quamquam domina in magnō tectō habitāvit et multum aurum habuit, vīta servōrum hūjus erat dūra (*difficult*). Cotidiē (*every day*) in tēlā (*loom*) et in culīnā (*kitchen*), ubi erat fūmus dēnsus (*dense smoke*), diū labōrāvī. Parvam filiam dominae quoque cūrāvī (*cared for*). Saepe domina mē multam aquam e fonte pūblicō (*public fountain*) ad tectum portāre jussit. Nōnne hoc est opus (*job*) virōrum, nōn parvae puellae? Itaque hōrae longae semper erant et semper dēfessa (*tired*) eram, sed bene labōrāre temptāvī.

Ōlim dum in culīnā labōrō, subitō fuit magnus tremor (*shaking*) terrae. Statim dominus master) servōs vocāvit et dīxit, “Tremor magnum periculum nuntiat. Quod auxilium adest? Num in tectō manēre dēbēmus? Cui servō filiam meam dabō? Quae serva eam servābit?” Deinde domina mē filiam parāre jussit. Posteā, dum filiām post dominam ē tectō et per mūrōs oppidī portō, hoc vīdī: multis fūmus magnō cum murmure (*rumbling*) ē Vesuviō vēnit.

Nōn longē ā mūrīs erant magnae et altae cellae (*vaulted chambers*) ūrae propinqae ubi nautae saepe labōrābant. Ubi dominus ā nautā auxilium postulāvit, ille dīxit: “Nōn navigābimus quod ventī (*the winds*) sunt malī. In hās cellās properāte!” Tum dominus ita dīxit: “Equō cum hōc servō properābō; ex aliō oppidō auxilium portābō. Hīc in cellīs noctū manēte. Bene vigilāte et mē exspectāte.” Noctū cellae erant obscūrae (*dark*) et territa eram. Tamen dominae propinqua mānēbam et parvam filiam hūjus in brāchīis (*arms, abl.*) meīs habēbam.

Inscription on a Cenotaph Found near Herculaneum

Anna Līviae, serva.

Pro aliīs fortiter et honestē

per vītam labōrāvit.

Vesuvius necāvit.

Vīxit annōs xiv.

Philologus cōservus hoc dat.

honestē – *honorabley* **vixit** – *lived* **conservus** – *fellow slave*

*The reading and inscription are fictions based loosely on analysis of three skeletons excavated in the ship sheds at Herculaneum in the 1980s and on a surviving epigraphic dedication to a fellow slave found in Rome.

inter alia

jubeō, jubēre (2), **jussī** – *order* (+ Accus. + Infin.) **qui, quae, quod** (interrog. adj.) – *which?, what?*

hōra, -ae, f. – <i>hour</i>	circum (prep. + Accus.) – <i>around, about</i>
liber, librī, m. – <i>book</i>	inter (prep. + Accus.) – <i>between</i> (2), <i>among</i> (3+)
mūrus, -ī, m. – <i>wall</i>	longē (adv.) – <i>far, at a distance, by far</i>

Interrogative Adjective

The interrogative adjective, rather than standing alone as a pronoun, modifies nouns about which a question is being asked. Our English equivalents are *Which* and *What*. *What town did you see? In which places was there a supply of water?*

The forms of the interrogative adjective are quite similar to those of the pronoun seen in the previous lesson, but notice that the adjective differs from the pronoun in that its singular has

- a separate set of feminine forms;
- a different nominative form for the masculine, **qui**; and
- a different nominative and accusative form for the neuter, **quod**.

The plural of the adjective is the same as that of the pronoun.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

SING

	M	F	N
NOM	qui	quae	quod
GEN	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus
DAT	cui	cui	cui
ACC	quem	quam	quod
ABL	quō	quā	quō

PLUR

	M	F	N
NOM	qui	quae	quae
GEN	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC	quōs	quās	quae
ABL	quibus	quibus	quibus

Notice the difference in the uses and translations of the pronoun and adjective in the sentences below.

LESSON 17

*What did you see?
Which temple did you see?*

**Quid vīdistī?
Quod templum vīdistī?**

*Who is here?
What man is here?*

**Quis adest?
Qui vir adest?**



17 A

1. Quid vīdit? Quam fēminam vīdistis?
2. Tum tēlīs meīs contrā barbarōs fortiter pugnāvī.
3. Maximē timēbam quod inter multōs et malōs puerōs stābam.
4. Quam ad īnsulam puellās cum librīs properāre jussērunt?
5. Quattuor post hōrās cum cōpiīs barbarīs inter aquam et silvam vēnit.
6. Quibus agricolīs auxilium dare temptābunt?
7. Cūr virī circum mūrōs ambulāre jubentur?
8. Quī nauta in ūrā labōrābat et cui agricolae haec nūntiāvistī?
9. Quamquam sociī meī longē aberant, cōpiās rēgīnae nōn timēbam.
10. Num longī mūrī oppidī vastantur?

17 B

1. The camp was far away from the shore, wasn't it?
2. Will there be a long wall around the houses and the temple?
3. When we had prepared the weapons, the hour of that battle came quickly.
4. What book do those women approve? This one alone is approved by those.
5. Between you and me there were many big frogs.
6. Whose field is being destroyed by the flames?
7. To which horses did you give the grain?
8. Among the one hundred Romans stood these nine barbarians.
9. We have ordered the children of this people to carry the shields.
10. Which wretched farmer will we try to save?



Fountain of San Eustachio
University of Rome



Ludus 18

*Imperfect passive, 1st & 2nd conj.
Predicate accusative*

Romulus and Remus

Post bellum Trōjānum (*Trojan*) Aenēas cum multīs Trōjānīs in Italiam vēnit et oppidum novum aedificāvit. Oppidum appellābātur Lāvīnum.

Ascānius, filius Aenēae, aliud oppidum aedificāvit et Albam Longam vocāvit. Ibi multōs post annōs Numitor, vir bonus, erat rēx. Fīlia hūjus Rhea Silvia appellābātur. Sed Amūlius, frāter virī bonī, rēgnum occupāvit. Rōmulum et Remum, parvōs fīliōs Rheae Silviae et Martis (*of Mars*), timuit. Servum puerōs in flūmen (*river, acc.*) Tiberem (*Tiber*) portāre jussit.

Servus puerōs in aquam terrae propinquam portāvit, sed ibi aqua nōn erat alta. Puerī miserī clāmābant. Ubi lupa (*she-wolf*) hōs audīvit, ad locum properāvit ubi erant. Lupa saepe vēnit et puerōs jūvit. Tum Faustulus, vir bonus, puerōs servāvit.



Romulus, Remus, and the wolf, with the river god Tiber to the right and the Palatine Hill behind. (detail of an altar at Ostia, ca. 110 C.E.)

Posteā Rōmulus et Remus cum agricolīs proeliō Amūlium superāvērunt. Quamquam Alba ā puerīs maximē amābātur, oppidum novum dēsiderābant. Rōmulus ita dīxit: “Quō in locō habitābimus?”

“Oppidum Tiberī propinquum esse dēbet quod ibi lupā bonā juvābāmur.”

“Bonum cōnsilium, Reme, mōnstrāvistī. Quid oppidum novum appellābimus? Nōnne oppidum Rōmulī erit?”

“Minimē! Oppidum Remam vocābimus!”

Frātrēs nunc armīs pugnāre erant parātī. Rōmulus clamavit: “Cui, dī magnī, oppidum novum dedistis? Aut mihi aut Remō ūmen (*sign*) nunc date!” Dī tamen et Rōmulō et Remō ūmen bonum dedērunt.

Sociī Rōmulī ā Rōmulō longōs mūrōs aedificāre jubēbantur. Remus cum cēterīs oppidum novum nōn longē ab illō Rōmulī aedificābat. Tum mūrī Rōmulī nōn erant altī. Remus clāmāvit: “Quam parvī sunt mūrī tuī, Rōmule!” Rōmulus haec audīvit et īrātus erat. Ubi sine amīcīs ad locum vēnit ubi ille stābat, Remum gladiō statim superāvit.

Itaque oppidum clārum ā Rōmulō appellābātur Rōma. Posteā Rōmulus ā Rōmānīs semper laudābātur; illum virum deum vocāvērunt. Tamen hoc factum malum Rōmulī quoque narrābātur.

et cētera (etc.)

aedificō, aedificāre (1), aedificāvī – <i>build</i>	cēterī, -ae, -a (adj.) – <i>the other, the rest of;</i> appellō, appellāre (1), appellāvī – <i>call by name,</i> <i>name</i> (can take predicate Accus.)
videor (2) – <i>seem, appear</i> (+ Infin. or predicate adj.)	parātus, -a, -um (adj.) – <i>prepared, ready</i>
factum, -ī, n. – <i>deed, act, fact</i>	prīmō (adv.) – <i>at first, originally</i> sine (prep. + Abl.) – <i>without</i>

Imperfect Passive Indicative

The imperfect passive uses the same endings as the present passive; before these endings, it has the tense marker **-ba-**. As in the imperfect active, first conjugation verbs use their present stem, which ends in **-ā**, while second conjugation verbs use their present stem, which ends in **-ē**. Below is the imperfect passive of **amō** and **moneō**, with standard English translations.

IMPERFECT PASSIVE

amō

	SING	PLUR
1 st	amābar, <i>I was (being) loved</i>	amābāmur, <i>we were (being) loved</i>
2 nd	amābāris, <i>you were (being) loved</i>	amābāminī, <i>you were (being) loved</i>
3 rd	amābātūr, <i>he, she, it was (being) loved</i>	amābāntūr, <i>they were (being) loved</i>

moneō

	SING	PLUR
1 st	monēbar, <i>I was (being) warned</i>	monēbāmur, <i>we were (being) warned</i>
2 nd	monēbāris, <i>you were (being) warned</i>	monēbāminī, <i>you were (being) warned</i>
3 rd	monēbātūr, <i>he, she, it was (being) warned</i>	monēbāntūr, <i>they were (being) warned</i>

ENDINGS		
	SING	PLUR
1 st	-bar	-bāmur
2 nd	-bāris	-bāminī
3 rd	-bātur	-bantur

Predicate Accusative

Certain verbs can impose a name or quality on someone or something, e.g., *They called this woman queen*. In this sentence, *this woman* is the one they called (direct object), and *queen* is the name or title they applied to her. Similarly, in the sentence *That story makes me sad*, the direct object is *me* and the quality *sad* is imposed on *me* by the subject. Only certain verbs, however, can express this sort of idea.

The same thing happens in Latin. The name or quality imposed must be in the accusative case, as in the examples below.

They called this woman queen. Hanc fēminam rēgīnam vocābānt.

We named the boy Publius. Puerum Publium appellāvimus.

We can form a grammatical rule as follows: verbs of making, naming, and choosing ('factitive' verbs), such as **vocō** and **appellō**, can in the active voice take both a direct object and a second accusative, which is called a predicate accusative. This second accusative is usually a proper name, title, or adjective.

Now observe what happens when such verbs are in the passive voice in both English and Latin. *The woman is named Tullia. Fēmina Tullia appellātur.* You can see that the verb of naming acts as a linking verb and takes a predicate noun in the nominative case. This structure is the same one we have seen so often with **sum**: **Fēmina est Tullia**. Such verbs in the passive can also take a predicate adjective in the nominative: *This nation is called barbarous. Hic populus vocātur barbarus.*



18 A

1. Ille vir appellātur Marcus. Puellam Līviam vocāmus.
2. Num oppidum barbarōrum sine gladiīs occupāre temptābātis?
3. Ā quō virō sociī ad templum mūrīs propinquum vocābantur?
4. Hī parātī vidēbantur sed proeliō nōn fortiter pugnāvērunt.
5. Facta hōrum virōrum nōn ā mē sed ā cēterīs vidēbantur.
6. Quō in locō hī agricultae magna tēcta aedificant?
7. Illumne puerum dē rānīs malīs monuistī?
8. Magnum post proelium cēterī mortuōs ex agrō portāre parāvērunt.
9. Prīmō mē amāre nōn vidēbāris; nunc tibi grāta videor.
10. Barbara hīc stābat. Fāma dē bellō illī ā fīliō narrābātur.

18 B

1. That queen's son was called faithful; the rest of the men were barbarous.
2. Without the help of those companions he is not sufficiently prepared to fight against the Romans.
3. Why were they calling these sailors evil?
4. I seem to be approving the plan of this foreigner.
5. At first you were warned about that book by your daughter.
6. Next the messengers were being ordered to demand these rewards from the Roman.
7. She hastened with the spears to the field of the farmer.
8. What camp was seen by my allies?
9. He was being warned by this message, wasn't he?
10. For a long time I walked around that town without my friends.

Early Kings of Rome

Sabīnī prope Rōmam habitāvērunt. Rōmulus et sociī ējus fēminās eōrum dēsiderābant quod nūllās fēminās in oppidō novō habēbant. Multās fēminās Sabīnōrum cēpērunt (*they captured*). Prīmō eae fugam temptāvērunt, sed mox virī Sabīnī proelium parāvērunt et ācriter cum Rōmānīs pugnābant. Fēminaē proelium nōn dēsiderāvērunt. Inter Rōmānōs et Sabīnōs properāvērunt.



“Cūr pugnātis, virī? Mortuī nōs nec gladiīs nec hastīs juvābitis. Rōmānī fēminīs Sabīnīs vītam bonam dabunt. Eīs nōs sine proeliō date!” Cōnsilium Sabīnārum et ā Rōmānīs et ā Sabīnīs probābātur. Posteā Sabīnī cum Rōmānīs habitābant.



Etruscan tumuli (grave mounds), Cerveteri
(ca. 600 B.C.E.)

Post Rōmulum Numa Pompilius rēgnum habēbat. Eum Rōmānī ex oppidō Sabīnōrum vocāvērunt. Bellum eī minimē grātum fuit;

Rōmam tamen maximē jūvit quod ā deā Ēgeriā amābātur. Ea eī multa et bona cōnsilia dedit. Post Numam Tullus Hostīlius fuit rēx. Bellum saepe parāvit. Multa oppida superāvit et Albam Longam vastāvit. Ea bella fuērunt multa et nōta. Propter haec appellābātur Hostīlius. Deinde Ancus Martius rēx fuit et cum Latīnīs pugnāvit.

L. (Lūcius) Tarquinius Priscus ex Etrūriā in agrum Rōmānum vēnit. Audācia ējus fuit magna et nōta. Prīmō amīcus Ancī fuit, sed posteā filiōs ējus ex oppidō expulit (*drove out*) et ita rēgnum occupāvit. Multīs bellīs agrōs multōrum populōrum occupāvit. Circum Maximum aedificāvit. Filiam virō bonō, Serviō Tulliō, in mātrimōnium dedit. Filiī Ancī tamen Tarquinium necāvērunt. Tum Servius Tullius erat rēx. Rōmānōs mūrum novum circum Rōmam aedificāre jussit.

id est (i.e.)

audācia, -ae , f. – <i>daring, boldness, audacity</i>	nōtus, -a, -um (adj.) – <i>well-known, famous, familiar</i>
fuga, -ae , f. – <i>flight, escape</i>	
is, ea, id (demonstr. adj. & pron.) – <i>this, that; (third person pron.) – his, her, its, their; him, her, them, etc.</i>	nec, neque (conj.) – <i>nor, and not</i> neque...neque, nec...nec – <i>neither...nor</i> prope (prep. + Accus.) – <i>near, close to</i>

The Demonstrative *is, ea, id*

A third Latin demonstrative, **is, ea, id**, can mean either *this/these* or *that/those*. Like **hic** and **ille**, it can function as either an adjective or a pronoun. **ea hōra**, *that hour*; **id factum**, *this deed*; **ea, those things**. Below is the full declension of **is**.

is, ea id, this, that

SING

	M	F	N
NOM	is	ea	id
GEN	ējus	ējus	ējus
DAT	eī	eī	eī
ACC	eum	eam	id
ABL	eō	eā	eō

PLUR

	M	F	N
NOM	eī	eae	ea
GEN	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT	eīs	eīs	eīs
ACC	eōs	eās	ea
ABL	eīs	eīs	eīs

As a pronoun in any case except the nominative, **is, ea, id** usually functions not as a demonstrative but as the third person personal pronoun (*he, him, she, her, it, they, them, etc.*).

Eum amāvimus. *We loved him.***Filiām ējus amāvī.** *I loved his daughter.***Eī multā dē factīs eōrum narrābās.** *You were telling her much about their deeds.*

Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome



Review of Prepositions

Below are lists, organized by case use, of the prepositions covered this term.

Ablative

ā, ab – *from, away from; by*
 cum – *with*
 dē – *concerning, about*
 ē, ex – *out of, from*
 prō – *before, in front of,
on behalf of*
 sine – *without*

Accusative

ad – (+ stationary verb) *at, near*
 ad – (+ verb of motion) *to, toward*
 ante – *before, in front of*
 circum – *around, about*
 contrā – *against*
 inter – (+2) *between, (+3) among*
 per – *through*
 post – *after, behind*
 prope – *near*
 propter – *on account of*
 trāns – *across*

Ablative or Accusative

in – (+ Abl.) *in, on*
 – (+ Accus.) *into, onto*

 [Lesson 20]
 sub – (+ Abl.) *under, at the
foot of*
 – (+ Accus.) *under]*

Review of Correlative Expressions

nec...nec... / neque...neque...	<i>neither...nor...</i>
aut...aut...	<i>either...or...</i>
et...et...	<i>both...and...</i>

Here are some other lists you should make and keep for regular review:

- 1) intransitive verbs
- 2) verbs taking a complementary infinitive
- 3) linking verbs (*to be* is NOT the only one you have learned this term.)
- 4) *give, show, tell* verbs
- 5) adverbs, divided into those of time, of place, etc.
- 6) adjectives taking a dependent dative
- 7) words relating to war
- 8) words relating to the household
- 9) words relating to public life



19 A

1. Post id bellum hunc populum neque magnum neque clārum appellāvimus.
2. Prope mūrōs oppidī stat sed ārās mūrīs propinquās nōn videt.
3. Dea in hōc proeliō filium servāre temptāvit. Eī auxilium dedit.
4. Noctū semper vigilābam quod oppidum servāre temptābam.
5. Ubi puer in agrō agricolārum bene labōrāvit, ab eīs pecūniām postulāvit.
6. Post fugam barbarōrum rēgīna nōta multa tēcta eōrum flammīs vastāvit.
7. Prope castra frūmentum habēbāmus; noctū id occupāre temptāvistis.
8. Nōnne audācia eōrum erat magna? Eōs nōn jūvābō.
9. Socius meus arma postulat. Ex oppidō, virī, ad rēgnūm ējus ea statim portāte!
10. Templane pulchra tum ā servīs tuīs aedificābantur?



**Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome**

19 B

1. They like the boy. Do you like that boy?
2. They liked the girl. Did you like her?
3. Boldness is not bad. Do you fear it?
4. That camp was far away; the next day we quickly walked toward it.
5. The queen called the flight of the allies neither boldness nor a new plan.
6. They will watch the town and will not sail to the well known island.
7. That slave had a sword and was trying bravely to save my husband with it.
8. You suddenly attacked their town; and so you seized it.
9. When the men had built the temple, the queen stood near its walls.
10. This messenger stayed; the rest sailed to the island. You saw them, didn't you?

Gaudeāmus igitur!



Ludus 20

Future passive, 1st & 2nd conj.
Dum + present indicative

The Last Kings of Rome

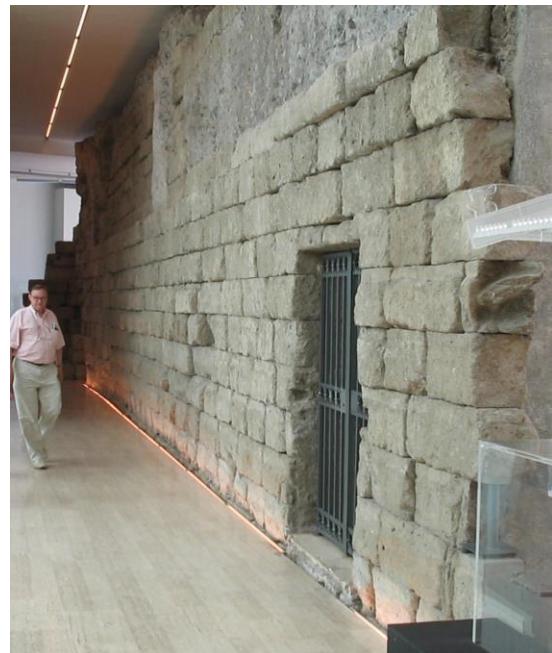
Rōmānī Servium Tullium propter facta bona ējus laudāvērunt. Tamen fīlia ējus Tullia nōn erat eī fīda. Haec et L. Tarquinius Superbus, Priscī fīlius, illum interfēcērunt (*killed*). Dum Servius in forō (*forum*) labōrat, Tarquinius amīcōs illum interficere jussit. Tullia in forum properāvit et statim Tarquinium rēgem (acc.) vocāvit. Nunc Tullius mortuus in viā erat. Tullia, dum plaustrō (*wagon*) ad tēctum properat, eum in viā vīdit, sed nōn mānsit. Ille sub rotīs (*wheels*) fuit. Itaque nec fīlia nec haec via fāmam bonam habuit. Via posteā appellābātur Vīcus Scelerātus (*Street of Crime*).

Nunc Superbus erat rēx. Multa facta ējus erant bona. Multōs populōs superāvit et magnum templum in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Multa tamen facta hūjus erant mala. Propter haec Rōmānī eum Superbum (*the Proud*) appellābant, et ille ā populō Rōmānō timēbātur. Fīlius ējus quoque malus erat. Hic Lucrētiā, fēminā Rōmānam, amāvit et, dum vir ējus ab oppidō abest, ad eam vēnit. Lucrētiae grātus nōn erat; illa virō fīda erat et sē (*herself*) gladiō interfēcit.

Posteā, ubi vir ad tēctum vēnit, Lucrētiā mortuam vīdit. Īrātus multōs sociōs vocāvit et ita dīxit: “Audāciam vēram Tarquiniōrum vidēte: Lucrētia mea est mortua.”

Ubi M. (Marcus) Brūtus haec audīvit, illī respondit, “Nunc rēgnū Tarquiniī nōs sub jugum (*yoke*) mittit! Rōma nōn est lībera, sed auxiliō deōrum līberī erimus. Rōma armīs servābitur.” Hūjus cōnsilium ā cēterīs probābātur. Celeriter arma parāvērunt et contrā Tarquinium pugnāvērunt; ille cum fīliō ex oppidō properāvit.

Posteā Superbus contrā copiās Rōmānās bellō pugnāre et rēgnū iterum occupāre temptāvit, sed Rōmānī eum superāvērunt. Post hoc bellū Rōmānī per multōs annōs vocābāntur līberī.



Foundations of the Temple of Jupiter
Optimus Maximus, Capitoline Hill, Rome
(ca. 500 B.C.E.)

sub poenā

dēleō, dēlēre (2), dēlēvī – <i>destroy</i>	dum (conj.) – <i>while</i> (+ present indicative)
respondeō, respondēre (2), respondī – <i>answer, reply, respond</i>	sub (prep. + Abl.) – <i>under; at the foot of</i> (with stationary verb)
vērus, -a, -um (adj.) – <i>true</i>	sub (prep. + Accus.) – <i>under</i> (with verb of motion)

Future Passive, 1st and 2nd conjugations

The future passive of first and second conjugation verbs is formed by adding to the present stem a tense marker and the passive personal endings you have already learned. Though the tense marker is **-bi-**, the vowel **i** is sometimes changed or lost. Below are the future passive endings and the future passive of **amō** and **moneō**.

FUTURE PASSIVE

ENDINGS		
SING		PLUR
1 st	-bor	-bimur
2 nd	-beris	-biminī
3 rd	-bitur	-buntur

amō

SING	PLUR
1 st amābor, <i>I will be loved</i>	amābimur, <i>we will be loved</i>
2 nd amāberis, <i>you will be loved</i>	amābiminī, <i>you will be loved</i>
3 rd amābitur, <i>he, she, it will be loved</i>	amābuntur, <i>they will be loved</i>

moneō

SING	PLUR
1 st monēbor, <i>I will be warned</i>	monēbimur, <i>we will be warned</i>
2 nd monēberis, <i>you will be warned</i>	monēbiminī, <i>you will be warned</i>
3 rd monēbitur, <i>he, she, it will be warned</i>	monēbuntur, <i>they will be warned</i>

Dum and the present indicative ('historical' present)

When the conjunction **dum** means *while*, it always takes the present indicative, even though it is always referring to a *past* action. The present tense in this **dum** clause must be translated with a past tense, usually the imperfect.

Dum ibi stat, nautam vīdit. While he was standing there, he saw a sailor.

Dum mūrōs spectant, eōs vocāvī. While they were looking at the walls, I called them.

The main verb of such a sentence is often in the perfect tense, and such **dum** clauses normally come before the main clause.



20 A

1. Hoc vērum est: facta hūjus deae bona et clāra vocābuntur.
2. Vir maximē timuit quod fīlius in proeliō erat.
3. Rēgīna nōn aberat. Sociī cum eā sub scūta ambulāvērunt.
4. Cōpiās ad arma vocāte! Sine auxiliō eārum ab hōc populō superābiminī.
5. Dum in tēctō maneō, trāns agrum ad illum locum noctū ambulāvistī.
6. Multās post hōrās respondimus.
7. Incolae sub mūrīs stetērunt et caelum spectāvērunt.
8. Dum nauta haec narrat, fēmina illī respondēre temptāvit.
9. Num lībrī virōrum antīquōrum ā puerīs laudābuntur?
10. Deinde in terram novam properāre ab hīs jubēberis.

20 B

1. Do you see the dead farmer? He is being carried across the field.
2. The flight of the allies will not be called boldness.
3. You (pl.) will be ordered to call her queen.
4. While you (s.) were responding those things to your friends, the tall woman came toward us with a weapon.
5. My deeds are not well known, are they?
6. While the men were standing at the foot of the wall, the boy walked with the horses under the shields.
7. This camp will be attacked by the barbarians.
8. Is this rumor true? Have the other troops destroyed those temples?
9. His miserable friends gave books to them. Why?
10. You (s.) will be approved both by him and by her.

Echo and Narcissus

Narcissus erat puer pulcher. Propter hoc multī puerī et multae puellae eum amāvērunt, sed ille nūllōs amāvit. Superbus erat. Sē sōlum amāvit.

Ēcho erat nympha et Jovem jūvit. Audācia ējus erat magna. Ille deus fēminās et nymphās amāvit, et Ēcho rēgīnae deōrum longās fābulās narrāvit. Itaque Jūnō Jovem nōn vīdit. Ēcho saepe Jovī (Dat.) auxilium ita dedit.

Multōs post annōs, Jūnō cōnsilium hūjus nymphae vīdit. Nunc Ēcho fābulās nōn jam narrāvit. Ultima verba (*the last words*) aliōrum iterum dīxit, sed illa prīma nūllum verbum dīxit. Jūnō, “Cōnsiliane mala,” inquit, “contrā mē parāvistī? Cui nunc illās fābulās narrābis? Rānīsne? Lūnaene et caelō? Illae fābulae nec tē nec virum meum jam juvābunt.”

Misera nympha in silvīs sōla habitābat et vīta ējus erat dūra. Ōlim dum Narcissus quoque in silvā adest, illa hunc pulchrum puerum vīdit et eum statim amāvit. Sed eī nūllum verbum dīxit. Narcissus prope aquam stābat quod dēfessus erat. Subitō nympham audīvit sed nōn vīdit.

“Quis adest?” inquit Narcissus. “Quis adest?” nympha respondit.

“Quō in locō es? Tē vidēre dēsīderō.” “Tē vidēre dēsīderō!”

“Cūr ad mē nōn properās? Tēcum (*with you*) esse dēsīderō.” “Tēcum esse dēsīderō!” iterum respondit Ēcho et puerō sē mōnstrāvit.

Nunc Ēcho prō Narcissō stetit. Ad eum ambulāre temptāvit sed Narcissō nōn erat grāta. “Mēne amās? Sed nec fēminās nec virōs amō. Tē nōn dēsīderō. Tē ā mē statim abesse jubeō. Nōn tē amābō!” Puer fugam statim temptāvit.

Ēcho sōla et misera, “Tē amābō!” respondit. Posteā in silvīs per tōtam vītam semper mānsit. Nec frūmentum nec aquam dēsīderāvit. Deinde nympha nōn jam erat; vōx (*voice*) sola erat et nunc est.

sub rosā

porta, -ae, f. – <i>gate</i>	prīmus, -a, -um (adj.) – <i>first</i>
suī, sibi, sē, sē – 3rd person reflexive pron.	sacer, sacra, sacrum (adj.) – <i>sacred, holy</i>
dūrus, -a, -um (adj.) – <i>hard, difficult, tough</i>	

tōtus, -a, -um (adj.) – <i>whole, entire**</i>

**The genitive & dative singular are irregular; these endings will be given later.

Reflexive Pronoun - Third Person

A reflexive pronoun is one that refers back to the subject of its clause. In English these are combinations of the personal pronouns with *self*: *she saw herself; they call themselves brave*. For the third person reflexive pronoun (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*), Latin uses not **is, ea, id**, but a special pronoun, which has the same forms for both singular and plural.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

SING. & PLUR.; M, F, & N

GEN	suī,	<i>of himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>
DAT	sibi,	<i>to himself, etc.</i>
ACC	sē,	<i>himself, etc.</i>
ABL	sē,	<i>himself, etc.</i>

Notice that no nominative form exists because the reflexive pronoun refers back to the subject, rather than being the subject. The genitive case is not used to show possession (see next lesson).

Fēmina sē spectat. *The woman looks at herself.*

Here the reflexive **sē** is in the accusative singular masculine and refers to the subject, **puer**.

Virī sē spectant. *The men look at themselves.*

Here the reflexive **sē** is in the accusative plural masculine and refers to the subject, **virī**, so **sē** must be translated with the plural *themselves*.

Puellam ad sē vocant. *They call the girl to them(selves).*

Here the subject is ‘in the verb’ **vocant**; **sē** is accusative plural masculine or feminine and refers to the third plural subject of the verb, so it must be translated with the plural *them(selves)*.

It is very important to note the difference in use and meaning between the reflexive pronoun and **is, ea, id**, which, when used as the third person pronoun, refers to someone or something other than the subject. **Eum vīdit** can mean *He saw him*, but *him* is someone other than the subject; **sē vīdit** means *he saw himself*. In the following sentence, **sē** refers to the same person as the subject, **amicus**, but **ējus** must refer to someone other than the subject.

Amīcus ējus nautam ā sē mittit. *His friend sends the sailor away from him(self).*

N.B.: When the ablative **sē** is used with **cum**, the two words are written as one: **sēcum**.

First and second person reflexive pronouns are simply the personal pronouns, some forms of which you have learned, e.g., **mē**, **tē**.

Mē vīdī. *I saw myself.*

Mē vīdit. *He saw me.*



21 A

1. Auxilium, rēgīna bona, ūrāmus quod vīta incolārum est dūra.
2. Fēmina laudātur quod sē et populum servāvit.
3. Quamquam diū puerī sē paravērunt, tamen fēmina eōs nōn probat.
4. Rēgīna agricolās sibi fidōs ex agrīs propter bellum vocābit.
5. Illud oppidum nōn sine auxiliō deōrum occupābitur.
6. Dum ille ad mūrōs manet, cum amīcīs tuīs frūmentum in oppidum portāvistī.
7. Tōtum oppidum – mūrōs, portās, tēcta, et templa – ē flammā et ē gladiīs barbarōrum servāvī.
8. Hic nauta sē bonum appellābat, sed ā cēterīs appellābātur malus.
9. Sē laudābunt quod fīliōs ējus jūvērunt; eōs sēcum ē perīculō portāvērunt.
10. Quī agricultae sub portam sacram nunc ambulāre dēbent?



Porta Appia
("San Sebastiano")
Rome

Original Aurelian
Wall ca. 275 C.E.

Final form seen here
ca. 442 C.E.

21 B

1. He saved him but he did not save himself.
2. She gave a gift to them but not to herself.
3. The handsome farmer will be seen by himself in the water.
4. Their entire nation was ready to attack the walls of Rome.
5. They ought to give rewards to themselves.
6. While the horse was standing under the sacred gate, my friend tried to call it.
7. When they had walked across the wide road, the farmer said much to them.
8. The rest of the men praised the queen but not themselves.
9. She will carry much grain with her under the gates and into the town.
10. What did that woman report to his friend about the dangers?

Ludus 22

Reflexive adjective
Postquam + perfect indicative

Narcissus and Narcissus

Multī Narcissum amāvērunt sed ille puer superbus nūllōs amāvit. Propter id multī erant īrātī. Deōs auxilium ūrābant: “Narcissus vītam bonam habēre nōn dēbet. Miserī sumus quod nōs nōn amat. Nōnne malus vidētur? Nōnne vītam dūram habēre dēbet?”

Postquam dea Nemesis eōs audīvit, ita malum parāvit. Ōlim Narcissus dēfessus in silvā aquam dēsiderābat. In locō aquae propinquō erat. Sē in aquā vīdit. Puer pulcher ā pulchrō puerō vidēbātur, sed prīmō puer aliis, nōn Narcissus, esse vidēbātur. Narcissus miser eum statim amāvit. Sē amāvit!

“Tē amō, puer grāte, et semper amābō quod pulcher es! Sed quis es? Ex aquā properā! In terrā stā. In silvīs habitābimus et vītam bonam habēbimus.” Ubi puer nōn respondit, Narcissus multa rogāvit: “Nōnne puer mē audīvit? Mē spectat et fugam nōn temptat, sed in aquā semper manet. Eīne grātus sum? Nōnne mē amat? Nōnne ab eō probor?”

Per multās hōrās prope aquam manēbat et aquam semper spectāvit. Posteā ita dīxit: “Tibi multa narrāvī sed, puer, nōn respondistī. Cūr nōn respondēs? Sed multī mē amāvērunt et nymphīs grātus sum. Mē amāre vidēris quod hīc semper manēs et mē spectās!”

Quamquam Narcissus dēfessus erat, tamen ibi mānsit. “Nunc vērum videō! Sum ille puer! Mē spectō et amō! Narcissus sē amat. Narcissus esse nōn jam dēsiderō! Sed sum Narcissus; itaque cum Narcissō nōn sum. Mē amō et mē nōn habeō. Quam miser sum! Tamen tē, puer, amō.” Ēcho in silvā eum audīvit et respondit, “Tē, puer, amō”.



Narcissus prope aquam diū mānsit. Vītam suam servāre nōn temptāvit. Postquam mortuus in terram mortuōrum vēnit, in locō ubi erat aqua sē semper spectāvit.

Narcissus, Caravaggio, National Gallery of Ancient Art, Rome (ca. 1598-99 C.E.)

suum cuique

rogō, rogāre (1), rogāvī – ask for, request; ask, <i>inquire</i>	suus, -a, -um – 3rd person reflexive adj.
vulnerō, vulnerāre (1), vulnerāvī – wound, injure	vester, vestra, vestrum – your, yours (2 nd pl. possessive adj.)
inimīcus, -ī, m. – (personal) enemy	igitur (adv.) – therefore
initium, -ī, n. – beginning, start	māne (adv.) – in the morning
inimīcus, -a, -um (adj. + Dative) – unfriendly, hostile	paene (adv.) – almost, nearly
	postquam (conj.) – after (+ perf. indic.)

Reflexive Adjective

You have already learned the possessive adjectives for first and second persons singular, **meus** and **tuus**. There is no third person possessive adjective; as you have seen, Latin uses the genitive singular and plural of **is, ea, id**. **Oppidum eōrum est magnum**. *Their town is large.* When the possession refers back to a third person subject, however, Latin uses the reflexive adjective **suus, -a, -um**: **puella equum suum videt**, the girl sees her (own) horse.

As with the pronoun **suī**, it is very important to note the difference between the use and meaning of **suus** and of **ējus, eōrum, and eārum**. For example, each of the following two sentences can be translated the same way, but in the first **suōs** tells us that the books belong to the subject, **rēgīna**, while in the second **ējus** tells us that the books belong to someone else.

Rēgīna mihi librōs suōs mōnstrāvit. *The queen showed me her books.*

Rēgīna mihi librōs ējus mōnstrāvit. *The queen showed me his books.*

In the sentence below, to whom do **suō** and **ējus**, both translated with *his*, refer?

Agricola dē amīcō suō et audāciā ējus timēbat.

The farmer was afraid about his friend and his boldness.

Postquam and the Perfect Indicative

Just as **ubi**, *when*, uses the perfect indicative, so, too, does **postquam**, *after*. As with **ubi**, the Latin perfect tense should be translated with the English pluperfect.

Postquam aquam vīdit, nautam vocāvit. *After she had seen the water, she called the sailor.*



Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome



22 A

1. Vir miser sē servāre dēsiderābat; ex oppidō suō igitur fugam temptāvit.
2. Ubi fēmina filium eōrum vīdit, eum ad sē vocāvit.
3. Postquam inimīcus meus mē gladiō vulnerāvit, amīcōs meōs vocāvī et auxilium rogāvī.
4. Multī adsunt et tibi respondēre dēsiderant.
5. Sociī vestrī gladiōs suōs ad castra portāre dēbent.
6. Hae incolae templum pulchrum spectābant; deinde filiīs fābulam dē deā clārā narrabant.
7. Nauta agricolīs pecūniām suām nōn dedit quod eīs inimīcus erat.
8. De initiō proeliī haec nūntiantur: barbarī cōpiās vestrās paene superāvērunt.
9. Puella sē laudat sed eam nōn laudāmus.
10. Puerī in aquā erant. Postquam rēgīna eōs vīdit, filium suum sed nōn amīcōs ējus vocāvit.

22 B

1. Therefore they will wound the men hostile to this nation.
2. After they had asked many questions (things), they praised neither him nor his well-known frogs.
3. Your sons, women, will see the Romans and their allies.
4. That boy will no longer be called hostile by the farmer.
5. Why do they like themselves but not their own horses?
6. In the morning he always wounds himself.
7. These slaves especially wished to call themselves free.
8. The queen did not seem to warn her own troops, did she?
9. Your friends, sailor, were carrying the queen and her daughters through the sacred gate.
10. The beginning of the war has not been pleasing to me.

The School Master of Falerii*

Ōlim Rōmānī cum Etruscīs pugnābant et oppidum Faliscōrum (*the Falisci*) in Etruriā oppugnābant. Ibi erat magister, et filiī hūjus populī cum eō in agrīs saepe erant. Puerī linguam suam discere (*learn*) temptāvērunt quod puerī bonī erant.

Quamquam ille magister erat Etruscus, Rōmānōs in hōc bellō juvāre temptāvit. Māne puerī ex mūrīs oppidī in agrōs cum magistrō suō ambulābant. Hodiē magister puerōs in agrum castrīs Rōmānīs propinquum ambulāre jussit.

Magister prope portās castrōrum stetit et clāmāvit: “Populō vestrō oppidum meum dō.” Puerōs mōnstrāvit. “Hīc ante castra vestra fīliī prīncipum populī meī stant. Ad cōnsulēs vestrōs eōs portāte! Rōmānīs hōs dō. Nōnne nunc amīcus populī Rōmānī sum? Quod praemium mihi dabitis?”

Camillus, dux Rōmānōrum, vōcem magistrī audīvit et respondit, “Rōmānī nōn ita pugnāmus, nec contrā puerōs sed virōs armīs pugnāmus: sunt lēgēs et bellī et pācis.”

Camillus īrātus cōpiās suās magistrum ad sē portāre statim jussit, nec eī praemium dedit. Puerīs eum vinctum (*bound*) dedit. Eōs magistrum ad oppidum portāre jussit. Itaque ad Faleriōs (*Faleriī*) cum magistrō miserō suō ambulāvērunt; patribus et mātribus eum mōnstrāvērunt et facta ējus nūntiāvērunt.

Postquam puerī factum Camillī quoque narrāvērunt, Faliscī Rōmānōs pācem ūrāvērunt. “Factō bonō, nōn armīs, Rōmānī, nōs superāvistis. Sine proeliō vōbis (*to you*) oppidum dare dēsiderāmus quod filiōs cārōs nostrōs nōn vulnerāvistis sed servāvistis.”

*This story is based on Livy's account (*Ab Urbe Condita* V.27) of events in 390 B.C.E.

dūra lēx sed lēx

cōsul, cōsulis, m. – <i>consul</i>	dux, ducis, m. – <i>leader</i>
lēx, lēgis, f. – <i>law</i>	pāx, pācis, f. – <i>peace</i>
lingua, -ae, f. – <i>tongue, language, speech</i>	prīnceps, prīcipis, m. – <i>leading citizen, chief, leader</i>
magister, magistrī, m. – <i>teacher, master</i>	rēx, rēgis, m. – <i>king</i>
māter, mātris, f. – <i>mother</i>	vōx, vōcis, f. – <i>voice</i>

pater, patris, m. – <i>father</i>
pāx, pācis, f. – <i>peace</i>
prīnceps, prīcipis, m. – <i>leading citizen, chief, leader</i>
rēx, rēgis, m. – <i>king</i>
vōx, vōcis, f. – <i>voice</i>

Third Declension - Regular Masculine and Feminine Nouns

The third declension consists of nouns of all three genders. Because the nominative singular sometimes has no ending and sometimes has the ending -s, it often does not show the real stem. The genitive singular shows the stem on which all other forms are made. For example, **dux, leader**, has the genitive singular **ducis**, which consists of the stem **duc-** and the case ending **-is**. As you can see in the declension below, the other forms use that stem, not the nominative singular.

The following points are also important to learn:

- 1) The dative and ablative plural have the same ending.
- 2) In general, the gender must be learned with each noun.

Learn the forms of **cōsul**, **dux**, and **vōx** below, as well as the list of endings.

THIRD DECLENSION MASCULINE & FEMININE NOUNS

cōsul , m., <i>consul</i>		vōx , f., <i>voice</i>		dux , m., <i>leader</i>	
NOM	cōsul	cōsulēs	vōx	vōcēs	dux
GEN	cōsulis	cōsulum	vōcis	vōcum	ducis
DAT	cōsulī	cōsulibus	vōcī	vōcibus	ducī
ACC	cōsulem	cōsulēs	vōcem	vōcēs	ducem
ABL	cōsule	cōsulibus	vōce	vōcibus	duce

ENDINGS

	SING	PLUR	VOCATIVE case =
NOM	–	-ēs	nominative
GEN	-is	-um	
DAT	-ī	-ibus	
ACC	-em	-ēs	
ABL	-e	-ibus	

Nouns of the third declension may be modified by any type of adjective, but the adjective

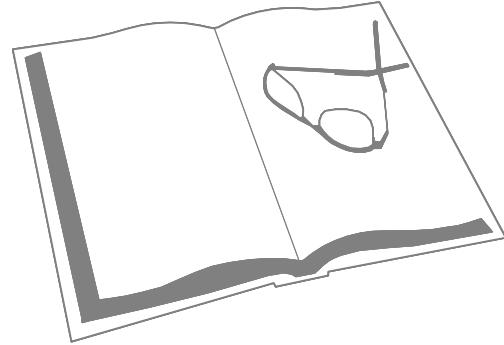
must agree with the noun in case, number, and gender. For example: **cōsulum bonōrum, vōx grāta, magnō ducī.**



Decline: a) **lēx sacra** b) **prīnceps bonus** c) **haec māter**

23 A

1. Magister cum puerīs vōcem cōsulis bonī audīvit.
2. Prīmō populus bellum sed posteā pācem rogābat.
3. Puellae et puerī magistrum suum semper amābant.
4. Cōpiae vestrae ad castra ā duce properāre jubēbantur.
5. Lēgēs cōsulum erant dūrae sed bonae.
6. Quid dea mātribus territīs respondēbit?
7. Amīcus rēgis patrem ējus servāvit.
8. Cui fēminaē facta sua narrāvērunt?
9. Ille cōsul clārus nōn armīs sed linguā inimīcōs suōs vulnerāvit.
10. Cūr mē dē hōc prīncipe saepe monuistī?



23 B

1. We tried to ask many questions (=things) about this chief and his father.
2. While the daughters of the consuls were in the forest, you worked near the temple.
3. The voice of the mother is loud (=great).
4. Therefore good kings ought not to approve bad laws.
5. The speech of the children was not always approved by their mother.
6. The consul did not give money to his son's teacher.
7. The queen was the leader of the deed; she alone was asking for peace.
8. The friend of those leaders did not see their true danger.
9. To whom will they report the battle?
10. At night you (pl.) will not be seen by your enemies.

Horatius at the Bridge

Brūtus, cōsul prīmus Rōmae līberae, Rōmānīs lēgēs bonās dedit. Etruscī tamen rēgnū Rōmae iterum occupāre dēsiderābant. Paucōs post annōs Porsenna, dux Etruscus, Rōmam oppugnāvit. Castra ējus trāns flūmen erant.



Pons Fabricius, Rome (62 B.C.E.)

Rōmānī cum Etruscīs ācriter pugnāvērunt. In hōc proeliō tamen cōpiae Porsennae Rōmānōs superābant; mox hī trāns pontem (*bridge*) fugam temptābant. Horātius Cocles, mīles Rōmānus, jam fāmam bonam habēbat: “scūtum populī” ā Rōmānīs vocābātur. Dum mīlitēs Rōmānī fugam temptant, subitō hic eōs vocāvit. “Sī virī estis, manēte, amīcī! Pontem dēlēre dēbēmus! Haec est sōla salūs Rōmae! Hīc in mediō ponte stābō. Post mē stāte et illum flammā et gladiō dēlēte!”

Horātius scūtum et gladium suum parāvit. Ubi mīlitēs Etruscī hunc—ūnum (*one*) contrā multōs—vīdērunt, ad eum properāvērunt. Horātius multōs vulnerāvit. Etruscī tamen cum Rōmānō pugnābant, sed corpus ējus gladiīs et hastīs suīs nōn vulnerābant.

Rōmānī clāmāvērunt:
“Pontem paene dēlēvimus. Mox nūllam salūtem habēbis. Nunc servā tē, Horātī!” Ille tamen cōpiās Etruscās minimē timēbat et in ponte mānsit. Posteā Rōmānī pontem dēlēvērunt. Nunc lātum flūmen inter Porsennam et oppidum Rōmam stetit.

Horātius deum Jōvem auxilium ūrāvit et sē cum scūtō et gladiō in flūmen jēcit (*hurled*). Hastae Etruscōrum eum nōn vulnerābant quod sub aquā erat. Prīmō Rōmānī territī erant,



sed ubi caput ējus—deinde tōtum corpus—in aquā vīdērunt,
nōn jam prō salūte ējus timuērunt.

Dum hī Horātium laudant, ille in ūrā sēdit; flūmen et
Etruscōs spectābat. Posteā Rōmānī eī praemium dedērunt.
“Hoc genus factī nōn vīdimus. Propter hoc tibi multam terram
damus.”



Portion of a Roman Inscription
Via Appia near Rome



Head of Constantine, Capitoline
Museums, Rome (ca. 320 C.E.)

pater patriae

sedeō, sedēre (2), **sēdī** – *sit, sit down, settle*

caput, capitīs, n. – *head*

corpus, corporis, n. – *body*

flūmen, flūminis, n. – *river*

genus, generis, n. – *type, kind*

homō, hominīs, m. – *human, man*

legiō, legiōnis, f. – *legion*

mīles, mīlitīs, m. – *soldier*

salūs, salūtīs, f. – *safety, salvation*

uxor, uxōris, f. – *wife*

medius, -a, -um – *middle, middle of*

paucī, -ae, -a – *few; (noun) a few*

sī (conj.) – *if*

Third Declension - Regular Neuter Nouns

Neuter nouns of the third declension use the same endings as do masculine and feminine nouns, except in the nominative and accusative. Like all neuter nouns (and adjectives), these have the same form in the accusative singular as in the nominative singular. The nominative and accusative plural have the ending **-a**.

Learn the forms of the model nouns **flūmen**, **genus**, and **caput** below, as well as the endings.

THIRD DECLENSION NEUTER NOUNS

flūmen, n., *river*

genus, n., *type*

caput, n., *head*

NOM	flūmen	flūmina	genus	genera	caput	capita
GEN	flūminīs	flūminūm	generīs	generūm	capitīs	capitūm
DAT	flūminī	flūminibūs	generī	generibūs	capitī	capitibūs
ACC	flūmen	flūmina	genus	genera	caput	capita
ABL	flūmine	flūminibūs	genere	generibūs	capite	capitibūs

LESSON 24

ENDINGS

	SING	PLUR
NOM	-	-a
GEN	-is	-um
DAT	-ī	-ibus
ACC	= nom.	-a
ABL	-e	-ibus



Decline: a) **illud corpus** b) **flūmen sacrum** c) **id genus**

24 A

- Posteā tamen paucī mīlitēs in mediō flūmine fortiter pugnābant.
- Hominēs hūjus generis pācem dēsiderāre nōn videntur.
- Quamquam prīma legiō aberat, cēterae cōpiās barbarōrum prope altum flūmen superāvērunt.
- Sī mīlitēs post mūrōs stant, capita eōrum nōn vidēmus.
- Quī servus gladiō et hastā mīlitem servāvit?
- Paucās post hōrās agrōs barbarōrum occupābimus et frūmentum eōrum ad rēgem portābimus.
- Nōnne illī agricolīs dē salūte uxōrum narrāvērunt?
- Corpora horum prīcipum sagittīs nōn vulnerābantur.
- Illī cōnsulēs lēgēs populī Rōmānī servāre temptābunt.
- Postquam uxōrēs prīcipum trāns flūmen ambulāvērunt, in agrō silvae propinquō sedēbant.



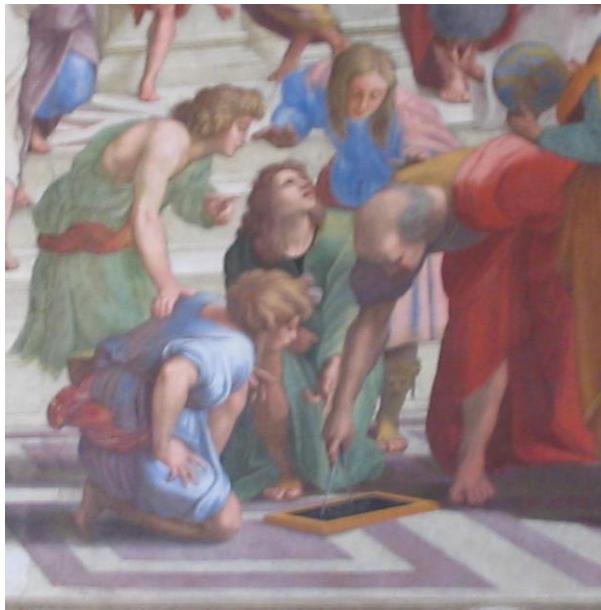
Portion of Euhodus Inscription

Via Appia near Rome

24 B

- That river was in the middle of the field.
- Both the head and the body of the chief were seen by many soldiers.
- What kind of human ought to settle on an island without friends?
- If the legion is in the town, it is (a) good (thing).
- We will sit under the sacred gate near the river.
- The woman had a hard life but was not wretched.
- Is the king attacking the entire camp with a few soldiers?
- The allies are asking the leader about the safety of his father.
- After the beginning of the war a few legions were bravely attacking your (pl.) walls.
- Who will respond to the wives of those teachers?

Another Tale from School*



School of Athens (detail), Raphael,
Vatican Apartments (1508-1511 C.E.)

in tēctum vēnit et librum Gelōnis rapuit (*snatched*); statim ē tēctō ad collēs, ubi erat magna silva, properāvit.

Gelon quoque ē tēctō properāvit quod librum suum servāre dēsiderāvit. Paucās post hōrās procul ab urbe in mediā silvā stābat. Nox erat. Lopus in summō colle stetit, et Gelon eum vīdit. Animālī tamen nōn appropinquābat quod nunc territus erat. Undique silvam et undique collēs vidēbat. Per tōtam noctem ibi sōlus mānsit et dē salūte suā timuit. Māne lupus āfuit.



Disputation of the Sacrament (detail), Raphael,
Vatican Apartments (1508-1511 C.E.)

LESSON 25

Gelon sine morā ad urbem properāvit. Postquam ad tēctum magistrī vēnit, prīmō nec magistrum nec amīcōs suōs vīdit. Tēctum nōn jam stābat. Erant tamen in terrā multa corpora puerōrum mortuōrum.

Prīcipēs urbis et uxōrēs eōrum appropinquābant. Ubi Gelon eōs vīdit, ita dīxit: “Heu (*Alas*), quid hoc tēctum dēlēvit? Quis magistrum cārum et amīcōs meōs necāvit?” Hī puerō haec respondērunt: “Tremor terrae tēctum magistrī dēlēvit. Quis tē servāvit? Deusne?” Puer miser eīs fābulam de lupō narrāvit. Deinde, “Hoc animal mīrum,” inquit, “vītam meam servāvit.”

*This story is recorded in the *History* of John Tzetzes, a Byzantine Greek writer of the 12th century CE. (His text is often provided as Bk.10.29 in the *History* of Diodorus Siculus, whom Tzetzes cites as one of his sources.)



Roman Wall Fresco, 1st cent. C.E.

rāra avis

appropinquō, -āre (1), **-āvī** – draw near,
approach (+ Dat.)

animal, animālis, n. – *animal*

avis, avis, f. – *bird*

collis, collis, m. – *hill*

lūmen, lūminis, n. – *light*

mare, maris, n. – *sea, ocean*

mōns, montis, m. – *mountain*

mora, -ae, f. – *delay*

nox, noctis, f. – *night*

urbs, urbis, f. – *city*

mīrus, -a, -um – *wondrous, amazing, remarkable*

summus, -a, -um – *highest, top of*

procul (adv.) – *at a distance, far (away)*

undique (adv.) – *on all sides*



Funerary Inscription from Les Alyscamps
2nd -3rd cent. C.E., Gallo-Roman Museum, Arles

Third Declension - Nouns with Genitive Plural in **-ium** (“i-stem nouns”)

Nouns of the third declension whose genitive plural ending is **-ium** are called “i-stems”. The nouns declined below show the following characteristics of such nouns:

- 1) the endings of masculine and feminine nouns differ from the regular only in the genitive plural;
- 2) neuter nouns differ from regular neuter nouns in the ablative singular, nominative and accusative plural, and genitive plural.

THIRD DECLENSION I-STEM NOUNS

collis, m., *hill*

urbs, f., *city*

mare, n., *sea*

NOM	collis	collēs	urbs	urbēs	mare	maria
GEN	collis	collium	urbis	urbium	maris	marium
DAT	collī	collibus	urbī	urbibus	marī	maribus
ACC	collem	collēs	urbem	urbēs	mare	maria
ABL	colle	collibus	urbe	urbibus	marī	maribus

ENDINGS

MASC/FEM

NEUT

	SING	PLUR	SING	PLUR
NOM	—	-ēs	—	-ia
GEN	-is	-ium	-is	-ium
DAT	-ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus
ACC	-em	-ēs	= nom.	-ia
ABL	-e	-ibus	-ī	-ibus

The following groups of nouns of the third declension are i-stem:

1. Masculine and feminine with the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular*: **collis**, **collis**.
2. Masculine and feminine nouns with two consonants before the ending of the genitive singular**: **urbs**, **urbis**; **mōns**, **montis**.
3. Neuter nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**: **mare**, **animal**.

* These nouns usually end in **-is** or **-ēs**.

** These nouns usually end in **-ns** or **-rs**; some are monosyllables ending in **-s** or **-x**.



Inscription in House of Vigiles, Ostia



Decline: a) **avis mea** b) **nōx** c) **magnum animal.**

25 A

1. Corpora mīlitum mortuōrum spectāvimus.
2. Illae mātrēs sine morā in medium viam properāvērunt.
3. Dux cum sex legiōnibus ante noctem trāns montēs ad flūmen ambulāvit.
4. Nōnne illa animālia mīra in marī habitant?
5. Dum noctū puella marī appropinquat, lūmen clārum in silvā vīdit.
6. Montēs altī circum urbem undique stant.
7. Quod genus linguae illud animal habuit?
8. Quattuor avēs et paucae rānae in summō colle procul sedēbant.
9. Hominēs hārum urbium propter perīculum bellī per longās noctēs vigilābant.
10. Postquam mīlītēs in summum montem ambulāvērunt, capita et scūta eōrum vīdimus.

25 B

1. What wondrous light did a few soldiers see?
2. The birds were approaching the mountain on all sides.
3. In the city near the sea the nights seem long.
4. The stories of good children are true, aren't they?
5. The wide oceans were not often seen by the goddess because she lived in the middle of the forest.
6. While this bird was in the sky, the others settled on top of the hill.
7. The bodies of your animals were being wounded with swords by the soldiers.
8. O faithful man, always keep awake! Your enemy is now present in the town.
9. Their fathers love the voices of birds.
10. After they had stayed far away for a long time, they hastened toward the river.

Mucius Scaevola

Porsenna in castris trāns flūmen Tiberem magnīs cum cōpiīs mānsit quod Rōmam occupāre temptābat. C. (Gaius) Mūcius cōnsulibus ita dīxit: “Urbem nostram ā Porsennā diū oppugnātam servābō. Eum interficere (*to kill*) in animō habeō.”

Mūcius ā cōnsulibus magnopere laudātus noctū sine comite ad castra Etruscōrum pedibus vēnit. Tum cum gladiō locō appropinquāvit ubi rēx Porsenna sedēbat. Prīmō tamen aliis homō ā Mūciō vīsus rēx esse vidēbatur; Mūcius eum gladiō suō vulnerāvit. Mīlitēs Etruscī virum Rōmānum ad rēgem vērum statim portāvērunt.

Porsenna hoc rogāvit: “Cūr mē vulnerāre temptāvistī?” Mūcius eī respondit, “Cīvēs Rōmānī, nōn servī, sumus. Nūllum dominum habēre dēsiderāmus. In urbe līberā rēx est summum malum.”



Porsenna and Mucius, Matthias Stom, ca. 1620 C.E.

Porsenna, “Sī salūs tua,” inquit, “tibi cāra est, mihi cōsilium vestrum bellī mōnstrā!” Mūcius nōn respondit; deinde rēx clāmāvit: “Itaque mīlitēs meōs tē igne necāre jubēbō!” Erat ignis in ārā rēgī propinquā.

Rōmānus ā rēge nōn terrēbātur. “Sunt aliī Rōmānī,” inquit, “comitēs meī, bene parātī. Hī sine morā tē interficere (*to kill*) temptābunt. Semper dē salūte tuā timēbis. Sī ita dēsiderās, mē necā. Crās alias aderit. Corpora cīvibus Rōmānīs nōn ita cāra sunt. Urbem nostram et vītam līberam amāmus.”

Postquam haec dīxit, manum dextram (*right hand*) suam in ignem posuit (*placed*).

LESSON 26

Porsenna animum hūjus Rōmānī vīdit et mīlītēs eum servāre jussit. Ab ārā ab eīs portābātur.
“Līber eris, Rōmāne. Tē, nōn mē, vulnerāvistī.”

Mox Porsenna pācem ūrāvit. Terra Mūciō ā cīvībus dabātur, et ille posteā appellābātur Scaevola.

aquā et igne interdictus

terreō, terrēre (2), terrūī, territus – <i>frighten, terrify</i>	imperātor, imperātōris , m. – <i>commander, general</i>
animus, -ī , m. – <i>courage, mind, spirit; in animō</i>	pēs, pedis , m. – <i>foot</i>
habēre – <i>to have in mind, to intend</i> (+ infin.)	
cīvis, cīvis , c. – <i>citizen</i>	noster, nostra, nostrum – <i>our</i>
comes, comitis , c. – <i>companion</i>	
dominus, -ī , m. – <i>master</i>	crās (adv.) – <i>tomorrow</i>
ignis, ignis , m. – <i>fire</i>	magnopere (adv.) – <i>greatly</i>

Perfect Passive Participle

The fourth principal part of most verbs, e.g. **amātus**, **monitus**, **dēbitus**, is the perfect passive participle. The perfect passive participle declines like **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**, for the participle is a verbal adjective. It has some qualities of verbs and some of adjectives. The perfect passive participle has a passive meaning and is called “perfect” because it refers to an action that has already been carried out before the action of the governing verb.

For example, **monitus** literally means *having been warned*. In the phrase **vir monitus**, *the man having been warned*, the participle modifies the noun **vir** and so, like any adjective, agrees with it in case, number, and gender. This participle also, like a passive verb, expresses an action that has been carried out on the noun.



Foot of Constantine, Capitoline Museums,
Rome (ca. 320 C.E.)

Translation of Participles, Step 1

As a first step, the literal translation of the perfect passive participle in a Latin sentence is sufficient. Consider these sentences:

Vir monitus ab aquā properat.

The perfect passive participle agrees with **Vir**, so the literal translation is: *The man having been warned hurries away from the water.*

Puellae virum sagittā vulnerātūm servāvērunt.

Here the participle agrees with **virum**, so the literal translation is: *The soldiers saved the man having been wounded by an arrow.*

Another important aspect of the use of Latin participles is that they usually follow the noun(s) they modify. Any other words that work with the participle come between the noun and the participle. Thus Latin sentences can contain a clause of substantial length that is framed by a noun and its participle. In the examples above, the clause **virum sagittā vulnerātūm** contains an ablative of means (**sagittā**) that modifies **vulnerātūm**, not the main verb **servāvērunt**. The

sentence below contains an even longer participial clause.

Militēs [sagittis ā barbarīs **vulnerātōs**] juvāmus.
shows time before
modifies

We are helping the soldiers having been wounded with arrows by the barbarians.

Below are the principal parts of all the verbs you have been required to learn through Lesson 26. Be sure that you know all these forms.

Substantive Use of Participles

Like other adjectives, a participle may stand alone as the equivalent of a noun when its forms makes it clear what is being modified. Just as **multae** can stand for *many women* or **multa** for *many things*, **nuntiata** (n. pl.) can stand for *what was reported* or **vulnerātī** for *the wounded people*.

Principal Parts

1st Conjugation

aedificō	aedificāre	aedificāvī	aedificātus
ambulō	ambulāre	ambulāvī	ambulātūm*
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus
appellō	"		
appropinquō	"		[no 4th principal part]
clāmō	"		
dēsiderō	"		
dō	dare	dedī	datus
exspectō	etc.		
habitō	etc.		
juvō	juvāre	jūvī	jūtus
labōrō	etc.		
laudō	"		
mōnstrō	"		
mūtō	"		
narrō	"		
nāvigō	"		
necō	"		
nūntiō	"		
occupō	"		
oppugnō	"		

LESSON 26

ōrō		“	
parō		“	
portō		“	
postulō		“	
probō		“	
properō		“	
pugnō		“	
rogō		“	
servō		“	
spectō		“	
stō	stāre	stetī	statum*
superō	etc.		
temptō	“		
vastō	“		
vigilō	vigilāre	vigilāvī	vigilātum*
vocō	etc.		
vulnerō	“		

2nd Conjugation

dēbeō	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbitus
dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētus
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitū
jubeō	jubēre	jussī	jussus
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsus
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus
respondeō	respondēre	respondī	respōnsus
sedeō	sedēre	sēdī	sessum*
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territus
timeō	timēre	timuī	-----
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus

Irregular

absum	abesse	āfuī	āfutūrus**
adsum	adesse	adfuī	adfutūrus**
sum	esse	fuī	futūrus**

*Verbs whose 4th principal part ends in **-um** normally do not use the perf. pass. partic.; they are purely intransitive.

These forms are future active participles, which exist for **sum and compounds of **sum**, even though there exists no perfect passive participle of **sum**.

**26 A**

1. Puerī et puellae ā magnō mīlite territī in summō colle diū mānsērunt.
2. Procul ā castrīs occupātīs stabāmus et ignem spectābāmus.
3. Nōnne post proelium dux sē et comitēs suōs magnopere laudābat?
4. Equum imperātōris gladiō vulnerātum vīdērunt.
5. Dum ceterī incolae tectum novum parant, rāna pedem meum vulnerāvit.
6. Cōnsul ab imperātōre monitus nuntium ad nōs statim mittit.
7. Crās legiōnēs nostrae cōpiās illīus populī in mediā silvā oppugnābunt.
8. Fīlius cōnsulis fortiter pugnāvit, sed barbarī eum superāvērunt.
9. Postquam servī dominum suum servāvērunt, ille eīs multa dōna dare in animō habuit.
10. Rēgīna ab illō duce amāta ā cēterīs cīvibus nōn laudābātur.

26 B

1. Our leader, having been warned by his companion, stood at a distance away from the fire.
2. They have been away from the city because they have feared their enemies.
3. The remarkable bird is coming from the top of the hill.
4. Tomorrow the wounded men will approach their commander.
5. After she had warned them about the animal and the mountain, she said many other things to the man and his sons.
6. The citizens of that town are evil. Ought we to kill them?
7. The master having been greatly frightened by the children ordered them to stay in the field.
8. And so this legion sat between the walls and the river.
9. His daughter, nevertheless, did not like her teachers and their books.
10. The sailors having been changed by a god intended to sail across the sea without delay.

Apollo and Daphne

Ōlim in Graeciā fuit nymphā pulchra. Daphnē appellāta est. Diāna ab eā magnopere laudābātur. Saepe patrī ita dīxit: “Nūllum hominem amābō. Virgō, nōn uxor, semper vocābor.” Pater ējus, deus flūminis, mentem filiae mūtāre saepe temptāvit, sed illa in silvīs cum Diānā habitābat. Virī ab eā neque amātī neque dēsīderātī sunt.



Theater
and Temple of
Apollo
on Mt. Parnassus
above
the Crisean Plain
Delphi
(ca. 330 B.C.E.)

Apollō et Cupīdō (*Cupid*) sagittās habēbant, sed ōlim Apollō eī ita dīxit: “Parvae sagittae tuae nūllam potestātem habent. Meae sunt magnae quod sum magnus deus.”

Mox Apollō ā Cupīdine īrātō sagittā vulnerātus est. Deinde igitur, ubi Daphnēn (acc.) in silvā vīdit, eam statim amāvit. Daphnē quoque vulnerāta est sed aliō genere sagittae: haec eam deum amāre prohibuit. Nunc Apollō virginī appropinquāvit. “Tē, puella pulchra, amō et

mātrimōnium dēsiderō. Filiōs et filiās bonōs¹ habēbimus.” Ubi virgō haec audīvit, fugam pedibus statim temptāvit.



Apollo and Daphne, Bernini
Borghese Gallery, Rome
(1622-25 C.E.)**

** Source: Architas; [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Apollo_and_Daphne_\(Bernini\).jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Apollo_and_Daphne_(Bernini).jpg); License: <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0>

Deus post eam vēnit. Apollō et virgō inter arborēs et per collēs properāvērunt. Deus ab eā nōn procul aberat. “Cūr ā mē,” inquit, “properās? Nōn sum ē gente hominum sed magnus et pulcher deus!” Quamquam virgō vōcem deī audīvit, tamen eum nōn amāvit. “Mē servā,” inquit, “pater cāre!”

Deinde fīlia ā patre jūta est. Corpus virginis in arborem mūtātum est. Postquam Apollō hoc vīdit, prope arborem stetit. Miser erat. “Quis tē,” inquit, “nympha amāta, mūtāvit?

Magnam tamen fāmam habēbis quod tē amāvī. Eris arbor mea.” Daphnē haec audīvit et caput suum—summam arborem—mōvit (*she moved*).

Posteā folia (*leaves*) hūjus arboris praemia virīs bonīs in multīs gentibus data sunt. Haec arbor linguā Latīnā appellātur laurus (*the laurel*).

¹ When the same adjective modifies nouns of different genders, it often agrees with the closest noun. When, however, the same adjective modifies both masculine and feminine nouns, it usually is in the masculine; hence, **bonōs** modifies both **filiōs** and **filiās**.

novus homō

prohibeō, prohibēre (2), prohibui, prohibitus – <i>prevent, prohibit, keep (from) (+ Acc. + Infin.; + ā/ab + Abl.)</i>	mēns, mentis, f. – <i>mind, attitude</i> nōmen, nōminis, n. – <i>name</i> potestās, potestātis, f. – <i>power</i> virgō, virginis, f. – <i>maiden, virgin</i>
arbor, arboris, f. – <i>tree</i>	etiam (adv.) – <i>even, also, too</i>
frāter, frātris, (frātrum)* m. – <i>brother</i>	numquam (adv.) – <i>never</i>
gēns, gentis, f. – <i>tribe, nation</i>	

*Although **frāter** fits one pattern for a third-declension i-stem noun, it is non an i-stem. The same is true of three other nouns covered in this book: **māter, pater, juvenis** (Lesson 38).

PERFECT PASSIVE

amō, love

1 st	amātus sum, <i>I was loved, have been loved</i>	amātī sumus, <i>we were loved, have been loved</i>
2 nd	amātus es, <i>you were loved, have been loved</i>	amātī estis, <i>you were loved, have been loved</i>
3 rd	amātus est, <i>he/she/it was loved, has been loved</i>	amātī sunt, <i>they were loved, have been loved</i>

moneō, warn

1 st	monitus sum, <i>I was / have been warned</i>	monitī sumus, <i>we were / have been warned</i>
2 nd	monitus es, <i>you were / have been warned</i>	monitī estis, <i>you were / have been warned</i>
3 rd	monitus est, <i>he/she/it was / has been warned</i>	monitī sunt, <i>they were / have been warned</i>

Translation of Participles, Step 2

Although the literal translation of the perfect passive participle in a Latin sentence is an important first step, it is normally insufficient; this and any participle should be translated by a subordinate clause in English. Consider again this sentence used an example in Lesson 26:

Militēs virum sagittā vulnerātūm servāvērunt.

A literal translation (*The soldiers saved the man having been wounded by an arrow*) is unclear and does not express the thought of the Latin in standard English. We should say one of the following:

- The soldiers saved the man after he had been wounded by an arrow.*
- The soldiers saved the man when he had been wounded by an arrow.*
- The soldiers saved the man who had been wounded by an arrow.*

Notice that English uses the pluperfect tense (*had been wounded*) to show that this action occurred BEFORE **servāvērunt**, which is already in a past tense.

If we change the tense of the main verb to the present, then we must translate the perfect participle with the past or present perfect.

Militēs virum sagittā vulnerātūm servant.

The soldiers save the man who was wounded (or has been wounded) by an arrow.

Other types of subordinate clauses useful for translating a perfect participle are those introduced by *since*, *although*, and *if*. Learn the following menu, in order that you can refer to it whenever you encounter a participle:

after
when
since, because
although
who, which
if



Reclining River God (Nile)
from the Temple of Isis & Serapis in Rome
Vatican Museums
1st cent. CE



Conjugate the following: perfect active: **dō, videō, sēdeō**
 perfect passive: **juvō, dēleō, jubeō**

27 A

1. terrēbitis, territī estis
2. prohibēbunt, prohibitae sumus
3. dēlēbit, dēlēvit
4. dabāmus, datī sunt
5. servātum est, monita est
6. Postquam animal novum in mediō flūmine ab agricolā vīsum est, territum in silvam properāvit.
7. Tum magister dē aliō genere hominum pauca narrābat.
8. Cūr arborēs spectāre ā patre prohibitī sumus?
9. Virgō ā cīvibus suīs laudāta trāns flūmen ad templum ambulāvit.
10. Potestās hūjus gentis magna numquam vīsa est.
11. Tum māter mihi nōmen novum dedit.
12. Ducēs bonī gentēs suās ā bellō prohibēre temptant.
13. Ubi populus ā barbarīs superātus ē portīs ambulāvit, tōta urbs dēlēta est.
14. Puer ā frātre bonus appellātus est.
15. Prīmō etiam urbem vestram occupāre in animō habuimus; deinde mentem mūtāvimus.

27 B

1. The camp has been attacked with fire and arrows by those tribes.
2. After the war the kings of these cities were called hostile.
3. Their leaders tried to destroy the trees but the citizens prevented them.
4. And so the virgin was never called to the temple by her companions.
5. Which goddess is the queen of the gods?
6. On the top of the hill the mother and father have been frightened by the remarkable frog.
7. They were saving the city because they were preventing the barbarous men from seizing the gates.
8. Sit down, soldiers! The chief has not approved this kind of deed.
9. After being advised by the god, the women gave themselves new names.
10. They were warned about the power of the consuls by their four brothers.

Ludus 28

Ablative absolute
Ablative of manner
Ablative of accompaniment

The First Sicilian Revolt*

Sicilia occupāta fuit prīma prōvincia Rōmāna. Rōmānī, Graecī et Siculī (*Greeks & Sicilians*) ibi lātōs agrōs tenēbant; propter pecūniām potestātemque superbī erant. Hī multōs servōs in Siciliam portātōs in agrīs et oppidīs labōrāre jussērunt; eōs etiam nōtīs inussērunt (*burned with brands*). Vīta servōrum maximē dūra fuit quod dominī eīs nec satis cibī (*food*) nec vestīum (*clothes*) dabant.



Site of Sanctuary of Ceres, Enna

Erat in mediā īnsulā urbs, Henna, in summō colle. Hic dominus superbus, Damophilus, habitāvit. Ōlim, ubi servī ejus nūdī (*naked*) vestēs novōs ḍrāvērunt, ille magnā vōce dīxit: “Cūr haec ḍrāre audētis?” inquit. “Num hominēs in itinere sine vestībus ambulant? Nōnne ita cōpiam vestīum (gen. pl.) vōbis dant? Noctū in viīs ab eīs vestēs rapite! (*steal*).”

Hīs dictīs servus ejus miser et īrātus aliīs ita dīxit: “Eunus cōnsilium nōbis idōneum dabit. Facta mīra hujus servī, virī Syriacī (*Syrian*), saepe vīdī. Ille, mente suā a deō occupatā, ex ḍore (*mouth*) ignem mittit et futūra (*future events*) verā linguā dīcit.” Posteā Eunus, cōsiliō rogātō, “Līberī eritis,” inquit, “et Enna terra vestra erit—sīc dīs gratum est.” Deinde, urbe mox ā servīs occupatā et paene omnibus (*all*) cīvībus necātīs, Damophilus in theātrum ad jūdiciū (*trial*) portātus est. Dum hic, nōn jam dominus, populum (ōlim servōs) vītam ḍrat, mentēs multōrum

persuādēbantur (*were persuaded*). Subitō tamen paucī magnā īrā clāmāvērunt et eum celeriter necāvērunt.



Town of Enna seen from the fortress

Tum Eunus, ā populō rēx vocātus, sibi nōmen novum “Antiochum”, cōpiis suīs “Syrōs” dedit. Mox magna cōpia servōrum ex locīs propinquīs ad Eunum vēnit. Hī mīlitēs, Eunō duce, cōpiās Rōmānās in Siciliam portātās proeliō saepe superāvit. Interim Cleōn, vir Cilicius (*Cilician*), oīlim servus, cōpiās suās in bellum cum Eunō dūxit (*led*). Trēs post annōs, multīs urbībus occupātīs, tamen Rōmānī cōpiās Eunī et Cleōnis (gen.) in urbe Ennā tenēbant. Cleōn mortem nōn timuit et cum cōpiīs ex urbe vēnit. Magnō cum animō pugnāvit, sed multīs vulneribus (*wounds*) acceptīs (*received, suffered*) mortuus erat. Eunus, fugā ex urbe temptātā, tamen occupātus est. Ille, postquam diū miser in carcere (*prison*) mānsit, mortuus erat.

Postscript

Vir antīquus dē hōc bellō scribit et ita dīcit: “Mentēs hōrum servōrum bonae fuērunt, sed, tantīs malīs diū acceptīs, nōn sōlum (*not only*) līberī esse cupiēbant sed etiam (*but also*) maximē īrātī dominōs, aliōs, et multās urbēs vastāvērunt. Omnēs haec (etiam sine auxiliō deōrum) exspectāre dēbuērunt.”

Tum Eunus, ā populō rēx vocātus, sibi nōmen novum “Antiochum”, cōpiis suīs “Syrōs” dedit. Mox magna cōpia servōrum ex locīs propinquīs ad Eunum vēnit. Hī mīlitēs, Eunō duce, cōpiās Rōmānās in Siciliam portātās proeliō saepe superāvit. Interim Cleōn, vir Cilicius (*Cilician*), oīlim servus, cōpiās suās in bellum cum Eunō dūxit (*led*). Trēs post annōs, multīs urbībus

occupātīs, tamen Rōmānī cōpiās Eunī et Cleōnis (gen.) in urbe Ennā tenēbant. Cleōn mortem nōn timuit et



Statue of Eunus
Beside fortress of Enna (20th cent. CE)

*This account of events that occurred in 135-132 BCE derives from that in the *History* (Bk. 34.2.2ff.) of Diodorus Siculus, a Greek inhabitant of Sicily who wrote in Greek ca. 60-30 BCE.

magnā cum laude

audeō, audēre (2), ausus sum – <i>dare</i> (+ inf. or Acc. dir. obj.)	nōbīs (pron., Dat. and Abl.) – <i>us</i> vōs (pron., Nom. and Accus.) – <i>you</i> (pl.)
teneō, tenēre (2), tenuī, tentus – <i>hold, keep</i>	idōneus, -a, -um (adj. + Dat.) – <i>suitable, appropriate</i>
iter, itineris , n. – <i>route, journey, trip, march</i>	
īra, -ae , f. – <i>anger, wrath</i>	
mors, mortis , f. – <i>death</i>	interim (adv.) – <i>meanwhile</i>

Ablative Absolute

The ablative absolute consists of a noun or pronoun in the ablative with a participle, noun, or adjective in agreement, e.g., **fēminīs laudātīs**. Such expressions are called “absolute” because the person or thing in the ablative is usually not mentioned elsewhere in the sentence.

Translation

A literal translation of the ablative absolute does not make good English. Most often, you should translate it as a subordinate clause by drawing on the same menu of introductory words you learned to use for perfect participles in Lesson 27 (*when, since, etc.*). In the sentence below, **animālibus vīsīs** is an ablative absolute of the most common type, noun + participle. The noun involved, **animālibus**, does not appear elsewhere in the sentence. The literal translation *the animals having been seen* should be adapted to idiomatic English, as in the samples below the Latin sentence.

Animālibus vīsīs, fēmina ē silvā properāvit.

After the animals had been seen, the woman hastened out of the forest.

When the animals had been seen,...

Since the animals had been seen,...

After she had seen the animals,...

Notice that, as in the last alternative, an active translation of the perfect passive participle is possible, in which case the noun in the ablative becomes the direct object in the English clause.

The other two types of ablative absolute are as follows:

1) noun/pronoun + adjective: **igne clārō**, *the fire being bright*

2) noun/pronoun + noun: **tē cōnsule**, *you being the consul*

In these cases, too, instead of a literal translation, such as those given immediately above, translate ablative absolutes with a subordinate clause in English. For these two types, make the subordinate clause show an action at the SAME TIME as the main verb.

Igne clārō tēctum vidēmus.

Since the fire is bright, we see the house.

While the fire is bright,...

When the fire is bright,...

If the fire is bright,...

Mē cōnsule urbem occupāvimus.

When I was the consul, we seized the city.

Since I was the consul,...

While I was the consul,...

Although I was the consul,...

(These two types are also participle constructions, but in the Latin expression there is no present participle of **sum** that corresponds to the English *being*.)

Ablative of Manner

This use of **cum** with the ablative case expresses the manner or way in which an action is done. The standard English translation of these expressions uses *with* or an adverb.

Cum irā oppidum oppugnābant. *They were attacking the town with anger or angrily.*

When there is an adjective modifying the ablative noun, **cum** becomes optional.

Magnā irā mihi respondēbat. *He was answering me with great anger.*

Ablative of Accompaniment

You are already quite familiar with the ablative of accompaniment, which is simply the use of the ablative case with **cum**, *with* to express the person or thing along with which an action occurs: **Cum amīcīs meīs ambulō.** *I am walking with my friends.*

Note the differences between the ablative of manner and the ablative of accompaniment, both of which use **cum**. The ablative of accompaniment

- expresses the person or thing along with which an action or activity is done; and
- normally requires **cum**, even when an adjective modifies the ablative noun.

Notice also that, since the ablative of manner expresses neither the means by which, nor the person by whom, nor the person or thing with whom something is done, but rather how an action is done, the ablative noun is usually an abstract noun, such as *anger, grief, joy, strength, difficulty*.

**28 A**

1. Magnā cum īrā cōnsulibus respondēbat.
2. Morte rēgis nūntiātā, cīvēs miserī auxilium rogābant.
3. Longum post iter imperātor ad locum castrīs idōneum cum cōpiīs suīs vēnit.
4. Ubi lūmen ā nōbīs procul vīsum est, sine morā pedibus trāns flūmen properāvimus.
5. Interim ā patre ad tectum manēre jussī estis.
6. Pede vulnerātō, mīles ē proeliō ad castra sua ambulāre temptāvit.
7. Sunt multae avēs in hīs arboribus propinquīs et vōx eārum nōbīs grāta est.
8. Prīmō hae gentēs inimīcae ā bellō ā rēgīnā prohibitae sunt.
9. Cōpiae tē duce fortiter pugnāvērunt.
10. Quae mora est? Nōnne per agrum cum cēterīs puellīs properābis?
11. Paene tōtā urbe occupātā, mātrēs et puerī ibi manēre nōn audēbant.
12. Nautīs idōneīs tamen nāvigāre numquam eram parātus.

28 B

1. The commander does not dare to walk across the river even with his loyal companions.
2. Since the animals had been kept from the gates, we saved the nation (**gēns**).
3. The mind of men is never prepared to see death.
4. Although the sailors had been well prepared, the inhabitants did not sail to the island on account of the dangers of the sea.
5. Since this place is suitable, they will hold the gold here in the new temple.
6. Under this man's leadership (=with this man as leader) we shall overcome many dangers with great courage.
7. Meanwhile, he came to that town with his brothers and their teacher.
8. That land is suitable for a camp because it is near this tall hill.
9. For a long time you have been kept from walking away from the sea to your city.
10. She said a few things about the light of the moon and ordered you (pl.) to stay awake through the entire night.

Alexander's Horse

Equus Alexandrī rēgis propter formam (*shape*) capitis Bucephalus appellātus est. Alexandrō puerō ā patre Philippō datus est. Hic equus Alexandrum sōlum amāvit. Philippus haec dīxit: “Sī cēterī eum dūcere temptant, eōs in sē sedēre semper magnā īrā prohibet. Hic tamen filium meum amat quod ille equum bene dūcit.” Haec mīra quoque de morte illīus equī narrāta sunt.



War Horse and Squire, National Museum,
Athens (ca. 300 B.C.E.)

Ale

xander ducēs nōn audīvit; multōs ex hostibus vulnerāvit. Sed, dum mīlitem territum gladiō petit, equus ējus septem tēlīs vulnerātus est. Hōc vīsō Alexander dē salūte suā magnopere timēbat: “Equō mortuō hostēs mē celeriter superābunt.”

Bucephalus and (young) Alexander
Fresco by Sodoma (1517)
Villa Farnesina, Rome



Tamen equus dominum suum in periculō relinquere minimē dēsiderāvit et ē mediī hostibus rēgem portāvit. Postquam equus procul ā tēlīs hostium stetit, mors eum superāvit.

Postscript

Posteā corpus equī ad rēgem Alexandrum portātur. “Hoc animal, comitēs, spectāte, amīcum meum, tēlīs hostium superātum. Animum ējus laudāre dēbēmus. Huic etiam mortuō idōneum praemium dabō. Hodiē hunc locum relinquimus et aliās terrās petimus, sed urbs nova hīc aedificābitur et nōmine hūjus equī semper vōcābitur.”

alibī

dēfendō, dēfendere (3), dēfendī, dēfēnsus – <i>defend</i>	hostis, hostis , m. – <i>enemy</i> (military);
dīcō, dīcere (3), dīxī, dictus – <i>say, speak, tell</i>	hostēs, hostium , m. pl. – <i>the enemy</i>
dūcō, dūcere (3), dūxī, ductus – <i>lead</i>	numerus, -ī, m. – <i>number, amount</i>
petō, petere (3), petīvī, petītus – <i>seek, beg, ask for, attack</i>	septem (indecl. adj.) – <i>seven</i>
relinquō, relinquere (3), relīqui, relictus – <i>leave, leave behind, abandon</i>	

Third Conjugation Verbs

The majority of Latin verbs belong to the third conjugation, which uses the same personal endings you have learned but differs from the first and second conjugations in the characteristic vowels that come between the verb's stem and those endings. Regular verbs of the third conjugation are distinguishable by the combination of endings in their first two principal parts: **-ō, -ere**, as in **dūcō, dūcere**.

Below is the model for regular verbs of the third conjugation in the present active and passive indicative. No translations are given because you may translate the present tense of such verbs in the same way as you have learned to do for the first two conjugations.

THIRD CONJUGATION - PRESENT INDICATIVE

dūcō, lead

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
--------	---------

1 st	dūcō	dūcimus	dūcor	dūcimur
2 nd	dūcis	dūcitis	dūceris	dūcimini
3 rd	dūcit	dūcunt	dūcitur	dūcuntur.

ENDINGS

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
--------	---------

1 st	-ō	-imus	-or	-imur
2 nd	-is	-itis	-eris	-imini
3 rd	-it	-unt	-itur	-untur

Present Infinitive

The ending of the present active infinitive of regular third conjugation verbs is **-ere**, as in **dūcere**, *to lead*. Notice that the first **-e-** is short, as opposed to that in the present active infinitive of the second conjugation, e.g., **monēre**.

Present Imperative

The endings of the present imperative for verbs of the third conjugation are **-e** and **-ite**, singular and plural, respectively: **pete**, **petite**, *beg!*

Two important exceptions, however, are the singular imperatives of **dīcō** and **dūcō**, which are **dīc** and **dūc**, respectively. (The plural imperatives for these two verbs are regular: **dīcite**, **dūcite**).



Like **dūcō**, conjugate **dēfendō**, **petō**, and **relinquō** in the present active and passive indicative; then write the imperatives of **relinquō**.

29 A

1. Magnus ignis multa animālia terruit.
2. Illō cōnsule duce magnum numerum hostium superāvimus sed nōn necāvimus.
3. Cūr, puer, cum quattuor amīcīs ad lītus ā patre nunc dūceris?
4. Dux et mīlitēs cēterōs cīvēs ab hostibus dēfendunt.
5. Proeliō nūntiātō cōpiae ab imperātōre ē castrīs statim dūcuntur.
6. Nōnne post multa et dūra proelia pāx ā rēge petitur?
7. Septem equōs, cīvis, crās dūc ad urbem.
8. Hic alia praemia petit quod aurum eī grātum nōn est.
9. Subitō avēs territae templum relinquunt et arborēs lītorī propinquās petunt.
10. Hōc in bellō ā mīlitibus vestrīs superātī sumus.

29 B

1. On account of the peace the enemy abandon their weapons in the camp.
2. Seven soldiers were killed on the journey; the others were saved by their remarkable commander.
3. With great daring the daughter is defending her comrades.
4. Although many men have been wounded, you (pl.) are not abandoning the hill.
5. Good citizens, keep (prevent) your city from war. Seek peace.
6. We are keeping (holding) nine legions on the hill because the field is not suitable for a camp.
7. The leader of the enemy has changed his mind, my friend; tell this to the allies tomorrow.
8. Since other horses have been prepared, our mothers are being led to the shores of that nation.
9. Under the leadership of my friend (= my friend being leader), you are being left in this city.
10. After this plan had been approved by the king, we did not dare to ask for another.

Daedalus and Icarus

Daedalus cum fīliō Īcarō in īnsulā Crētā habitābat. Ibi Mīnōs rēgnū tenēbat. Daedalus ā rēge jussus labyrinthum aedificāvit ubi Mīnōs Mīnōtaurū, mōnstrūm horribile (*a horrible monster*), tenēbat. Sed Daedalus īnsulam relinquere cupiēbat.

“Potestās rēgis est magna. Cōpiae ējus terrām tenent; classis nōs nāvigāre prohibet. Quām viām habēmus?” Dum cōnsilium idōneum capere temptat, subitō avēs in caelō vīdit. “Sunt in caelō nec mīlitēs nec nāvēs. Caelūm est līberū! Hāc viā ex īnsulā properābimus.”

Deinde ālās (*wings*) ē pinnīs (*feathers*) et cerā (*wax*) aedificāvit. Fīliō ālās dedit et ita eum monuit: “Hīs per caelū iter pete, sed post mē manē et mē semper spectā. Perīculūm est magnum. Procul et ā sōle et ab undīs maris manēre dēbēs. Sī vītam tuā servāre cupis, mē duce viā medium cape.” Hīs dictīs sibi quoque ālās dedit.

Dum haec ā patre dīcuntur, Īcarus jam lītūs relinquere parāvit. Mox per caelū sine patre properāvit. Interim Daedalus eum semper spectāre temptābat, sed Īcarus procul ab oculīs patris mox erat; pater eum vocāvit, sed ille patrem numquam audīvit. Itaque Īcarus ā patre monitus tamen sōlī appropinquāre audēbat. Ālāe ējus celeriter dēlētāe sunt, et puer miser ē caelō in mare cecidit (*fell*).

Dum pater fīliū oculīs petit, iterum et iterum clāmāvit: “Ubi es, Īcare? Ubi es? Quō in locō nunc tē petere dēbeō?” Posteā corpus fīliī mortuī in vadō īnsulae propinquō vīdit. Post mortem Īcarī et īnsula ubi corpus puerī fuit et mare huic īnsulae propinquūm nōmina sua ex nōmine puerī cēpērunt.

nōn compos mentis

capiō, capere (3), cēpī, captus – <i>seize, capture, take;</i>	nāvis, nāvis, f. – <i>ship</i>
cōnsilium capere – <i>to form a plan</i>	oculus, -ī, m. – <i>eye</i>
cipiō, cupere (3), cupīvī, cupītus – <i>desire, want</i>	sōl, sōlis, m. – <i>sun</i>
mittō, mittere (3), mīsī, missus – <i>send</i>	unda, -ae, f. – <i>wave</i>
classis, classis, f. – <i>fleet</i>	vadum, -ī, n. – <i>ford, shallow place</i>
lītūs, lītoris, n. – <i>shore</i>	ventus, -ī, m. – <i>wind</i>

Third -iō Conjugation

Some verbs of the third conjugation have an -i- which appears at the end of their stems in some forms of the present and in all forms of the imperfect and future tenses. In the present active and passive indicative, which you will learn in this lesson, the -i- occurs only in the first singular and third plural forms, as in the model verb **capiō**, whose forms are given below.

Verbs of this type are distinguishable by the endings of their first two principal parts: -iō, -ere, as in **capiō, capere**.

THIRD -iō CONJUGATION - PRESENT INDICATIVE

capiō, seize				
	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
1 st	capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
2 nd	capis	capitis	caperis	capiminī
3 rd	capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

ENDINGS				
	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
1 st	-iō	-imus	-ior	-imur
2 nd	-is	-itis	-eris	-imini
3 rd	-it	-iunt	-itur	-iuntur

Present Infinitive

The ending of the present active infinitive of the third -iō conjugation is -ere, as in **capere, to seize**. Notice that the first -e- is short, as in the present active infinitive of regular verbs of the third conjugation.

Present Imperative

The endings of the present imperative for verbs of the third -iō conjugation are -e and -ite, singular and plural, respectively: **cape, capite, seize!**



Like **capiō**, conjugate **cupiō** in the present active and passive indicative; then write its imperatives.

30 A

1. Quid comitibus tuīs dē sōle et caelō dīcis?
2. Fīliās rēgis et mātrem ējus capimus; deinde ad comitēs nostrōs eās mittimus.
3. Interim classis in vadum perīculōsum ventīs et magnīs undīs mittitur.
4. Nunc praemium diū cupītum et exspectātum illī puerō datum est.
5. Ubi mīlītēs hostiū in proeliō captōs tenēbātis?
6. Virī magnā audāciā appropinquāvērunt; rēgī multa mala dīcere in animō habēbant.
7. Nāvibus igne dēlētīs, rēgīna aliam classem parāvit.
8. Cōnsiliō captō, hostēs urbē nostrām capere prohibuimus.
9. Paucī nautae ab hostib⁹ capiuntur; aliī per vada fugā salūtem petunt.
10. Summō monte captō, barbarī castra et legiōnēs Rōmānōrum oppugnāre temptāvērunt.

OPTIONAL

11. Urbē nostrām dēlēvistī, vir male! Quid nunc cupis?
12. Animus eōrum malus est; itaque agrōs aliōrum semper cupiunt.
13. Imperātor clārus nōn hanc sed aliam urbē illīus gentis capere parābat.
14. Sī auxilia ad mē mittuntur, bene est.
15. Frāter noster cīvibus multa dat quod esse cōsul cupit.

30 B

1. Meanwhile the virgin sends many things to the Roman fleet.
2. The camp is being captured by the commander's soldiers.
3. I have formed a suitable plan because I intend to preserve the laws of our city.
4. Do the citizens wish to look at the sun with their eyes?
5. Friend, tell us. Which ships have been kept away from the sea by the winds?
6. You are being praised even by your (personal) enemies on account of your good reputation.
7. When the death of this king had been reported, the women feared about the safety of the nation.
8. Brother, send these things to the shore tomorrow.
9. Since the city had been saved, what did he say about his own plan and that of the consuls?
10. With the boy as our leader, we soon abandon the houses near the river.

Manlius and the Gaul, Part 1

Haec dē C. (Gaiō) Manliō Torquātō dicta sunt. Ōlim Gallī agmen suum in agrōs Rōmānōs dūxērunt quod urbem capere cupīvērunt. Rōmānī moenia relīquērunt et ad castra hostium vēnērunt. Postquam Rōmānī diū pugnāvērunt multīque interfectī sunt, hostēs nōn vīcērunt neque ab eīs victī sunt. Ducēs hostium Rōmānīs ita dīxērunt: “Nōs audīte! Hoc genus bellī nec vōs nec nōs juvat. Cōnsilium nostrum probāte: ūnus ē mīlitibus Rōmānīs et ūnus ē nostrīs pugnābunt. Ūnō victō populus ējus quoque vincitur.”

Ubi ducēs Rōmānī cōnsilium audīvērunt, id laudāvērunt et mīlitibus nūntiāvērunt; hī sine morā clāmābant: “C. Manlium dēligimus! Hic ā nūllō mīlite superābitur! Corpus ējus est parvum, sed mēns bona et animus magnus.”

Manlius respondit, “Multī urbem nostram dēfendere cupiunt, sed mē dēlēgisti. Multa bona dē mē nunc dīcuntur. Hoc sōlum dīcere cupiō: cīvis Rōmānus sum et urbem bene dēfendere temptābō.”

In mediīs mīlitibus Gallus magnus et altus jam stetit. Arma ējus erant clāra et pulchra. Hōc mīlite vīsō Rōmānī dē salūte mīlitis suī magnopere timēbant. Ubi Manlius ad eum vēnit, Gallus Rōmānum vīdit et, “Audēsne contrā mē,” inquit, “parve Rōmāne, pugnāre? Quī furor mentem tuam cēpit et nunc tē in proelium mīsit? Magnus sum et tē vincere in animō habeō. Potestās Gallōrum aliōs populōs saepe vīcit. Urbēs eōrum ā nōbīs occupātae et dēlētae sunt; frūmentum ex agrīs captum et aurum ad urbēs nostrās portātum est. Nōnne patrem mātremque, nōnne uxōrem filiōsque habēs? Num tē mortuum vidēre cupiunt? Vītam tuam servā. Mēne bene audīs?”

ālea jacta est

audiō, audīre (4), **audīvī, audītus** – hear, listen to
dēligō, dēligere (3), **dēlēgī, dēlēctus** – choose, select
interficiō, interficere (3), **interfēcī, interfectus** – kill
jaciō, jacere (3), **jēcī, jactus** – throw, hurl
veniō, venīre (4), **vēnī, ventum** – come
vincō, vincere (3), **vīcī, victus** – conquer, defeat

agmen, agminis, n. – column, line of march

**The genitive & dative singular are irregular; these endings will be given later.

furor, furōris, m. – fury, rage, madness
moenia, moenium, n. pl. – fortifications, walls
nihil, n. (indecl. noun) – nothing

****ūnus, -a, -um** – one; sole, only

-que (enclitic) – and



Portion of Euhodus
Inscription
Via Appia near Rome

Fourth Conjugation: Present Tense

The fourth and last class of Latin verbs is the fourth conjugation. Like the third-**iō**, its forms are characterized by an **-i-** which appears at the end of the stem in some forms of the present and all forms of the imperfect and future tense.

Verbs of this class can be distinguished by the endings of their first two principal parts, **-iō, -īre**, e.g., **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**. Many, but not all, verbs of the fourth conjugation have the same pattern of principal parts as the model verb **audiō**: **-iō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus**. As you can see from the forms of the model verb **audiō** below, these verbs closely resemble those of the third-**iō** conjugation in the present tense, but notice the difference in the length of the characteristic vowel **-i-** and the ending of the second singular passive (**-īris**).

FOURTH CONJUGATION - PRESENT INDICATIVE

audiō, hear

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

1 st	audiō	audīmus	audīrō	audīmūr
2 nd	audīs	audītis	audīris	audīmīnī
3 rd	audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

ENDINGS

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

1 st	-iō	-īmus	-iōr	-īmūr
2 nd	-īs	-ītis	-īris	-īmīnī
3 rd	-it	-iunt	-ītur	-iuntur

Present Infinitive

The ending of the present active infinitive of the fourth conjugation is **-īre**, as in **audīre**, *to hear.*

Imperatives: The endings of the present imperative of the fourth conjugation are **-ī** and **-īte**, singular and plural, respectively: **audī, audīte, listen!**

Below are the endings of the imperatives of all four conjugations.

	I	II	III*	III-iō	IV
SING	-ā	-ē	-e	-e	-ī
PLUR	-āte	-ēte	-ite	-ite	-īte

*N.B. the irregular singular forms **dīc** and **dūc** of **dīcō** and **dūcō**, respectively.

Perfect Tense: Third and Fourth Conjugations

The perfect indicative, active and passive, of all verbs of the third, third-iō, and fourth conjugations is formed in the same way as that of first and second conjugation verbs. The active consists of the third principal part plus the perfect active endings, and the passive consists of the fourth principal part plus the present of **sum**. Below, as models, are the forms of the perfect of **dūcō, capiō, and audiō**.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS - PERFECT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

dūcō

1 st	dūxī	dūximus	ductus sum	ductī sumus
2 nd	dūxistī	dūxistis	ductus es	ductī estis
3 rd	dūxit	dūxērunt	ductus est	ductī sunt

capiō

1 st	cēpī	cēpimus	captus sum	captī sumus
2 nd	cēpistī	cēpistis	captus es	captī estis
3 rd	cēpit	cēpērunt	captus est	captī sunt

audiō

1 st	audīvī	audīvimus	audītus sum	audītī sumus
2 nd	audīvistī	audīvistis	audītus es	audītī estis
3 rd	audīvit	audīvērunt	audītus est	audītī sunt



Conjugate **veniō** in the present active indicative and **jaciō** in the present passive indicative.

Conjugate **veniō** in the perfect active and **jaciō** in the perfect passive indicative.

31 A

1. Quae mora vōs tenet? Cum patre mātreque venīte trāns flūmen.
2. Quī cīvēs ā populō cōsulēs dēlēctī sunt?
3. Hostēs, hastīs jactīs, agmen nostrum celeriter vīcērunt.
4. Puerī magnā cum īrā magistrum malum interficiēbant.
5. Nihilne dē comite nostrō ab hostibus vulnerātō audiunt?
6. Imperator, aurō ab urbe hostium captō, templum deae bonae aedificat.
7. Hodī ā dominō tuō ad urbem venīre jubēris; aliī in agrōs mittuntur.
8. Cēterī ūnum cīvem ex oppidō jēcērunt.
9. Deinde frātrēs malī in furōrem ā dīs ductī sunt.
10. Tum pāx ab hostibus victīs petīta est, sed nunc illī eam servāre nōn jam cupiunt.

31 B

1. I came, I saw, I conquered.
2. They are choosing him as leader because he is a loyal soldier.
3. His brothers hear that bird, this wind, and one frog.
4. The column tried to attack the fortifications on (=out of) the march.
5. When this deed had been approved, the girls came toward the middle of the field.
6. Friends and citizens, listen. I shall report the truth (=true things) about the death of our leader.
7. A large number of men stood around the wounded soldier.
8. After they had asked for grain, the soldiers remained in the town for a long time.
9. Wretched though you are, nevertheless you ought to send a message to the fleet.
10. While the masters were coming toward us across the ford, we threw spears at (=into) them.

Manlius and the Gaul, Part 2

Haec ā Gallō magnā vōce dicta sunt; nōn sōlum ab hostibus sed etiam ā Rōmānīs audīta sunt. Manlius tamen nihil respondit. Nōn fūgit quod nec virum nec vōcem ējus timuit. In locō ubi stābat mānsit. Gallum cum gladiō scutōque suō exspectābat. Tum Gallus sine morā pugnāre audēbat, sed mēns Rōmānī bene parāta erat. Gallus eī appropinquāvit; Manlius locum suum statim relīquit; ita gladius Gallī eum nōn vulnerāvit. Iterum et iterum Gallus gladiō Manlium petīvit. Manlius numquam fūgit, sed semper locum mūtāvit. Gallus īrātus clāmāvit: “Aut pugnā aut fuge!”

Diū hī proelium ita faciēbant. Dum haec geruntur, et Rōmānī et hostēs eōs semper spectāvērunt; magnopere timēbant et saepe clāmābant.

Ūnam post hōram Gallus erat dēfessus. Hastam cēpit et in (*at*) Manlium jēcit, sed illa contrā scūtum Manlii fracta est. Deinde Gallus magnā īrā Manlium gladiō petīvit. Tamen Manlius illum dēfessum gladiō suō interfēcit.

Rōmānī magnā vōce clāmāvērunt. Gallus ā Manliō interfectus in terrā jacēbat. Etiam hostēs victī animū Rōmānī laudāvērunt. Deinde agrōs Rōmānōrum reliquērunt. Populus servātus est et pācem habuit.



Dying Gaul (marble copy after a bronze original of ca. 240 B.C.E.), Capitoline Museums, Rome



Postquam Manlius Gallum interfecit, torquem (*torque*) pulchrum ejus cepit. (Hunc viri Galli saepe gerebant.) “Hoc praemium solum,” inquit, “postulō.” Postea torquem semper gessit, et propter hunc eī nōmen idōneum datum est: Torquatus appellabatur.

Torque of the Dying Gaul

īra brevis furor est

faciō, facere (3), **fēcī, factus** (imperative s. – **fac**) – *do, make; proelium facere – to fight a battle*
frangō, frangere (3), **frēgī, fractus** – *break, wreck*
fugiō, fugere (3), **fūgī, fugitūrus** – *flee, escape*
gerō, gerere (3), **gessī, gestus** – *carry on, wage (war); wear*

jaceō, jacēre (2), **jacuī, — — lie, lie down**
conjūnx, conjugis, c. – *husband, wife, spouse*
nōn solum...sed etiam – *not only...but also*

Imperfect Tense: Third and Fourth Conjugations

The imperfect active and passive of third and fourth conjugation verbs have the same tense marker and endings as do first and second conjugation verbs in the imperfect: **-bam, -bās, -bat, -bāmus, -bātis, -bant; -bar, -bāris, -bātur, -bāmur, -bāminī, -bāntur**. All these forms, as in the imperfect of the second conjugation, have a long **-ē-** between the verb stem and the tense marker, but third-**iō** and fourth conjugation verbs have also an **-i-** before the **-ē-**: **dūcēbam, I was leading; capiēbam, I was seizing.**

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE - REGULAR THIRD CONJUGATION

dūcō

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
1 st	dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
2 nd	dūcēbās	dūcēbātis	dūcēbāris	dūcēbāminī
3 rd	dūcēbat	dūcēbānt	dūcēbātūr	dūcēbāntūr

THIRD-iō CONJUGATION

capiō

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
1 st	capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
2 nd	capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris	capiēbāminī
3 rd	capiēbat	capiēbānt	capiēbātūr	capiēbāntūr

FOURTH CONJUGATION

audiō

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

1 st	audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
2 nd	audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris	audiēbāminī
3 rd	audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbāntur

ENDINGS

THIRD

THIRD-**iō** & FOURTH

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1 st	-ēbam	-ēbar	-iēbam	-iēbar
2 nd	-ēbās	-ēbāris	-iēbās	-iēbāris
3 rd	-ēbat	-ēbātur	-iēbat	-iēbātur
1 st	-ēbāmus	-ēbāmur	-iēbāmus	-iēbāmur
2 nd	-ēbātis	-ēbāminī	-iēbātis	-iēbāminī
3 rd	-ēbant	-ēbāntur	-iēbant	-iēbāntur



Conjugate in the imperfect active and passive: **gerō** and **faciō**.

32 A

- Armīs relictīs, hostēs sine morā ad moenia urbis suaē fūgērunt.
- Vōx rēgīnae propter ventum ā mīlitibus nōn audiēbātur.
- Ille populus bellum nōn sōlum cum hostibus sed etiam cum sociīs suīs gerit.
- Moenia hūjus oppidī undīs paene fracta sunt.
- Post proelium multa arma in lītore relictā vīdimus.
- Cum audāciā conjugem dēfendere temptāvī.
- Hōc bellō diū gestō et magnō numerō cīvium interfectō pācem petēbāmus.
- Conjūnx uxorque sub arbore jacēbant et vōcēs avium audiēbant.
- Postquam servus equum cēpit, trāns montem celeriter fūgit.
- Multīs nāvibus fractīs, dux nautās classem ad lītus dūcere jussit.

32 B

1. They were not only lying in the middle of the road but they were also looking at the sky.
2. After the evil citizens had been killed, the consul said this: “The laws have been saved!”
3. To live in this town is a good life.
4. Since the number of the enemy is great, we ought not to wage war.
5. Husband, do many things with great courage and praise the deeds of good women.
6. After the message had been sent to your leader, allies, he formed a new plan.
7. The mother and daughter were being led through the woods and were listening to the birds.
8. What did they make and to whom did they give it?
9. After our eyes had been overcome by the light, we no longer looked at the sun.
10. Although seven cities had been captured, nevertheless the enemy did not overcome us.

The Snowstorm

Agricola conjūnxque ējus filiōs, Marcum et Brūtum, habēbant. Hic erat altus et magnus; bene labōrābat et pugnābat. Ille autem ā patre mātreque magnopere amātus est quod mentem bonam habēbat. Mēns Brūtī eīs dūra vidēbātur.

Ōlim hī frātrēs cum cane (*dog*) suō iter per montēs fēcērunt quod septem equōs patris petēbant. (Illi ex agrīs agricolae in aliōs fīnēs saepe fugiēbant.) Dum procul ā tēcto absunt, nōn sōlum nōx terram occupāvit sed etiam nix (*snow*) ē caelō venīre incēpit. Marcus, “Viam,” inquit, “mox āmittēmus.” Itaque iter suum relīquērunt. Magnā sub arbore sē ā nive (abl. of **nix**) dēfendēbant, sed mortem exspectābant.

Brūtus, “Mihi, frāter,” inquit, “torquem tuum dā.” Hic, dōnum mātris, ā Marcō semper gerēbātur. Prīmō ille magnā īrā, “Quid faciēs,” inquit, “Brūte? Dīc mihi: cūr torquem meum cupis? Mēne interficiēs?” Brūtus nihil respondit. Torquem sine morā cēpit et eō collum (*neck*) canis circumdedit (*encircled*). Deinde animalī ita dīxit: “Celeriter patrem mātremque pete.” Hīs dictīs canem ad tēctum mīsit. “Hoc animal, Marce, ad nōs auxilium mittet. Per hanc noctem tē dēfendam.”

Interim pater māterque dē salūte fīliōrum timēbānt quod noctū illī āfuērunt. Subitō māter vōcem canis audīvit. Ubi canis per portam vēnit, torquem Marcī etiam tum gerēbat. Hōc vīsō, vir sine morā, “Auxiliō hūjus animālis,” inquit, “fīliī nostrī invenientur. Mē, canis fīde, dūc ad puerōs!”



Hunting Hound, Vatican Museums

Cane viae duce agricola iter per noctem fēcit. Māne ad arborem vēnit ubi fīliī jacēbānt. Erat multa nix suprā corpora eōrum. Agricola haec invēnit: vīta Marcī servāta est quod Marcus sub corpore frātris jacuit. Brūtus propter frīgus (*cold*) erat mortuus. Ita frātrem dēfendit.

obiter dictum

āmittō, āmittere (3), āmīsī, āmissus – <i>lose</i>	fīnis, fīnis , m. – <i>end, limit, boundary; (pl.) territory</i>
incipiō, incipere (3), incēpī, inceptus – <i>begin, take on</i>	sommus, -ī, m. – <i>sleep</i>
inveniō, invenire (4), invēnī, inventus – <i>find, come upon</i>	autem (postpositive conj.) – <i>but, however</i>
iter facere – <i>to march, make a journey, travel</i>	suprā (prep. + Accus.) – <i>above, over</i>

Future Tense: Third and Fourth Conjugations

In the future tense, verbs of the third and fourth conjugations have as tense markers the vowel **-a-** for first person singular and **-e-** for all other forms: **dūcam**, *I will lead*; **dūcent**, *they will lead*. The personal endings are the same as those you learned for the imperfect. This tense marker and the personal endings are added to the present stem of the verb. For example, **mitt-ō** forms its future active as follows: **mitt-a-m**, **mitt-ē-s**, **mitt-e-t**, etc.

Third-**iō** and fourth conjugation verbs both have an **-i-** before the tense marker in all the forms: **cap-ia-m**, *I will seize*; **aud-ie-nt**, *they will hear*.

Learn the future of **dūcō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** given below.

FUTURE INDICATIVE

REGULAR THIRD CONJUGATION

dūcō

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE		ENDINGS			
					ACT	PASS		
1 st	dūcam	dūcēmus	dūcar	dūcēmur	-am	-ēmus	-ar	-ēmur
2 nd	dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris	dūcēminī	-ēs	-ētis	-ēris	-ēminī
3 rd	dūcet	dūcent	dūcētur	dūcentur	-et	-ent	-ētur	-entur

THIRD-**iō** CONJUGATION**capiō**

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE		ENDINGS			
					ACT	PASS		
1 st	capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur	-iam	-iēmus	-iar	-iēmur
2 nd	capiēs	capiētis	capiēris	capiēminī	-iēs	-iētis	-iēris	-iēminī
3 rd	capiet	cipient	capiētur	cipientur	-iet	-ient	-iētur	-ientur

FOURTH CONJUGATION

audiō

ENDINGS

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

ACT

PASS

1 st	audiām	audiēmus	audiār	audiēmur	-iam	-iēmus	-iar	-iēmur
2 nd	audiēs	audiētis	audiēris	audiēminī	-iēs	-iētis	-iēris	-iēminī
3 rd	audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur	-iet	-ient	-iētur	-ientur

It is essential to distinguish this formation of the future tense from that of first and second conjugations, which use the endings **-bō**, **-bis**, **-bit**, etc., and **-bor**, **-beris**, **-bitur**, etc. for future active and passive, respectively.



Conjugate in the future active: **incipiō**, **dēfendō**, **faciō**.

Conjugate in the future passive: **inveniō**, **petō**, **cupiō**.

33 A

1. Ōlim haec gēns bellum nōn jam cupiet et pācem habēbit.
2. Ab uxōribus nostrīs ē perīculō dūcēmur.
3. Dux hostium cum audāciā ita dīxit: “Legiōnēs tuae cōpiās nostrās spectābunt et mortem timēre incipient.”
4. Crās cōnsul ā populō dēligēris; facta autem tua ā bonīs numquam probābuntur.
5. Ē fīnibus nostrīs ā frātre meō dūcēminī et iter dūrum faciētis.
6. Hostibus vīsīs, puellae tamen ex oppidō nōn fūgērunt.
7. Avis suprā caput ējus in arbore stābat. Cūr ille fugā salūtem nōn petīvit?
8. Aurumne āmissum ante fīnem hūjus itineris inveniam?
9. Nōnne rēgīna proeliō victa pācem petet?
10. Dum mīles hastā fractā tamen scūtō sē dēfendere temptat, ab hostibus captus est.

33 B

1. After the inhabitants had begun to wage war, they tried to defend their territory.
2. Many amazing things are often seen by humans in sleep.
3. With great anger I will listen to the plans of the consul.
4. With a few virgins we will travel over the hill to the forest near the river.
5. With arrows they will quickly attack the fortifications; then many soldiers will be killed.
6. You will be heard but you will not be chosen commander.
7. With boldness the wretched boy was hurling weapons above the walls.
8. Now you hold the power of a king. What do you intend to say to your citizens?
9. The rest, however, will never choose him as leader.
10. She will lose the gold but she will find a beautiful city.

Theseus and the Minotaur

Mīnōs, rēx potēns īnsulae Crētae, Athēnās capere cōnstituit propter mortem filiī. (Hic ibi interfectus est.) Urbe occupātā, Mīnōs cīvibus victīs haec dīxit: “Hoc bellum nōn satis est. Sanguis filiī īnfēlīcis meī sanguinem puerōrum hūjus urbis postulat. Itaque novam lēgem cōnstituam: quotannīs (*every year*) septem filiī et septem filiae ē puerīs vestrīs ad mē nāve mittentur.” Prīncipēs respondērunt, “Filiōs et filiās servā! Septem ē nōbīs prīncipibus dēlige.” Nihil autem ēgērunt.

Igitur quotannīs Mīnōs puerōs ad Crētam missōs in labyrinthum jaciēbat ubi Mīnōtaurus habitabat. Ibi nūllae viae erant clārae, nec puerī puellaeque portam iterum invēnērunt. Deinde hī īnfēlīcēs ā Mīnōtaurō semper interficiēbantur.

Paucōs post annōs Thēseus, fīlius rēgis Athēnārum, ad urbem vēnit. Puerōs urbis suaē dēfendere cōnstituit. Cum cēterīs puellīs puerīsque ad Crētam nāvigāvit. Ibi Ariadna, fīlia rēgis, Thēseum vīdit. Illa mox eum amāvit quod mēns ējus bona vīsa est.



Theseus Slaying the Minotaur,
marble relief, Athenian Treasury,
Delphi (ca. 480 B.C.E.)

Thēseus quoque eam amāvit et auxilium ab eā petīvit. “Crās cum Mīnōtaurō pugnābō. Hōc interfectō et comitibus meīs servātīs, tē ad urbem meam dūcam et conjugem meam faciam. Hoc prōmittō!” Ariadna respondit, “Auxilium habēs, sī cupis. In labyrinthō dūc hoc fīlum (*thread*) post tē. Ita viam servābis et, Mīnōtaurō victō, fugam inveniēs.”

Postrīdiē ubi Thēseus Mīnōtaurum invēnit, eum celeriter interfēcit. Deinde dōnō Ariadnae comitēs ē perīculō dūxit.

Illī clāmābant: “Lūcem sōlis iterum vidēmus! Ā morte fūgimus! Thēseus ā nōbīs semper laudābitur!”

Postscript

Ariadna cum Thēseō amātō patrem Crētamque relīquit, sed mox Thēseus puellam fidam, somnō captam, in īsulā in mediō marī relīquit. Sed Ariadna erat fēlīx. Deus Bacchus eam in lītore invēnit et conjugem suam fēcit. Posteā Ariadna fuit dea.

Mīrumne alium factum audīre cupitis? Thēseus paucōs post annōs Phaedram, sōrōrem Ariadnae, in mātrimōnium dūxit! Sed alia fābula est.



Bacchus Finds Ariadne on Naxos
Roman sarcophagus, Vatican Museums (2nd cent. B.C.E)

nīl novī sub sōle

agō, agere (3), ēgī, āctus – <i>do, drive, accomplish;</i>	lūx, lūcis , f. – <i>light, daylight; prīma lūx</i> – <i>first light, dawn</i>
nihil agere – <i>to accomplish nothing</i>	
cōstituō, cōstituere (3), cōstituī, cōstitūtus – <i>decide (+ infin.); station, determine, establish</i> (+ Accus.)	sanguis, sanguinis , m. – <i>blood</i> sōror, sōrōris , f. – <i>sister</i>
prōmittō, prōmittere (3), prōmīsī, prōmissus – <i>promise (+ dat. ind. obj.)</i>	fēlīx, fēlīcis (Gen.) – <i>fortunate, happy</i> īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis (Gen.) – <i>unfortunate</i> potēns, potentis (Gen.) – <i>powerful</i>

Third Declension: Adjectives of One Ending

Adjectives of the third declension are regularly declined with the endings of i-stem nouns, but they have -ī as the ending of the ablative singular in all genders. Learn the declension of **fēlīx**, *fortunate*, below, and the endings for this type of adjective.

Notice that the nominative singular has the same ending in all three genders.

Notice also that, as with third declension nouns, you must learn the genitive singular in order to find the stem (in this case **fēlīc-**) on which the other forms are made.

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

fēlīx, fortunate

			ENDINGS		
SING					
	M	F	N	M/F	N
NOM	fēlīx	fēlīx	fēlīx	—	—
GEN	fēlīcīs	fēlīcīs	fēlīcīs	-is	-is
DAT	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	-ī	-ī
ACC	fēlīcēm	fēlīcēm	fēlīx	-em	= nom.
ABL	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	fēlīcī	-ī	-ī
PLUR					
NOM	fēlīcēs	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	-ēs	-ia
GEN	fēlīcīum	fēlīcīum	fēlīcīum	-īum	-īum
DAT	fēlīcībus	fēlīcībus	fēlīcībus	-ībus	-ībus
ACC	fēlīcēs	fēlīcēs	fēlīcia	-ēs	-ia
ABL	fēlīcībus	fēlīcībus	fēlīcībus	-ībus	-ībus

Third declension adjectives may modify nouns of any declension, but, of course, they must agree with their noun in case, number, and gender. For example: **puerā fēlīcem, puerōs fēlīcēs, flūmina fēlīcia**.



Portion of a Roman Inscription
Via Appia near Rome



Decline: a) **homō infēlīx** b) **nōmen fēlīx** c) **classis tua potēns** d) **virgō fēlīx**

34 A

1. Postquam animal invēnimus, sanguinem ējus in terrā vīdimus.
2. Tum castra relinquere cōstituit quod Rōmānī appropinquābant.
3. Dea nōs animālia ē silvā agere jussit.
4. Multīs interfectīs hostēs fugere incipiēbant.
5. Sōrōrī rēgis multa et bona prōmittentur.
6. Puer bonus sed nōn fēlīx vidētur.
7. Ante prīmam lūcem, mī filī, dūc equōs trāns flūmen in agrum.
8. Uxōrēs ducum potentium in mūrīs stetērunt et proelium spectāvērunt.
9. Agricolae infēlīcēs pecūniā ab duce potentī petere cōstituunt, sed nihil agent.
10. Cōpiīs hostium in summō monte vīsīs, imperātor legiōnēs prō castrīs cōstituit.

34 B

1. Did the wife of that unfortunate man make a journey into the territory of the barbarians?
2. Listen (s.) to the voices of the frogs! They are pleasing to you, aren't they?
3. One animal has left nine large bodies of men in the woods.
4. The son of the powerful king accomplished nothing concerning the laws.
5. Today the hours do not seem long, do they?
6. In this city we will find our sister, once (having been) abandoned by her father.
7. You (pl.) decided to lead the column out of the fortifications because it was in great danger.
8. The soldiers of the powerful leaders are beginning to wage war.
9. After they had stationed one legion near the border, they came to our town and defended us.
10. After dawn the boys came with their fortunate mother; the king gave her many rewards.

Orpheus and Eurydice

Ōlim Orpheus poēta (*poet*) mortem vīcit. Ille Eurydicēn (acc.) amābat, sed ea īnfēlīx subitō ē vītā excessit. Dolor Orpheī erat magnus, sed mox uxōrem invenīre et servāre cōnstituit.



Mercury, Eurydice, & Orpheus*
cast of a Roman copy of a Greek work of the 5th cent. B.C.E.,
Cambridge Museum of Classical Archaeology, England

amātā mortem vincam!” Deinde cecinit (*sang*). Mortuī ex omnī viā et ex omnī locō illīus rēgnī veniēbant quod hanc vōcem grātam audīre cupiēbant. Etiam Cerberus, canis horribilis, potestāte

Sub terram ad tēctum Orcī, deī mortuōrum, libenter properāvit. Ubi id invēnit, Orcō ita dīxit: “Omnēs hominēs uxōrēs amant—hoc vērum est—sed hoc quoque dīcam: uxōre meā mortuā, nihil mihi jam aut grātum aut cārum est. Sī Eurydicē hīc manēre dēbet, hīc quoque maneō. Venīre supra terram sine illā – hoc nōn faciam.”

Hīs dictīs Orcus audāciam Orpheī probāvit; dolōrem ācrem ējus vīdit. “Amōrem tuum quidem laudō, sed lēgēs vītae et mortis ā dīs cōnstitūtae sunt. Haec lēx omnibus dīs nōta est: hominēs ā morte numquam fugiunt.”

“Hoc autem,” inquit Orpheus, “omnibus nōtum est: amor omnia vincit. Prō uxōre

*Author: Zde; Location:

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hermes,_Eurydice_and_Orpheus,_plaster_copy,_Cambridge_Museum_of_Classical_Archaeology,_154244.jpg; License: <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/deed.en>

illīus vōcis victus est. (Ille ad portās rēgnī cōnstitūtus est mortuōsque ex eō locō excēdere prohibuit.)

Orcus ab Orpheō victus eum ita jūvit. “Uxōrī tuae vītam iterum dō. In itinere illa post tē ambulābit, neque eam respiciēs. Suprā terram veniētis; tum eam spectā.” Sine morā Orpheus respondit, “Ita iter faciam. Hoc prōmittō!”

Dum Orpheus ē terrā mortuōrum iter facit, conjugem nōn respexit. Ubi autem in lūcem excessit, subitō eam respexit. Illa, “Quid ēgistī,” inquit, “conjūnx amāte?” Hīs dictīs ab oculīs Orpheī statim recessit, neque ille eam posteā vīdit.

Postscript

Quid dē hōc factō Orpheī dīcēmus? Hoc sōlum: uxōrem propter amōrem respexit et propter amōrem āmīsit.

Itaque fāma nōminis ējus fuit magna. Ille autem ab hominibus et amōre fēminārum—sed nōn ā dolōre suō—fūgit. In silvīs canēbat (*sang*) et omnia animālia, etiam illa ācria, omnēs arborēs et collēs, ad eum veniēbant vōcemque ējus audiēbant. Multae fēminaе huic locō propinquae eum amābant. Īrātae erant quod ille ūnam ex eīs uxōrem nōn dēlēgit. Itaque eum interfēcērunt. Corpus ējus in silvā jacuit, sed caput, in flūmen ā fēminīs jactum, etiam tum cecinit. Ubi id ad mare vēnit, finem fēcit.

omnia vincit labor

excēdō, excēdere (3), excessī, excessum – <i>go out, leave, depart</i>
recēdō, recēdere (3), recessī, recessum – <i>withdraw, go back</i>
respiciō, respicere (3), respexī, respectus – <i>look back (at)</i>

amor, amōris, m. – <i>love, desire</i>
dolor, dolōris, m. – <i>sorrow, grief, pain</i>
ācer, ācris, ācre – <i>sharp, fierce</i>

omnis, omne – <i>all, every</i>
libenter (adv.) – <i>willingly, freely</i>
quidem (postpositive adv.) – <i>indeed</i>

Third Declension: Adjectives of Two Endings

This type of third declension adjective has one nominative singular ending for masculine and feminine and another for neuter. The rest of the forms use the same endings as you have learned for **fēlīx**. Adjectives of two endings are the most common type of third declension adjective. Learn the declension of **omnis**, *every, all*, given below.

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

omnis, every, all

	SING		PLUR	
	M/F	N	M/F	N
NOM	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
GEN	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
DAT	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
ACC	omnem	omne	omnēs	omnia
ABL	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

Third Declension: Adjectives of Three Endings

In some adjectives of the third declension, such as **ācer**, *fierce*, the nominative singular has a different ending for each of the three genders. All other forms use the same endings as **omnis** and **fēlīx**. Learn the declension of **ācer** given below.

It is essential to learn all the nominative singular forms of adjectives of two and three endings because often the masculine nominative singular does not reveal the stem on which the other forms are made.

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

ācer, fierce

	SING		
	M	F	N
NOM	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

	PLUR		
	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
NOM	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
GEN	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
DAT	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
ACC	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

	ENDINGS			
	SING		PLUR	
	M/F	N	M/F	N
NOM	- / -is	-e	-ēs	-ia
GEN	-is	-is	-ium	-ium
DAT	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus
ACC	-em	-e	-ēs	-ia
ABL	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus



- Decline:
- | | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|--|
| a) lūx fēlīx | b) omnis incola | c) omne agmen |
| d) vir ācer | e) fēmina ācris | f) genus acre g) omne animal |

35 A

1. Ācrī cum dolōre corpus ducis interfectī in urbem portāre incipiunt.
2. Ille quidem fīliae rēgis omnem terram suam propter amōrem libenter prōmīsit.
3. Animālia ācria ā fīliō prohibēre temptāvērunt.
4. Postquam Rōmānī mentem bonam rēgīnae vīdērunt, novum cōnsilium cēpērunt et pācem petīvērunt.
5. Puella per moenia oppidī omnibus cum comitibus ad templum veniēbat.
6. Ubi prīma legiō vēnit, imperātor ē castrī statim excessit.
7. Uxor virum respexit quod dē salūte ējus magnopere timuit.
8. Ducēsne omne aurum ab urbibus hostium captum tenēbunt?
9. Amor mentēs multōrum nōn sōlum vīcit sed etiam vincet.
10. Numerō hostium superātī procul ā tēlīs eōrum recessimus et in castra fūgimus.

35 B

1. On account of his rage the teacher decided to go out of the town.
2. All the gifts indeed have not been pleasing to your sister and her spouse.
3. When they had come to the top of the hill, they looked back at their city and its walls.
4. They remained in their houses for a long time because they feared the fierce animals.
5. He is heard not only by every soldier but also by the commander.
6. After dawn we will withdraw from the shore and abandon this territory.
7. The hours seemed long because the teacher was again saying many things about the sun and the moon.
8. Terrified by the power of the leading citizens, the nation will not choose me (as) consul.
9. All things having been prepared, she began the journey.
10. He will overcome his sharp grief because he will be seized by the powerful god of love.

Amor Omnia Vincit?

Haec dē virō Gallicō scripta sunt. Gallī pugnās (*fights*) animalium amābant. Haec proelia ab eīs saepe spectābantur. Ōlim rēx multīs cum prīcipibus et fēminīs gentis suae hoc genus pugnae spectābat. Ūna ex hīs fēminīs, animum conjugis temptāre cupiēns, cōsilium novum cēpit. Dum cīvēs pugnās spectant, torquem conjugis ex aurō factum in medium harēnam (*arena*) jēcit, ubi magna animālia ācriter pugnābant.

Conjūnx ējus, torquem in terrā jacentem spectāns, “Quid,” inquit, “agis? Nōnne mihi hoc dōnum propter amōrem tuum dedistī? Nunc hunc hīs animālibus fractum numquam iterum geram.”

Uxor autem, cōsiliō bene parātō, celeriter respondit, “Sī quidem mē etiam nunc amās, hoc dōnum dēfende! Torquem ē mediā harēnā cape et ad mē portā.” Multī circum eōs sedēbant et haec audīvērunt. Omnēs tum virum spectābant.

Ubi ille haec audīvit, nihil aliud dīcēns sē in harēnam statim jēcit. Omnēs exspectābant; nūlla vōx audiēbātur. Animālia factum mīrum hūjus virī in medium perīculum properantis spectābant neque eī appropinquāvērunt. Ā locō quidem recessērunt ubi torquis jacēbat. Ille sine armīs ad eum ambulāre audēbat. Tum ex harēna cum īsignī properāvit.

Hōc vīsō vōcēs omnium Gallōrum auditae sunt, et vir īsigne suprā caput tenēns omnibus id mōnstrābat. Deinde autem, mente vērā uxōris nunc recognitā, et dolōre et īrā victus est. Eam respiciēns torquem ad pedēs ējus jēcit. “Tibi,” inquit, “vīta mea est minimē cāra; ita quoque mihi amor tuus. Odium omnem amōrem meum jam vīcit.”

Posteā ille, iterum ab omnibus cīvibus suīs laudātus, uxōrem ad patrem mātremque ējus mīsit et sōlus vītam suam ēgit (*led*).

hodiē mihi, crās tibi

recognōscō, recognōscere (3), recognōvī , recognitus – <i>recognize</i>	odium, odiī, n. – <i>hatred</i>
scribō, scribere (3), scripsi, scriptus – <i>write</i>	certē (adverb) – <i>surely, certainly</i> graviter (adverb) – <i>heavily, seriously, severely, deeply</i>
īsigne, īsignis, n. – <i>badge, mark, decoration; (pl.) insignia</i>	

Participles

Regular Latin verbs have four participles. You have already learned the perfect passive participle, which is the fourth principal part of most verbs.

Present Active Participle

This participle is formed on the present stem and is a third declension adjective. Notice that the ending of the ablative singular, however, is **-e**, not **-ī**, as in regular adjectives of the third declension.

This participle's form is similar to that of the noun **mēns, mentis**: the stem ends in **-nt-**. Only the first conjugation has **-a-** before this **-nt-**, as in **amāns, amantis, loving**. All other conjugations have an **-e-**, as in **timēns, timentis, fearing**. Verbs of the third-**iō** and fourth conjugations also have an **-i-** before the **-e-**, as in **capiēns, capientis, seizing**.

Below are the first two forms, nominative and genitive singular, of the present participle for the model verb of each conjugation. Learn them, along with the literal translations given.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

I	II	III	III-iō	IV
amāns, amantis <i>loving</i>	monēns, monentis <i>warning</i>	dūcēns, dūcentis <i>leading</i>	capiēns, cipientis <i>seizing</i>	audiēns, audientis <i>hearing</i>

Below is the full declension of **dūcēns**, as a model for the present participle.



Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome

dūcēns, leading

	SING		PLUR	
	M/F	N	M/F	N
NOM	dūcēns	dūcēns	dūcentēs	dūcentia
GEN	dūcentis	dūcentis	dūcentium	dūcentium
DAT	dūcentī	dūcentī	dūcentibus	dūcentibus
ACC	dūcentem	dūcēns	dūcentēs	dūcentia
ABL	dūcente	dūcente	dūcentibus	dūcentibus

Future Active Participle

This participle is formed on the stem of the perfect passive participle by removing the ending **-us** and replacing it with **-ūrus**, **-a**, **-um**. Thus, from **dictus** is formed the future active participle of **dīcō**: **dictūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *about to speak*; from **missus** the future active participle of **mittō**: **missūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *about to send*. Like the perfect passive participle, the future active has the same endings as **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**.

Below are the nominative singular forms of the future active participle for the model verb of each conjugation. Learn them, along with the literal translations given.

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

I	amātūrus , -a , -um	<i>about to love, going to love</i>
II	monitūrus , -a , -um	<i>about to warn, going to warn</i>
III	ductūrus , -a , -um	<i>about to lead, going to lead</i>
III-iō	captūrus , -a , -um	<i>about to seize, going to seize</i>
IV	audītūrus , -a , -um	<i>about to hear, going to hear</i>

Future Passive Participle

This participle, like the present, is formed on the present stem; to this stem is added the suffix **-ndus**, **-a**, **-um**, e.g., **amandus**, **-a**, **-um**. The future passive participle also declines like **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**.

Below are the nominative singular forms of the **future** passive participle for the model verb of each conjugation. Learn them, along with the literal translations given.

Notice these two similarities to the present active participle:

- only the first conjugation has **-ā-**, instead of **-e-**, before the **-ndus** suffix.
- third-iō and fourth conjugation have **-ie-** before the suffix.

FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

I	amandus , -a , -um	<i>must be loved, has to be loved</i>
II	monendus , -a , -um	<i>must be warned, has to be warned</i>
III	dūcendus , -a , -um	<i>must be led, has to be led</i>
III-iō	capiendus , -a , -um	<i>must be seized, has to be seized</i>
IV	audiendus , -a , -um	<i>must be heard, has to be heard</i>

Boxing Participles

If we put all four participles together, we can form a box, such as the one on the following page, which is a convenient format in which to remember them and their literal translations. The diagonal arrows refer to the fact that the future active participle is formed from the perfect passive, and that the future passive is formed on the same stem as the present active. In the example on the following page, **agō**, *do, drive*, is used as a model.

	Active	Passive
Present	agēns, agentis <i>doing</i>	XX
Future	āctūrus, -a, -um <i>about to do, going to do</i>	agendus, -a, -um <i>must be done</i>
Perfect	XX	āctus, -a, -um <i>having been done</i>

Use and Translation of Participles

For now, you will only encounter the present and perfect participles. As you have already learned in lessons 26, 27, and 28, participles modify nouns and are normally best translated as subordinate clauses. The present active, as well as the perfect passive, participle is used in the ablative absolute.

In the following examples, notice that the present participle expresses an action that occurs at the same time as the governing verb and so must be translated differently than the perfect participle, which shows time before the main verb. In translating both participles, however, draw on the menu of subordinate clauses you have already learned (*who, when, since, although, if*, but now add *while* and *as* for the present participle).

Study carefully the examples on the following page.

PRESENT Participle:

Fēmina virum ambulantem vocat.

The woman calls the man who is walking or while he is walking.

SAME TIME

Fēmina virum ambulantem vocavit.

The woman called the man who was walking or while he was walking.

SAME TIME

PERFECT Participle:

Fēmina virum amissum petit.

The woman seeks the man who was lost or who has been lost.

TIME BEFORE

Fēmina virum āmissum petīvit.

The woman sought the man who had been lost.

TIME BEFORE

PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES IN ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

PRESENT Participle:

Hostibus appropinquantibus, moenia dēfendit.

While the enemy is approaching or Since the enemy is approaching, you defend the walls.

SAME TIME

Hostibus appropinquantibus, moenia dēfendistis.

While the enemy was approaching or Since the enemy was approaching, you defended the walls.

SAME TIME

PERFECT Participle:

Hostibus vīsīs moenia dēfendere parāmus.

Since the enemy has been seen, we are preparing to defend the walls.

TIME BEFORE

Hostibus vīsīs moenia dēfendere parābāmus.

Since the enemy had been seen, we were preparing to defend the walls.

TIME BEFORE



Box the participles of **gerō**, **jaciō**, and **mittō**

- Decline in Latin:
- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a) sacred sun departing | d) fierce mother capturing |
| b) large animal lying down | e) powerful farmer hearing |
| c) fortunate father promising | f) bright mark showing |

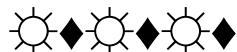
36 A

1. Illae puellae fēlīcēs vocantur comitēs fīliae rēgis.
2. Auxilium, cīvēs, puerō in viā jacentī date!
3. Cui, hōc mīlite interfectō, haec īsignia dare dēbēmus?
4. Omnēs cīvēs contrā hunc virum potentem propter īram odiumque āriter pugnābant.
5. Dux gladiō graviter vulnerātus in terrā jacet.
6. Postquam cōnsul ab inimīcō vulnerātus est, pauca dīxit et ē vītā mox excessit.
7. Nōnne īsigne hūjus legiōnis clārae recognōscis?
8. Marī nāvēs superante dominus tamen nautās servāre temptāvit.
9. Dum haec geruntur, rēgīna furōre capta mīlitem nōs interficere jussit.
10. Hoc iter dūrum facientēs parvum librum scripsimus.

36 B

1. These things are good: to walk well, to see many things, to recognize true friends, to want few things, and to hear good things.
2. His fierce hatred certainly will not severely frighten you.
3. After I had looked back at the altars, I saw the blood of animals on them.
4. After his father had been killed, the evil king sought the badges of power.
5. Since our camp has been captured, order him to withdraw from the battle with all his forces.
6. Since the enemy is approaching, our soldiers seize their weapons and stand on the walls.
7. We, however, will gladly defend the sons of the chiefs as they (chiefs) depart from the city.
8. To speak against hatred is to show true courage.
9. The man, chosen consul, decided to give many rewards to his friends and their wives.
10. The sister wrote a letter to her unfortunate brother; then she departed from our territory.

per aspera ad astra



Ludus 37

Regular comparison of adjectives
-*imus* & -*rimus* superlatives
Comparision with **quam** & Ablative of
Comparison
Cardinals 1-10

Niobe the Proud, Part 1

Niobē erat uxor rēgis Thēbārum (*of Thebes*). Superba erat propter conjugem et numerum puerōrum suōrum. “Quam magna sum! Conjūnx meus est rēx urbis et clārae et potentis. Septem filiās et septem filiōs pulchrōs habeō. Māter fēlīcior omnibus sum. Haec omnia sunt vītae deae idōnea!”

Niobē autem sapientissima nōn erat. Ōlim cīvēs per viās ambulantēs vīdit. Portīs urbīs apertīs, omnēs in agrum ad templum deae Lātōnae excēdēbant. Niobē īrāta, “Cūr, cīvēs,” inquit, “hanc deam laudātis? Nōnne mē—pulchriōrem et potentiōrem quam eam—laudābitis? Illane trēs puerōs habet? Quīnque? Octō? Minimē! Duōs sōlōs puerōs habet! Magnum numerum meōrum spectāte. Mē deam nunc vocāte! Portās templōrum claudite! Novum templum altius et pulchrius cēterīs aedificāte! Nōmen meum clārius illō Lātōnae erit.”

Cīvēs rēgīnam ācriōrem timentēs nōn magnō gaudiō locum sacrum dēlēgērunt et templum novum aedificāre incipiēbant. Illī autem ita dīcēbant: “Hoc gravissimum est: templum hominis facere nōn dēbēmus. Īra deōrum certē erit ācerrima.” Deinde Lātōnam vocāvērunt: “Tē etiam nunc laudāmus. Templum tuum est sacerrimum.”

aut viam inveniam aut faciam

aperiō, aperīre (4), **aperuī, apertus** – open,
reveal, uncover
claudō, claudere (3), **clausī, clausus** – close
gaudium, -īi, n. – joy

All cardinal numbers 1-10: **ūnus, -a, -um;**
duo, duae, duo; trēs, tria; quattuor;
quīnque; sex; septem; octō; novem; decem
gravis, grave – heavy, serious, severe
sapiēns, sapientis – wise

quam – than (in comparisons)

Comparison of Adjectives

There are three degrees of comparison: positive, comparative, and superlative, e.g., *tall*, *taller*, *tallest*.

In Latin, the positive is the basic form of the adjective: **longus, -a, -um, long.**

The comparative is formed by adding to the stem of the positive the suffix **-ior** for masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for neuter: **longior, longius, longer**. The comparative can also express the equivalent of English *too* or *rather* with an adjective: **longior, too long, rather long.**

The superlative is formed by adding to the base of the positive the suffix **-issimus, -issima, -issimum**: **longissimus, -a, -um, longest**. The superlative can also express an extreme degree of a quality: **longissimus, very long**. Below are some other examples.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
M/F	N	
lātus, -a, -um, wide	lātior, lātius, wider	lātissimus, -a, -um, widest
potēns, potentis	potentior, potentius	potentissimus, -a, -um
<i>powerful</i>	<i>more powerful</i>	<i>most powerful</i>
fēlix, fēlicis	fēlicior, fēlicius	fēlicissimus, -a, -um
<i>fortunate</i>	<i>more fortunate</i>	<i>most fortunate</i>

Declension of Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

The superlative is declined like **bonus, -a, -um**.

The comparative is a third declension adjective, but it has none of the i-stem endings that regular third declension adjectives have. All its forms, except for the neuter nominative and accusative singular (**lātius**) use the suffix **-iōr-**, to which are added the appropriate endings. The declension of **longior** below may serve as a model for the declension of the comparative.

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE				
	SING		PLUR	
	M / F	N	M / F	N
NOM	longiōr	longiōs	longiōrēs	longiōra
GEN	longiōris	longiōris	longiōrum	longiōrum
DAT	longiōrī	longiōrī	longiōribus	longiōribus
ACC	longiōrem	longiōs	longiōrēs	longiōra
ABL	longiōre	longiōre	longiōribus	longiōribus

Superlatives in **-rimus**

Adjectives whose first form ends in **-er**, such as **miser**, in the superlative add the ending **-rimus, -a, -um** to the full **-er** form. Notice, however, that in the comparative the true stem of the adjective is used: *fiercest*, **ācerrimus**, but *fiercer*, **ācrior**

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
M / F	N	
miser, -a, -um	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, -chra, -chrūm	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

Superlatives in *-limus*

Six adjectives whose first form ends in **-lis**, such as **facilis**, *easy*, in the superlative add the ending **-limus**, **-a**, **-um** to the stem of the positive. Below are the adjectives of this type, the first two of which you will be required to learn in Lesson 38.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE M / F	N	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, facile, <i>easy</i>	facilior,	facilius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, difficile, <i>difficult</i>	difficilior,	difficilius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, simile, <i>like</i>	similior,	similius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, dissimile, <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior,	dissimilius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, humile, <i>low</i>	humilior,	humilius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, gracile, <i>slender</i>	gracilior,	gracilius	gracillimus, -a, -um



Dedicatory Inscription of a Mithraeum
Ostia, 3rd cent. C.E.

Comparison with *Quam*

One way to compare two things in Latin is to join them with **quam**, *than*. The second item being compared must be in the same case as the first item.

#1	#2
Haec puella est altior quam ille puer.	<i>This girl is taller than that boy.</i>
#1	#2
Urbem pulchriōrem quam nostrā numquam inveniēmus.	<i>We will never find a city more beautiful than ours.</i>

Ablative of Comparison

A second way to compare two things in Latin is to put the second item in the ablative case. In this construction, **quam** is NOT used, nor is any preposition. Notice that the two sentences below express the same meaning as the two above.²

#1	#2
Haec puella est altior illō puerō.	<i>This girl is taller than that boy.</i>
#1	#2
Urbem pulchriōrem nostrā numquam inveniēmus.	<i>We will never find a city more beautiful than ours.</i>

Cardinal Numbers 1-10

Of the first ten cardinal numbers, only *one*, *two*, and *three* can be declined. You will learn the full declension of *one* later, but now learn the declension of *two* and *three* below.

	duo, two			trēs, three	
NOM	M	F	N	M / F	N
GEN	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trīum	trīum
DAT	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
ACC	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
ABL	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

² The ablative of comparison may only be used if the first thing to be compared is in the nominative or accusative case.



Compare: **clārus**, **certus**, and **cārus**.

Decline together:

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| a) cōnsilium fēlīcius | d) longissimum iter | g) haec conjunx potentissima |
| b) cīvis potentior | e) mīles ācrior | h) gēns līberior |
| c) avis gravior | f) ille homō ācerrimus | i) illa urbs clārissima |

37 A

1. Ille in hāc urbe erat longē inimīcus ācerrimus.
2. Haec fēmina clārior est quam illa. Haec fēmina clārior est illā.
3. Rōmānī, novem nāvibus āmissīs, ad lītus tamen vēnērunt.
4. Portās aperīte! Puerī ā duābus mātribus clārissimīs ex urbe dūcuntur.
5. Postquam barbarī omnia parāvērunt, tria oppida sua relīquērunt et fīnēs lātiōrēs petēbant.
6. Dum hostēs absunt, cīvēs fēlīcissimī moenia altiōra fēcērunt; deinde portās clausērunt.
7. Fēmina avēs per arborēs altissimās fugientēs capere nōn temptat.
8. Morte cōnsulīs bonī nūntiātā, dolor nōst̄er fuit gravissimus.
9. Neque ille magister sapientior quam hic vidētur.
10. Praemiīs ab imperātōre datīs legiōnēs cum gaudiō iter facient.

37 B

1. This hill is high; that hill is higher than this; the nearby hill is by far the highest.
2. You (pl.) tried to seize five animals fiercer than these two.
3. On account of the death of his son one of (**ex**) the three leaders was very wretched.
4. The very heavy gates of the city were being closed by the messengers.
5. His joy was great; their grief was more severe.
6. Did the troops decide to open the gates of the camp before first light?
7. Nothing indeed was being accomplished (**agō**) by the unfortunate soldier and his rather wise friend.
8. All the barbarians tried to show the danger by means of their voices.
9. After three years they were conquered (perf.) by another more powerful tribe.
10. On top of the mountain the king was looking at his son (who was) walking through the field.

Niobe the Proud, Part 2

Lātōna, hīs audītīs, magnopere īrāta erat; Apollinem et Diānam ad sē statim vocāvit. “Niobē cīvēs suōs mē laudāre prohibuit. Sē deam mājōrem et potentiōrem quam mē vocat.” Dolor ācer duōs deōs cēpit, sed īra eōrum etiam mājor erat. Apollo, “Verba (*words*),” inquit, “facillima sunt, sed facta difficiliōra. Facta fortia, nōn verba, laudō.”

Septem juvenēs, filiī rēgīnae, in agrō rēgīiae propinquō fuērunt. Apollo sine morā trēs ē juvenibus sagittīs interfēcit. Deinde quattuor aliōs mortuōs in terrā relīquit.

Rēgīnane tum fuit sapientior aut minus superba? Minimē. Furōre graviōre superāta est, neque sē laudāre dēstitit. “Septem puerōs īfēlīcissimōs āmīsī, sed plūrēs filiās habeō quam Lātōna. Hoc certum est: māter mājor tē, Lātōna, semper erō!”

Diāna respondit, “Sī potestātem vēram deōrum, fēmina pējor omnibus hominibus, recognōscere cupis, illās filiās respice.” Mox sex ē puellīs sagittīs Diānae interfectae sunt. Úna parva, mortem fugiēns, cum mātre sē jūnxit. Niobē eam ā tēlīs Diānae dēfendere temptāvit. Dum autem hoc facit, Diāna sagittā puellam graviter vulnerāvit. Mox haec quoque ē vītā excessit. Deinde rēx propter dolōrem sē interfēcit. Niobē, nec jam māter nec uxor, sōla relicta est.



Apollo Belvedere, 2nd cent. B.C.E.
Roman copy of a Greek original, Vatican Museums

altius, citius, fortius

dēsistō, dēsistere (3), dēstitū, dēstitum – cease (+ infin.)	certus, -a, -um – sure, certain, definite
jungō, jungere (3), jūnxī, jūnctus – join	difficilis, difficile – difficult
juvenis, juvenis , (juvenum), c. – young man, young woman, youth	facilis, facile – easy
rēgia, -ae , f. – palace	facile (adv.) – easily
	fortis, forte – brave, strong
	Irregularly compared adjs. & advs. of
	bonus, malus, parvus, magnus, multus

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

Learn the comparison of the following five adjectives:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
	M / F	N
bonus, good	melior,	optimus, -a, -um, best
malus, bad	pējor,	pessimus, -a, -um, worst
magnus, great	mājor,	maximus, -a, -um, greatest
parvus, small	minor,	minimus, -a, -um, smallest
multus, much	plūs, more	plūrimus, -a, -um, most

Declension of *plūs*

In the singular, **plūs** is a neuter noun; in the plural it is a third declension adjective. Notice that it has **-ium** in the genitive plural, but **-a** in the neuter nominative and accusative plural. Learn the declension below.

plūs, more

	SING	PLUR	
NOM	N plūs	M / F plūrēs	N plūra
GEN	plūris	plūriūm	plūriūm
DAT	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
ABL	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

Formation of Adverbs from Adjectives

Many Latin adverbs are formed from adjectives. From adjectives like **longus, -a, -um**, adverbs are created by adding **-ē** to the stem: **longē, by far**.

From third declension adjectives, such as **ācer**, adverbs are formed by adding **-iter** or **-ter** to the real stem: **ācriter, fiercely**.

Regular Comparison of Adverbs

Adverbs are regularly compared as follows:

1) the comparative uses the neuter comparative of the corresponding adjective: **longius**, *farther*; **ācrius**, *more fiercely*.

2) the superlative changes the superlative of the corresponding adjective to **-issimē**: **longissimē**, *farthest*. Notice that this rule applies equally to adjectives in **-er** and **-lis**: **ācerrimē**, *most fiercely*; **facillimē**, *most easily*.

So the full comparison of the adverb *widely* is the following:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē , <i>widely</i>	lātiūs , <i>more widely</i>	lātissimē , <i>most widely</i>

Irregular Comparison of Adverbs

Learn the comparison of the following five adverbs:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene , <i>well</i>	meliūs , <i>better</i>	optimē , <i>best</i>
male , <i>badly</i>	pējus , <i>worse</i>	pessimē , <i>worst</i>
magnopere , <i>greatly</i>	magis , <i>more greatly</i>	maximē , <i>most greatly</i>
parum , <i>little</i>	minus , <i>less</i>	minimē , <i>least</i>
multum , <i>much</i>	plūs , <i>more</i>	plūrimum , <i>most</i>

**38 A**

1. Nāvēs barbarōrum sunt meliōrēs quam nostrarē.
2. Post hoc iter difficillimum noctu somnus nōbīs gratior erit.
3. Postquam hostēs urbem oppugnāvērunt, dux eam fortiter (fortius, fortissimē) dēfendit.
4. Minor puella nōn jam territa līberius respondit.
5. Agrīs ab hostibus vastatīs, cīvēs illīs populī nūllum frūmentum habēbant.
6. Cūr, magister, nōbīs maximōs et difficillimōs librōs semper dās?
7. Trēs ducēs ācerrimī pugnāre nōn dēstitērunt.
8. Vōx rānae plūrimīs juvenibus minus (minimē) grāta erat.
9. Hic nūntius est certissimus: duae gentēs potentissimae jūnctae sunt.
10. Nōnne, fēminaē, plūra animālia quam filiōs habētis?

38 B

1. Good gods, defend the youths of our land.
2. The brave and sure daughter never abandoned the king.
3. The larger battle was reported more widely.
4. He said this about the three boys: two of (**ex**) them were worse than you; another was the worst.
5. It is better³ to tell him nothing.
6. With the greatest joy all our soldiers are joining the camp with the river.
7. On the smaller island he has eight horses, but tomorrow I will have more.
8. It was very difficult indeed to send the ships to the shores of that foreign nation.
9. Will they cease to praise the deeds of the brave young men and to give them arms?
10. The queen calls the powerful god of the sea, but he listens to her least.



Fallen Niobid
Rome, Musei Capitolini
(Centrale Montemartini)

³ In the Latin equivalent, *better* actually modifies the infinitive *to tell* and must therefore be neuter.

The Judgment of Paris, Part 1

Una ex omnibus dīs ad mātrimōnium Pēleī et Thetidis (*of Peleus and Thetis*) nōn vocāta est. Itaque haec dea, Discordia, magnopere īrāta erat. Plūrimīs dīs ad mātrimōnium convenientibus, per portam apertam inter omnēs mālum jēcit. Hoc, in quō “Pulcherrimae” scrip̄tum est, ex aurō factum est. Trēs deae potentiorēs—Jūnō, rēgīna deōrum, Minerva, dea sapientiae, et Venus, dea amōris—omnēs hoc tenēre cupiēbant. Ā Jove jūdiciū dē mālō statim postulāvērunt.

Juppiter autem, quī jūdiciū facere minimē cupiēbat, sibi ita dīxit: “Hoc jūdiciū est difficilius et gravius aliīs. Deae, cui mālum dabō, grātus et cārus erō. Duae, quibus id nōn dabō, maximō odio dē mē semper male dīcent. Nūllam pācem cum illīs duābus habēbō. Sī trēs deās cum mālō ad hominem mittō, procul ā jūdiciō facillimē absum.” Itaque Paridem, quī erat juvenis Trōjānus et fīlius rēgis Trōjae, jūdicem dēlēgit.

Postquam deae iter ad urbē Trōjam fēcērunt, Jūnō, “Ego (*I*),” inquit, “rēgīna deōrum, pulchra sum et mālum est mihi idōneum. Tibi, Paris, dabō magnam potentiam—mājōrem potentiaū omnium hominū, id est, maximam!”

nēmō liber est quī corporī servit

conveniō, convenīre (4), convēnī, conventum – <i>come together, assemble, gather</i>	potentia, -ae, f. – <i>power</i>
qui, quae, quod – <i>who, which</i>	
sapientia, -ae, f. – <i>wisdom, prudence</i>	
jūdiciū, -ī, n. – <i>judgment, decision</i>	facile – <i>easily, readily</i>
jūdex, jūdicis, m. – <i>judge, juror</i>	
mālum, -ī, n. – <i>apple</i>	

The Relative Pronoun

Relative pronouns refer to a noun or pronoun and introduce subordinate clauses (the “relative clause”) which describe that noun or pronoun. In English the relative is *who, whom, whose, which*, etc. The noun or pronoun to which the relative refers is called the antecedent. In the sentence below, the relative pronoun **qui** refers to the antecedent **nautam**; it also functions as the subject of the subordinate clause, whose verb is **sedēbat**.

Nautam, quī in ūrā sedēbat, spectābāmus.

We were looking at the sailor, who was sitting on the shore.

The relative pronoun agrees in number and gender with its antecedent, but it takes its case from its function in the relative clause. In the sentence above, **quī** is masculine singular to agree with **nautam**, but whereas **nautam** is accusative, **quī** must be nominative because it is the subject of **sedēbat** in the relative clause. Thus, the relative and its antecedent will often be in different cases.

Learn the forms of the relative pronoun given below. Notice that they are the same as those of the interrogative adjective, which you have already learned.

RELATIVE PRONOUN

		SING	
	M	F	N
NOM	quī	quae	quod
GEN	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus
DAT	cui	cui	cui
ACC	quem	quam	quod
ABL	quō	quā	quō

		PLURAL	
	M	F	N
NOM	quī	quae	quae
GEN	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC	quōs	quās	quae
ABL	quibus	quibus	quibus

Relative with **cum**

When the ablative of the relative is used with **cum**, the preposition is attached to the end of the relative: **quācum, quibuscum.**

Study the following examples of the use of the relative pronoun.

Fēminaē quās vidēmus sapientēs sunt.

The women whom we see are wise.

Vir cūjus equum servāvistī agricola fuit.

The man whose horse you saved was a farmer.

Puella cui librum dedit fīda est.

The girl to whom he gave the book is loyal.

Tēlum quō vulnerātus sum fuit longum.

The spear by which I was wounded was long.



39 A

1. Tibi mālum quod habeō facile dabō.
2. Tibi quam amō bona libenter dabō.
3. Cīvēs quōrum prīncipēs in hōc oppidō convēnērunt bellum gerere dēsīderant.
4. Puella cui equum dedistī prope montēs habitat.
5. Gentēs quibuscum bellum gerēbāmus pācem petēbant.
6. Gentēs ā nōbīs victae pācem meliōrem petēbant.
7. Jūdicēs jūdicia optima facientēs maximē laudantur.
8. Jūdicēs quī jūdicia optima faciunt magis laudantur.
9. Eī quī sapientiam hominum antīquōrum amant numquam satis laudābuntur.
10. Rōmānae eī quī vītam cīvis servāvit praemia dare parant.
11. Juvenis quī amōre captus est minus labōrat.
12. Vir bonus plūrēs amīcōs habet.
13. Trēs legiōnēs collī in quō castra hostium erant celeriter appropinquābant.
14. Eum, cui potentia minimē grata est, ducem dēligere dēbēmus.
15. In urbem eam puellam quācum labōrābās mīsimus.

39 B

1. A wise person chooses prudence, not power, and joy, not grief.
2. The commander who was sitting on the top of the mountain ordered a few men to depart.
3. The queen by whom the slave was killed does not dare to assemble with the citizens.
4. What reward do you find in the city which you have conquered?
5. The consul to whom we reported the danger is doing nothing about the safety of the citizens.
6. Wisdom which all of us (we all) desire is given to humans by the gods.
7. Tomorrow we will assemble and we will hear much about the deeds which the women have done.
8. Your brother whose decisions are good intends to choose the best apples.
9. The enemy with whom we were waging war decided to ask for peace.
10. To whom (pl.) did you tell everything?

The Judgment of Paris, Part 2

Deinde Minerva dīxit sē pulchriōrem esse quam Jūnōnem. “Tibi,” inquit, “dōnum melius prōmittō. Mālō mihi datō, tibi sapientiam dabō propter quam ab omnibus laudāberis. Haec tē virum clāriōrem faciet. Jūnō quidem nōn est pulchrior mē!”

Venus autem dīxit sē esse pulchriōrem duābus cēterīs. “Ō Paris, pulchrior omnibus juvenibus, ego, Venus, pulcherrima sum! Tibi dōnum optimum prōmittō. Mālō mihi datō, tibi Helenam, quae est longē pulcherrima fēmina, dabō. Hoc certum est: Helenā uxōre tuā, fēlicissimus eris. Hoc jūdicium facillimum est. Mihi mālum dā!”



**Judgement of Paris, Detail of Paris, Cupid, and Jupiter,
Palazzo Altemps, Rome (2nd cent. C.E.)**

Venus ā Paride dēlecta est. Ita juvenis amōrem magis quam aut potentiam aut sapientiam cupīvit. Posteā Paris ad urbem Spartam trāns mare vēnit. Ibi Menelāus et Helena, quae erat uxor ējus, habitābant. Menelāus, quī crēdidit Paridem bonum esse, eum libenter accēpit. Dum Paris hīc manet, Menelāus Spartam relīquit quod ad īsulam Crētam nāvigāre dēbuit. Rēge iter faciente, juvenis Trōjānus cotidiē (*everyday*) Helenam spectāvit. Crēdēbat eam longē pulchriōrem omnibus fēminīs esse, et sēnsit sē eam magnopere amāre. Itaque eam ad Trōjam portāre cōstituit, sed paucōs post annōs illud dōnum esse pējus quam cētera sēnsit.

nōn semper ea sunt quae videntur

accipiō, accipere (3), accēpī, acceptus – receive; perceive, learn, suffer	ostendō, ostendere (3), ostendī, ostentus – show, display, reveal
crēdō, crēdere (3), crēdidī, crēditus – believe, trust (+ dat.)	sentiō, sentīre (4), sēnsī, sēnsus – realize, feel, perceive, believe
discēdō, discēdere (3), discessī, discessum – depart, leave	causa, -ae, f. – cause, reason

Indirect Statement

The English sentence *The woman is walking* is a direct statement of what someone says or thinks. We can also report statements and thoughts indirectly: *I see that the woman is walking*. Such expressions are called indirect statements. Here is the Latin version of the same sentence:

Videō fēminam dīcere. *I see that the woman is speaking.*

In this example, the main verb, **Videō** governs the indirect statement, **fēminam ambulāre**. Notice the following important features of the Latin:

1. No conjunction corresponding to English *that* is used to introduce the Latin indirect statement.
2. The subject, **fēminam**, is accusative, not nominative.
3. The verb, **dīcere**, is infinitive, not indicative.

In describing indirect statements in Latin, we speak of the “subject accusative” and the “infinitive of indirect statement”. We can, then, formulate a general description as follows: in Latin, verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving can take indirect statement with subject accusative and infinitive. Below are two more examples.

Direct Statement	Indirect Statement	Translation
Tū venis.	Dīcit tē venīre	<i>He says that you come/are coming.</i>
Dī nōs juvant.	Videt deōs nōs juvāre.	<i>He sees that the gods help/are helping us.</i>

Infinitives and Relative Time

In indirect statement, the infinitive shows relative time. The present infinitive, like the present participle, expresses an action going on at the SAME TIME as the action of the governing verb. As a result, the present infinitive must be translated in the simple past or imperfect when the governing verb is in any past tense. Observe the difference in the two indirect statements below:

Dicit nautam mihi dōnum dare. *He says that the sailor gives / is giving me a gift.*

Dixit nautam mihi dōnum dare. *He said that the sailor gave / was giving me a gift.*

Indirect Reflexive

In an indirect statement, the reflexive pronoun and adjective (**sē**, **suus**) can, and usually do, refer back to the subject of the governing verb. For example,

Juvenis dīxit sē aurum petere.

The youth said that he (the youth) was seeking the gold.

Fēmina dīcit mātrem sibi aquam dare.

The woman says that her mother gives her (the woman) water.

**40 A**

1. Juvenis ita dīcit: “Amīcus hastam jacit.”
2. Juvenis dīcit amīcum hastam jacere.
3. Juvenis dīcēbat sē hastam jacere.
4. Juvenis vīdit amīcōs hastās jacere.
5. Nōnne mihi causam vēram illīus itineris ostendētis?
6. Fēminae dīxērunt sorōrēs esse miserās.
7. Sēnsimus mīlitēs eum ducem dēligere.
8. Vir uxorque fortis iter difficilius quam hoc numquam fēcērunt.
9. Nūntius ducī vulnerātō dīxit hostēs castra capere cupere.
10. Nōnne crēdidistis nōs sapientiōrēs eīs esse?
11. Eī ostendō populum Rōmānum fīnēs lātiōrēs quam nostrōs habēre.
12. Audit eās frātrī nōn crēdere.
13. Scrīpsit hōs cōnsilium certum ab imperātōre petere.
14. Audiō eum nec potestātem nec pecūniā magis quam somnum dēsīderāre.
15. Dux cui populus praemium dedit accipit mīlitēs suōs in magnō proeliō mortem accipere.



**Dedicatory Inscription
Ostia**

40 B

1. She says that on account of the decision she receives great rewards.
2. The wretched man said that he did not trust that judge.
3. She perceived that her companions were suffering grief.
4. Although the enemy was approaching, we heard nothing.
5. He is learning that he is not the wisest boy.
6. They said that the horses, the gates having been opened, were escaping into the fields.
7. The leader with whom they assembled said that he was prepared to fight.
8. You (pl.) again tried to make peace with those nations whose territory was near the city.
9. Will you (s.) never believe that she is your sister?
10. They will do that which they have been ordered (to do).

Iphigenia at Aulis, Part 1

Militēs Graecī, quī bellum cum Trōjānīs gerere cupiēbant, castra in lītore Aulide (*at Aulis*) posuērunt. Nōn nāvigābant quod ventī nōn erant idōneī. Menelāus frātrī Agamemnōnī (*Agamemnon*) ita dīxit: “Cūr ā marī prohibēmur?”

Vātēs (*prophet*), quī Calchās appellātus est, illīs duōbus frātribus ita dīxit: “Vōbīs ea quae dī mihi mōnstrāvērunt nūntiābō. Haec ā Diānā aguntur. Illa est ā quā classis nāvigāre prohibētur quod scit tē, Agamemnōn, animal sacrum ējus interfēcisse.”

“Quid,” inquit Agamemnōn, “facere dēbēmus? Magnum numerum animālium in castrīs habēmus et deae plūrima libenter dabimus.” Calchās respondit, “Dea, dux īfēlīx, nōn ita facile īrāta esse dēsistet. Vītam virginis, filiae tuae Īphigenīae, postulat. Dīcit nūllam aliam satis idōneam esse.”

Nunc rēx, magnō dolōre acceptō, dīxit sē filiam suam nōn interfēctūrum esse. “Diāna mē propter scelus meum aliud scelus facere jubet. Quid, comitēs, uxōrī meae, Clytaemnēstrae (*Clytemnestra*), dīcam? Illa filiam nostram ad castra nōn mittet.”

Ulixēs (*Ulysses*), dux sapiēns, dīxit hoc bellum nōn sōlum ab Menelāō cēterīsque ducibus sed etiam ā dīs postulārī. “Trōjam capiēmus Helenamque servābimus. Sī dī mortem filiae tuae postulant, ita facere dēbēmus. Mē audī et ita fac: epistulam scrībe, in quā uxōrī dīcis Achillem, mīlitem fortem et juvenem pulcherrimum, Īphigenīam in mātrimōnium ductūrum esse. Uxōrī dīc nihil dē vērā causā itineris.” Agamemnōn epistulam celeriter scrīptam ad uxōrem mīsit.

damnant quod nōn intellegunt

pōnō, pōnere (3), **posuī, positus** – *place, put*
sciō, scīre (4), **scīvī, scītus** – *know, be aware*

scelus, sceleris, n. – *crime, wickedness;*
+ **facere** – *to commit a crime*

Infinitives

Most Latin verbs have six infinitives: present, future, and perfect, active and passive.

Present Passive Infinitives

The present passive infinitive has the ending **-ī**. For all conjugations, except the third, this ending replaces the **-e** at the end of the active infinitive:

<i>amāre, to love</i>	<i>amārī, to be loved</i>
<i>monēre, to warn</i>	<i>monērī, to be warned</i>
<i>audīre, to hear</i>	<i>audīrī, to be heard</i>

Verbs of the third conjugation drop the **-ere** of the active and add **-ī** to form the passive:

<i>dūcere, to lead</i>	<i>dūcī, to be led</i>
<i>capere, to seize</i>	<i>capī, to be seized</i>

Future Infinitives

The future active infinitive consists of the future active participle and **esse**. For example:

amātūrus, -a, -um esse, will love *captūrus, -a, -um esse, will seize*

The future passive consists of the neuter of the fourth principal part and **īrī**:

monitum īrī, will be warned *audītum īrī, will be heard*

For more about the translation of the future infinitives, see below.

Perfect Infinitives

The perfect active infinitive combines the stem of the third principal part with **-isse**:

amāvisse, to have loved *dūxisse, to have led*

The perfect passive consists of the perfect passive participle and **esse**:

captus, a, -um esse, to have been captured
audītus, -a, -um esse, to have been heard

Boxing Infinitives

As with participles, it is useful to learn the infinitives and their translations in the format of a box, as in the paradigm for all model verbs below.

	Active	Passive
Present	amāre , <i>to love</i> monēre dūcere capere audīre	amārī , <i>to be loved</i> monērī dūcī capī audīrī
Future	amātūrus, a, um esse , <i>will love</i> monitūrus, a, um esse ductūrus, a, um esse captūrus, a, um esse audītūrus, a, um esse	amātum īrī , <i>will be loved</i> monitum īrī ductum īrī captum īrī audītum īrī
Perfect	amāvisse , <i>to have loved</i> monuisse dūxisse cēpisse audīvisse	amātus, a, um esse , <i>to have been loved</i> monitus, a, um esse ductus, a, um esse captus, a, um esse audītus, a, um esse

Use and Translation of Infinitives

As you have already learned, the tense of an infinitive indicates relative time only:

Present Infinitives = SAME time as the governing verb

Future Infinitives = time AFTER the governing verb

Perfect Infinitives = time BEFORE the governing verb

One of the most common use of infinitives in Latin is in indirect statement. As you have learned in the preceding lesson, in indirect statement you will translate the infinitive as a finite verb. Study the examples below, noting the appropriate translation of the infinitive relative to the tense of the governing verb.

Note also that in the future active and perfect passive, the participial component of the infinitive must agree with the subject.

Dicit tē pecūniā capere.

He says that you are seizing the money.

Dicit pecūniā ā tē capī.

He says that the money is (being) seized by you.

Dicit tē pecūniā captūrum esse.

He says that you will seize the money.

Dicit pecūniā ā tē captum īrī.

He says that the money will be seized by you.

Dicit tē pecūniā cēpissee.

He says that you seized/have seized the money.

Dicit pecūniā ā tē captam esse.

He says that the money was/has been seized by you.

Dixit tē pecūniā capere.

He said that you were seizing the money.

Dixit pecūniā ā tē capī.

He said that the money was (being) seized by you.

Dixit tē pecūniā captūrum esse.

He said that you would seize the money.

Dixit pecūniā ā tē captum īrī.

He said that the money would be seized by you.

Dixit tē pecūniā cēpissee.

He said that you had seized the money.

Dixit pecūniā ā tē captam esse.

He said that the money had been seized by you.



Box the infinitives, with translations, of **pōnō**, **inveniō**, **temptō**, and **petō**.

41 A

1. Crēdēbam hunc populum bellum cum barbarīs gessisse.
2. Audiō agmen longissimum appropinquāre.
3. Videō omnia ab eīs facta esse.
4. Vīdistī frūmentum armaque in nāvem ā nautīs pōnī.
5. Mātrēs audīvērunt sē ā prīncipibus laudātās esse.
6. Imperātor mīlitēs oppidum hostium occupāre nōn jussit.
7. Bene scīvit nōs scelera nōn factūros esse.
8. Scit mē cōsulem fuisse.
9. Dux dīcitur esse bonus.
10. Juvenēs dīcuntur omnia facillimē ēgisse.
11. Audīvimus eam minōrem frātrem habēre.
12. Fēminae sentiunt sē ā rēgīnā in templum missum īrī.

41 B

1. Many said that your territory was near to that of the barbarians.
2. On account of their crime the king slew those evil citizens with whom you were joining.
3. The ship is said to be sailing to the larger island.
4. They say that they have wounded a few of (**ex**) the enemy.
5. You saw that the girls had chosen the higher hill.
6. We know that the soldiers have been seen in the middle of the town.
7. He believes that animals are being sent to the allies by the wiser citizens.
8. They believed that she would show the gifts to the god.
9. You realize that the commander has called the troops.
10. The woman knew the reason for (of) the journey but she did not reveal it to you (s.).

Iphigenia at Aulis, Part 2

Clytaemnēstra crēdidit omnia ā conjugē scrīpta vēra esse et Achillem Īphigenīam amāre. Mox cum filiā magnō gaudiō ad castra exercitū Graecōrum vēnit. Agamemnōn illās libenter accēpit, sed posteā longē ā conspectū uxoris mānsit. Ubi Clytaemnēstra Achillem vīdit, eī dē mātrimōniō dīcere incēpit. Ille, qui nihil dē cōnsiliō Ulixis sciēbat, dīxit sē Īphigenīam neque amāre neque in mātrimōnium ductūrum esse.

Hīs audītīs, Clytaemnēstra clāmābat et conjugem petēbat. Sine morā Ulixēs sēnsit sē Īphigenīam capere dēbēre. Itaque, aliīs ducibus vocātīs, virginem īfēlīcem cēpit; eam mātrem miserrimē vocantem ad āram traxit. Calchās ibi cum gladiō stetit. Virgō necāta est. Mox ventī idōneī aderant, et omnēs exercitūs castra relinquere celeriter parābant.

Nunc Clytaemnēstra sēnsit conjugem filiam interficere in animō habuisse. “Nōn



Lion Gate, Mycenae (ca. 1350 B.C.E.)

mātrimōnium sed magnum scelus parābat. Ō vir pējor omnibus! Filiam nostram dēseruistī! Exercitūs Graecī nāvibus celeribus ad Trōjam properant. Crēdō eōs mox in Trōjānōs impetum factūrōs esse. Hīc in Graeciā dēserta manēbō, sed cōnsilium capiam. Agamemnōn praemium huic scelerī idōneum post bellum accipiet. Furōrem meum bene recognōscet.” Tum odium suum nōn ostendit, sed mortem conjugis parāre cōnstituit.

Haec quoque saepe dīcuntur. Diāna Īphigenīam ā morte prohibuit. Dum Calchās eam interficere parat, dea eam ē cōnspectū hominum traxit et in aliā terrā servāvit. Ita Graecī nōn sēnsērunt sē animal, nōn virginem, necāvisse.



Relief over lintel block, Lion Gate, Mycenae

qui bene amat bene castīgat

dēserō, dēserere (3), **dēseruī, dēsertus** –
abandon, desert

trahō, trahere (3), **traxī, tractus** – drag, pull

cōspectus, cōspectūs, m. – sight, view

cornū, cornūs, n. – horn, wing (of an army)

exercitus, exercitūs, m. – army

impetus, impetūs, m. – attack; **impetum**
facere in (+ acc.) – to make an attack on/
upon, to attack

signum, -ī, n. – signal, (military) standard;
statue

celer, celeris, celere – quick, swift

Fourth Declension Nouns

Nouns of the fourth declension ending in **-us** are regularly masculine; those ending in **-ū** are neuter. Learn the models below.

FOURTH DECLENSION

exercitus, m., <i>army</i>			cornū, n., <i>horn</i>		
			SING		N ENDINGS
	M/F ENDINGS				
NOM	exercitus	-us	cornū		-ū
GEN	exercitūs	-ūs	cornūs		-ūs
DAT	exercituī	-uī	cornū		-ū
ACC	exercitum	-um	cornū		-ū
ABL	exercitū	-ū	cornū		-ū
PLUR					
NOM	exercitūs	-ūs	cornua		-ua
GEN	exercituum	-uum	cornuum		-uum
DAT	exercitibus	-ibus	cornibus		-ibus
ACC	exercitūs	-ūs	cornua		-ua
ABL	exercitibus	-ibus	cornibus		-ibus



Decline in full: a) **cōnspectus clārus** b) **impetus celer** c) **illud potēns cornū**

42 A

1. Dux ostendēbat exercitum castra oppugnātūrum esse.
2. Sī haec fēmina factum malum videt, statim ad cōsulem nūntium mittit.
3. Servī quī templum novum aedificābunt magnās arborēs ē silvā in oppidum trahunt.
4. Illud cornū impetū hostium victum ad flūmen fūgit.
5. Puerīs vīsīs, trēs avēs ūram reliquērunt et in summam arborem properāvērunt.
6. Nūlla filia in cōnspectū mātris scelus facere audēbat.
7. Vidēmus ducem cornū signum proeliī dare.
8. Multī legiōnem suam dēseruērunt neque signa sua respexērunt.
9. Rēx comitibus fidīs praemia saepe dedit, sed sēnsit sē ab omnibus nōn probārī.
10. Postrīdiē audīvimus duōs exercitūs fortissimōs proelium facere (fēcisse, factūrōs esse).

42 B

1. Next in the sight of their commander they did everything with the greatest courage.
2. Those animals that are in the forests have long horns.
3. To work well is good; to work more quickly is not always better.
4. This wing of the enemy's army made a fierce attack upon our forces.
5. Nevertheless before first light you (pl.) deserted the camp near the river.
6. They believe that the marching column has not come across the longest boundary of that nation.
7. The next day the signal for (of) battle was given to the army by the leader with a horn.
8. The wife of the leading citizen indeed liked the plan less; her spouse liked it more.
9. Those who tried to drag the ship by means of the swift horse were not wise.
10. That queen's life was more famous than her death.

The Wrath of Achilles, Part 1

Diū Graecī Trōjam multā vī oppugnābant. Rēx Trōjānōrum erat Priamus. Per tōtum bellum Hector, ūnus ē fīlīs Priamī, Trōjam āriter et fortiter dēfendēbat et multōs Graecōs in agrō prō moenibus urbīs interficiēbat; in urbe vir bonus appellātus est quod patrem, mātrem, uxōrem, filiumque amābat et servāre temptābat.

Achillēs, ūnus ē ducibus Graecīs, longē fortior cēterīs erat. Ōlim tamen propter īram Graecōs dēserere cōstituit. Fēmina huic cāra, quae Briseīs appellābātur, ab Agamemnōne capta est. Itaque Achillēs īrātissimus bellum gerere nōn jam cupiēbat. Posteā Graecī proeliō ā cōpiīs Trōjānīs victī sunt. Hector cum exercitū suō Graecōs ad nāvēs eōrum ēgit. Nox fīnem proeliī fēcit, sed Hector ad urbēm nōn recessit. In agrō castrīs Graecīs propinquō castra sua posuit. Crēdidit postrīdiē Trōjānōs nāvēs Graecās occupātūrōs et igne dēlētūrōs esse. Bene scīvit hostēs sine nāvib⁹ nūllam fugam habitūrōs esse et certē victum īrī.

Ducēs Graecī perīculum summu⁹ recognōvērunt et causam ējus sciēbant: īram Achillis. Noctū maestī ab Agamemnōne auxilium petīvērunt: “Dī nōbīs adversī sunt. Sine animō vīribusque Achillis nōs omnēs aut capiēmur aut interficiēmur. Ad eum dōna nunc mitte et alia prōmitte. Prō tē ad eum libenter veniēmus; omnia dē dōnīs praemiīsque et omnia dē perīculō nostrō dīcēmus.” Agamemnōn omnia quae rogāvērunt sine gaudiō fēcit.

alter ego

domī – at home, home	vōs, vestrum / vestrī, vōbīs, vōs, vōbīs – you (pl.)
ego, meī, mihi, mē, mē – I, me	
nōs, nostrum/nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs – we, us	adversus, -a, -um (adj. + Dat.) – unfavorable, opposed
tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tē – you (s.)	maestus, -a, -um – sad, gloomy
vīs, vīs, f. – force, violence; (plur.) vīrēs , vīrium – strength, power	secundus, -a, -um (adj. + Dat.) – second, favorable

Personal Pronouns

Learn the forms of the personal pronouns for first and second persons.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	1 st PERSON		2 nd PERSON	
	SING	PLUR	SING	PLUR
NOM	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
GEN	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī
DAT	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
ACC	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
ABL	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

Remember that the demonstrative **is**, **ea**, **id** supplies the forms of the third person personal pronouns.

The nominative forms (**ego**, **tū**, **is**, etc.) are used only to show emphasis or to avoid ambiguity: **Ego tē vocō, I am calling you.**

The genitive forms of the first and second person pronouns are not used to express possession. For this purpose Latin uses the possessive adjectives **meus**, **tuus**, **noster**, and **vester**: *our book, liber noster*. (The genitive of the pronouns is used for other types of genitives.)

Personal Pronouns and *cum*

When the ablative of the first and second person pronouns is used with **cum**, the preposition is attached to the end of the pronoun: **mēcum**, **vōbīscum**.

The irregular noun *vīs*

Memorize the declension of the irregular noun **vīs**. Notice that in the singular it means *force* or *violence*, but in the plural *strength*.

vīs, f., *violence*; (pl.) *strength*

	SING	PLUR
NOM	vīs	vīrēs
GEN	vīs	vīriūm
DAT	vī	vīribus
ACC	vim	vīrēs
ABL	vī	vīribus



43 A

1. Māter mihi dīxit tē domī esse.
2. Frāter meus dīcit vīrēs suās esse mājōrēs meīs.
3. Cūr, Narcisse, tē amās dēsiderāsque?
4. Nōnne scīs tē esse illum puerum in aquā vīsum?
5. Numquamne ille sororibus adversus esse dēsistet?
6. Multa tēcta quae aquae propinqua fuērunt vī flūminis dēlēta sunt.
7. Fāmā propter scelus āmissā, vir maestissimus ex urbe excēdit.
8. Tibi pecūniā suām ostendēbat, sed rēgī, cūjus potestās est mājor, eam dabit.
9. Imperātor ad castra jam vēnit; ab eō urbem hostium capere jussī sumus.
10. Mēcum venīte, puellae sapientissimae, quod vōbīs praemia dare cupiō.
11. Ventīs secundīs, nōbīscum nāvigābant; ventīs adversīs, domī manēbant.
12. Quod ad oppidum magister vōs cum puerīs ambulāre jussit?

43 B

1. They praise me, but I do not praise myself.
2. He praises you, but you do not praise yourself.
3. She praises her but not herself.
4. They praise us much; we do not praise ourselves.
5. I will assemble with you (pl.), but you (pl.) will not assemble with me.
6. They praise them but they say nothing about themselves and their own strength.
7. After two years they decided to join their troops with us.
8. The consul by whom the army was led overcame the enemy with much violence.
9. Since the winds are unfavorable, the rather gloomy master leaves the ship behind.
10. Since the wind is favorable, we will not remain at home.

The Wrath of Achilles, Part 2: The Embassy

Nox erat, et Ulixēs, Phoenīx, et Ājāx ad tabernāculum (*tent*) Achillis pervēnerant. Achillēs eōs libenter accēperat. Ulixēs, “Multa dōna,” inquit, “ad tē Agamēnōn mīsit et plūra prōmīsit. Voluntātem bonam in tē ostendit. Briseidēm quoque ad tē mittet. Nunc īram tuam relinque. Hodiē, dum tū hīc sedēs, comitēs tuī interfectī sunt. Hector ignem in nāvēs paene conjēcit. Nōbīscum iterum pugnā. Hectorem vincēs et magnam fāmam semper tenēbis.”

Mēns Achillis tamen nōn mūtāta erat. “Rēgem mihi inimīcum illa dōna tenēre cupiō. Odium et īram nōn relinquam. Sciō multōs Graecōs, mē nōn pugnante, ā Trōjānīs interfectōs esse. Sciō quoque rēgem puellam meam ē castrīs meīs traxisse. Dum haec geruntur, vōs, ducēs fortēs, nihil fēcistis. Voluntātem bonam in mē tum nōn ostendistis. Neque mē neque fāmam meam dēfendistis. Sī fāmam āmittō, vīta mihi nōn jam cāra est. Cūr hoc vērum esse putō? Vōbīs haec dīcam.

“Ante bellum māter mea, dea Thetis, mihi dīixerat mē aut mortem in hōc bellō inventūrum aut sine fāmā cum patre domī mānsūrum esse. Ita ā dīs dictum erat. Nōn longam vītam, sed maximam fāmam cupiēns mortem dēlēgī. Nunc autem fāma mea āmissa est. Quid mihi in hōc longō et dūrō bellō relictum est? Propter quam causam manēbō et contrā vim Trōjānōrum pugnābō? Nōn uxor mea ā Paride, sed Briseīs amāta ā rēge nostrō capta est. Crēdō aliōs, nōn mē, imperāta hūjus rēgis optimī factūrōs esse. Crās ad fīnēs patris nāvigābō.”

Hīs audītīs, amīcī maestī ē tabernāculō excessērunt.

minima dē malīs

conjiciō, conjicere (3), **conjēcī, conjectus** –
throw, hurl

perveniō, pervenire (4), **pervēnī, peruentum** –
arrive at, reach (+ ad + acc.)

putō, putāre (1), **putāvī, putātus** – *think, consider*

regō, regere (3), **rēxī, rēctus** – *direct,
guide, rule*

imperātum, -ī, n. – *command, order
voluntās, voluntātis, f.* – *wish, desire, will;
will toward (+ in + acc.)*

The Pluperfect Tense

The pluperfect tense, in both English and Latin, denotes an action that has occurred before another action in the past, e.g., *You had arrived before I woke up.* Latin forms the pluperfect active by combining the stem of the third principal part with the imperfect of **sum**. The passive consists of the fourth principal part and the imperfect of **sum**. These rules apply for verbs of all conjugations, as well as irregular verbs. Below is the pluperfect active and passive indicative of all the model verbs, with sample translations for **amō**.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

amō

SING

1 st	amāveram , <i>I had loved</i>
2 nd	amāverās , <i>you had loved</i>
3 rd	amāverat , <i>he/she/it had loved</i>

PLUR

amāverāmus , <i>we had loved</i>
amāverātis , <i>you had loved</i>
amāverant , <i>they had loved</i>

moneō**dūcō****capiō****audiō**

1 st	monueram
2 nd	monuerās
3 rd	monuerat

dūxeram
dūxerās
dūxerat

SING

cēperam
cēperās
cēperat

audīveram
audīverās
audīverat

1 st	monuerāmus
2 nd	monuerātis
3 rd	monuerant

dūxerāmus
dūxerātis
dūxerant

PLUR

cēperāmus
cēperātis
cēperant

audīverāmus
audīverātis
audīverant

PASSIVE

SING

1 st	amātus eram , <i>I had been loved</i>
2 nd	amātus erās , <i>you had been loved</i>
3 rd	amātus erat , <i>he/she/it had been loved</i>

PLUR

amātī erāmus , <i>we had been loved</i>
amātī erātis , <i>you had been loved</i>
amātī erant , <i>they had been loved</i>

SING

1 st	monitus eram
2 nd	monitus erās
3 rd	monitus erat

captus eram
captus erās
captus erat

audītus eram
audītus erās
audītus erat

PLUR

1 st	monitī erāmus
2 nd	monitī erātis
3 rd	monitī erant

ductī erāmus
ductī erātis
ductī erant

captī erāmus
captī erātis
captī erant

**44 A**

1. Cīvēs ā quibus dēfēnsī erāmus posteā auxilium ā nōbīs petēbant.
2. Tum sēnsērunt rēgīnam in nōs bonam voluntātem ostendisse.
3. Ubi mīlitēs imperāta ducis fēcērunt, ad castra tēcum pērvēnērunt.
4. Hic vir, quī sapientior mē fuit, voluntātem suam bene rēxit.
5. Tēla ā cīvibus quī in mūrīs stābant omnibus vīribus conjecta erant, sed hostēs nōn fūgērunt.
6. Pater meus quidem putābat hominēs amōre, nōn sapientiā, regī.
7. Fēmina summā cum irā puellam malam ē templō traxerat et nunc eī multa dīcēbat.
8. Nauta cūjus nāvis trāns mare ventō ācta erat numquam iterum vīsus est.
9. Voluntās patris mātrisque puerōs regit; imperāta ducis mīlitēs regunt.
10. Puer ā mātre saepe monitus tamen per silvam sōlus ambulābat.

44 B

1. In peace they had always shown good will but in war they were opposed to this tribe.
2. We did not realize that the signal for (of) battle had been given with a horn.
3. When the wives had been warned by their husbands, they soon departed from their sight.
4. They made an attack upon the enemy by whose arrows many had been seriously wounded.
5. I think that the queen is ruling her citizens well (better, best).
6. Although the troops arrived at the city quickly, nevertheless their attack had already been reported to the inhabitants.
7. Do you know that your legion has reached the army's stronger wing?
8. At home you all had approved the consuls' plan willingly (more willingly, most willingly).
9. After the javelins had been hurled, an attack was made (perf.) by the soldiers with great force.
10. Who will make a journey with me to all the boundaries?

Hector and Achilles, Part 1

Postrīdiē Patroclus, amīcus Achillī cārissimus, arma clāra ējus in proeliō gerere in animō habuit. “Putō cōpiās hostium,” inquit, “armīs tuīs vīsīs, territās ad moenia Trōjae fugitūrās esse. Sine hōc auxiliō autem plūrimī nōbilēs Graecī ab Hectore certē occīdentur.”

Achillēs amīcō respondit, “Cōnsilium tuum probō; dē salūte tuā autem magnopere timeō. Tē ita moneō. Crēdō Hectorem etiam nunc ad nāvēs cum exercitū suō adīre. Is, armīs meīs vīsīs, putābit mē iterum pugnāre et tē omnibus vīribus suīs petet. Tē nec vulnerāri nec occīdī cupiō. In castrīs mēcum manē. Posteā proelium faciēmus et manibus meīs tē dēfendam.”

Patroclus tamen arma nōta postulāvit. Posteā, arma pulchra gerēns sine morā hostēs oppugnāre incipiēbat et multōs occīdit. Omnēs Trōjānī, scūtō Achillis recognītō, ad portās urbīs fugiēbant. Hector sōlus Patroclūm, quem vīribus superābat, exspectābat. Duās hastās cēpit et manū parātās tenēbat. Hector hastās fortiter jēcit et Patroclūm interfēcit.

Hōc nūntiātō, Achillēs īrātus erat, sed nunc Hectorem, nōn Agamemnōnem, occīdere cupiēbat. Nūlla autem arma habuit quod ea ab Hectore ā corpore Patroclī mortuī capta erant. Māter ējus, dea Thetis, ā Vulcānō arma nova petīvit. Hīs factīs, Thetis ad fīlium statim adiit. Achillēs arma mīra et pulcherrima libenter accēpit. Māter cum dōlōre abiit quod bene scīvit sē fīlium īfēlīcem numquam iterum vīsūram esse.



Constantine's Hand, Capitoline Museums, Rome (ca. 320 C.E.)

bis vīvit quī bene vīvit

abeō, abīre, abīī, abitum – go away, leave
adeō, adīre, adīī aditum – go to(ward)
 (+ ad + Accus. or + Accus. direct object)
eō, īre, īī⁴, itum – go
occidō, occidere (3), **occidī, occīsus** – kill,
 slay, slaughter
redeō, redīre, redīī, redditum – go back,
 return

trānseō, trānsīre, trānsīī, trānsitum – go
 across, cross (+ Accus. direct object)
manus, manūs, f. – hand; band (of people)
nōbilis, nōbile – noble, well-born; (noun) c.
 – a nobleman/woman; (pl.) the nobles

The Irregular Verb *eō, īre*

The Latin verb **eō, go**, is irregular, particularly in the present tense.

Notice that in the second person singular and plural of the perfect indicative and in the perfect infinitive the stem **i-** contracts with the endings: **i + istī = īstī**; **i + istis = īstis**; **i + isse = īsse**.

eō, īre, īī, itum, go

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
1 st	eō	ībam	ībō	īī	ieram
2 nd	īs	ībās	ībis	īstī	ierās
3 rd	it	ībat	ībit	iit	ierat
1 st	īmus	ībāmus	ībimus	iīmus	ierāmus
2 nd	ītis	ībātis	ībitis	īstis	ierātis
3 rd	eunt	ībant	ībunt	iērunt	ierant

IMPERATIVES: **ī, īte, go!**

INFINITIVES:	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT:	īre	(īrī)
FUTURE:	itūrus, -a, -um esse	
PERFECT:	īsse	

⁴ An alternate form, **īvī**, is also found but will not be used in *Ludus* nor considered a correct form on quizzes and tests.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

	SING		PLUR
	M / F	N	M / F
NOM	iēns	iēns	euntēs
GEN	euntis	euntis	euntium
DAT	euntī	euntī	euntibus
ACC	euntem	iēns	euntēs
ABL	eunte	eunte	euntibus

Compounds of *eō*

It is important to note that *eō* occurs very frequently in compound forms, such as **redeō**, *go back*; **abeō**, *go away*; **adeō**, *go to(ward)*; **trānseō**, *go across*.

Note that **trānseō**, takes an accusative direct object, and that **adeō** takes either an accusative direct object or **ad + accusative**. In *Ludus*, **adeō** is always used with **ad + accusative**.

Ablative of Respect

The ablative case without a preposition is used to state the respect in which something is considered true. This case construction is used in a fairly limited number of expressions in Latin, and usually involves a comparison.

Scientiā mē superat, *She surpasses me in (respect to) knowledge.*

Ille puer, Gaius nōmine, agricolās servāvit.

That boy, Gaius in name (or named Gaius), saved the farmers.

**45 A**

1. Nōn sine causā comes mea mē manum meam in flammās pōnere prohibuit.
2. Ille Rōmānus cēterōs animō superāvit.
3. Nunc barbarī in rēgnum suum redeunt.
4. Dīximus manum cīvium ex urbe exīsse et ad templum deae convenīsse.
5. Post septem annōs ad aliam terram pervēnērunt, quō in locō fēmina nōbilis eōs libenter accēpit.
6. Itaque in cōpiās flūmen trānseuntēs impetum fēcimus.
7. Scīsne agmen ā cōnsule in finēs barbarōrum dūcī?
8. Multīs mīlitibus ab hostibus jam occīsīs, celeriter in silvās abīstis et ibi per noctem manēbātis.
9. Nūntium mitte, amīce, ad puerōs quibuscum magister ad summum collem iit.
10. Dum māter filiīque per viam sacram eunt, illa eīs multa de patre suō nōbilī dīxit.

45 B

1. Go, friend, to that hill where they are standing.
2. While they were going out of the town, their companion, named Marcus, walked into the water.
3. You (s.) will easily return to the temple because you know the route.
4. The entire army was trying to drive the rather fierce frog away from the camp.
5. The mother knew that formerly her son's hands had been smaller than hers.
6. Have they killed the man (who was) going across the boundary?
7. Indeed the messenger said that the band of girls would remain in the middle of the field.
8. When you (pl.) had seen that the enemy was pitching camp near the river, you went into the town near the forest.
9. After the gates have been opened, lead the horses through the city.
10. You (pl.) did not believe that you surpassed me in strength.

Ludus 46

*Fifth declension
Accusative of duration of time
Ablative of time when
Ablative of time within which*

Hector and Achilles, Part 2

Postridiē Achillēs arma nova gerēns ē castrīs properāvit. Hōc vīsō exercitus Trōjānus territus est et ā portū et nāvibus Graecōrum statim recēdēbat. Paucās hōrās Achillēs cum Trōjānīs pugnāvit, sed Hectorem interficere dēsiderābat. Multīs occīsīs, Achillēs sē prō urbe cōnstituit et Hectorem oculīs petīvit. Ubi eum vīdit, magnō furōre ad eum adiit. Hastam jam parātam manū tenēbat.

Cēterīs Trōjānīs per portās fugientibus, Hector prō moenibus stetit. Priamus hanc rem ē summō mūrō vīdit et Hectorem miserrimē ḍrāvit. “Quid agis, mī filī? Contrā hunc virum ācerrimū pugnāre nōn dēbēs. Ille multōs ex filiīs meīs jam interfēcit, brevīque tempore tē quoque occīdet. Quis, tē mortuō, mē teget? Quis Trōjam dēfendet? Sine tē Graecōs numquam vincēmus. Nunc in urbem redī! Aliō diē cum Achille pugnā!”

Hector tamen Achillem exspectāre cōnstituit. Ubi autem virum magnum et fortē arma nova et pulchra gerentem vīdit, territus est et ad mūrōs recessit. Achillēs in eum omnibus vīribus suīs impetum fēcit. Hector fūgit sed post eum Achillēs celerrimē vēnit. Ter (*three times*) duo mīlitēs circum moenia Trōjae iērunt; ter Graecus in Trōjānum impetum fēcit; ter Trōjānus ab eō fūgit.

Dea Minerva autem cōnsilium cēperat. Vestēs (*clothes*) et fōrmam (*appearance*) mūtāvit et ante oculōs Trōjānī sē ostendit. Nōn jam Minerva sed frāter Hectoris, Dēiphobus nōmine, esse vidēbātur. Statim Hector, “Dēiphobe,” inquit, “tē libenter videō quod sōlus, perīculō meō vīsō, ā moenibus vēnistī; cēterī in urbe territī manent.”

carpe diem

tegō, tegere (3), tēxī, tēctus – <i>cover, protect</i>	rēs, reī, f. – <i>thing, matter, affair, deed</i>
diēs, diēī m. – <i>day, daytime, period</i>	tempus, temporis , n. – <i>time</i>
portus, portūs , m. – <i>harbor, port</i>	brevis, breve – <i>short, brief</i>

Fifth Declension Nouns

The last declension of nouns in Latin is the fifth, which consists of feminine nouns. (One important exception is **diēs**.) Below are two model nouns, followed by the fifth declension endings.

rēs, f., *thing, matter*

	SING	PLUR
NOM	rēs	rēs
GEN	reī	rērum
DAT	reī	rēbus
ACC	rem	rēs
ABL	rē	rēbus

diēs⁵, m., *day*

	SING	PLUR
	diēs	diēs
	diēī	diērum
	diēī	diēbus
	diem	diēs
	diē	diēbus

FIFTH DECLENSION - ENDINGS

	SING	PLUR
NOM	-ēs	-ēs
GEN	-eī	-ērum
DAT	-eī	-ēbus
ACC	-em	-ēs
ABL	-ē	-ēbus

Accusative of Duration of Time

Latin has three basic expressions of time. The accusative case without a preposition expresses duration of time, i.e., how long an action or state lasts. English sometimes uses the preposition *for* to express duration; sometimes it uses no preposition. For example:

Quinque hōrās domī mānsit. *He stayed at home (for) five hours.*

Tōtum annum labōrābimus. *We will work (for) the entire year.*

Ablative of Time When and Within Which

Latin uses the ablative case without a preposition to express the time when or time within which an action occurs. English normally uses the prepositions *in*, *on*, and *at* for time when, e.g., *on the fourth day*, *at dawn*. English uses the prepositions *within* and *in* for time within which, e.g., *within two years*.

Hōc annō ad mare pēvēnimus.

This year we reached the sea.

⁵ The noun **diēs** is normally a) masculine when it refers to *day* as a period of time, such as *five days*; b) feminine when it refers to a deadline, i.e., a date by which something must be done, such as the payment of a debt. In *Ludus*, **diēs** will always be used in the first sense and so always appear as a masculine noun.

Duābus hōrīs librum āmissum invēnisti.

Within two hours you found the book that had been lost.

In general, the context will tell you whether you have an ablative of time when or of time within which.

N.B.: All three case uses expressing time take no preposition and involve nouns of time—**diēs**, **hōra**, etc. These features will help you to distinguish these constructions from other ablative uses, such as the ablatives of personal agent (**ā/ab** + person nouns) and of means (object nouns).



Besides two new words in this lesson, **diēs** and **tempus**, you have learned at least five nouns so far that refer to time. List them.

You have also learned twenty adverbs, three conjunctions, four prepositions, and three adjectives that can refer to time or frequency. Can you list them?

Decline together: a) **magna rēs** b) **ille diēs** c) **rēs ācris** d) **quī diēs?**

46 A

1. Classis ē cōspectū portūs quīnque diēs āfuit.
2. Secundā hōrā rēgīna hoc cornū trāns lātissimum flūmen mīserat.
3. Paucōs diēs imperātor neque proelium facere neque ex agrīs hostium exīre audēbat.
4. Frāter et ego in tēcta propter ventum rediimus.
5. Hōrā cōnstitūta signa legiōnum ad locum sacrum portata sunt.
6. Brevī tempore impetus exercitūs barbarōrum mē terruit, sed pugnāre nōn dēstītī.
7. Ubi māter animal ācre vīdit, fīliam corpore suō tegere temptāvit.
8. Nōnne scīvistī illās rēs gravēs illō diē gestās esse?
9. Mihi dīxit fīliōs cīvium multōs annōs ā rēge malō occīsōs esse.
10. Cōpiīs hostium victīs legiōnēs nostrae ab itinere nōn jam prohibēbantur.

46 B

1. For many days the army of the queen remained in the middle of the field.
2. In a few days the troops of the enemy will reach the top of the mountain.
3. The master sailed into the harbor but never went into the city of Rome.
4. This affair is serious; reveal it to everyone.
5. Within a short time we had made many attacks upon the enemy.
6. Protected by her companions, she feared no violence.
7. The road, which many call difficult, is nevertheless rather wide.
8. At that time the Roman soldier covered himself entirely (**tōtus**) with his shield.
9. On the second day the girls sat on a hill near the harbor and watched the ships for three hours.
10. On account of these circumstances you think that that tribe ought to abandon its territory.

Hector and Achilles, Part 3

Hector Achillem petere voluit quod credēbat Dēiphobum auxilium ad sē ferre. Diū cum eō pugnāvit hastāsque jēcit, sed Achillem nec interfēcit nec vulnerāvit. Sine hastīs relictus Dēiphobum vocāvit, sed ille nōn respondit. Minerva jam Trōjānum dēseruerat. Hector nunc rem vēram recognōvit: cōnsilium deae vīdit et mortem suam esse propinquam sēnsit.

Achillī magnā vōce ita dīxit: “Vītam meam tibi, Graece, sine fāmā dare nōlō.” Deinde gladiō Achillem petīvit. Achillēs tēlum suum fortiter conjēcit. Hector scūtō suō sē tegere temptāvit, sed hastā graviter vulnerātus est. Ē vītā excēdēns Achillī haec dīxit: “Quamquam hostēs multōs annōs fuimus, nuntium dē morte meā ad patrem meum dēfer; postea corpus meum ad urbem mitte. Pater meus tibi aurum et alia dōna dabit.”

Achillēs respondit, “Nihil ā mē Pete, tū quī amīcum meum cārissimum occīdistī.”

“Haec quoque, Graece īfēlīx,” inquit Hector, “dīcam. Putō mortem tē quoque brevī tempore captūram esse. Celer es, sed mors celerior.” Tum oculōs suōs clausit. Omnēs Trōjānī magnō cum dōlōre virum mortuum ē summō mūrō spectāvērunt. Crēdidērunt urbem suam, Hectore mortuō, jam captam et dēlētam esse.

Achillēs autem īram suam nōn relīquerat. Hectorem etiam mortuum vulnerāre cupiēbat. Corpus ējus equīs prō urbe cotidiē trahēbat et in agrō multās horās exposuit quod avēs id dēlēre voluit. Hector tamen nōnnūllīs dīs grātus fuerat; hī corpus ējus dēfendērunt quod id vulnerārī noluērunt.

in mediās rēs

dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus – bring down, report (+ ad + Accus.)	volō, velle, voluī – be willing, wish
expōnō, expōnere (3), exposuī, expositus – arrange, set out, explain; disembark	memoria, -ae, f. – memory, mind; memoriā
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus – carry, bring, bear, endure	tenēre – remember (lit., hold in/by memory) (+ ind. stat.)
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī – be unwilling, not want/wish	nōnnūllī, -ae, -a – some, several

Ferō, Volō, Nōlō

You have already learned two irregular verbs, **sum** and **eō**. In this lesson you will learn three others: **ferō**, *bear, carry*; **volō**, *wish, be willing*; and **nōlō**, *be unwilling*. These three have some irregular forms in the present indicative, present infinitives, and present imperative, but otherwise they are conjugated as regular verbs of the third conjugation.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry

ACTIVE			PASSIVE			
	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
1 st	ferō	ferēbam	feram	feror	ferēbar	ferar
2 nd	fers	ferēbās	ferēs	ferris	ferēbāris	ferēris
3 rd	fert	ferēbat	feret	fertur	ferēbātur	ferētur
1 st	ferimus	ferēbāmus	ferēmus	ferimur	ferēbāmur	ferēmur
2 nd	fertis	ferēbātis	ferētis	feriminī	ferēbāminī	ferēminī
3 rd	ferunt	ferēbant	ferent	feruntur	ferēbantur	ferentur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE		
	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
1 st	tulī	tuleram	lātus sum	lātus eram
2 nd	tulistī	tulerās	lātus es	lātus erās
3 rd	tulit	tulerat	lātus est	lātus erat
1 st	tulimus	tulerāmus	lātī sumus	lātī erāmus
2 nd	tulistis	tulerātis	lātī estis	lātī erātis
3 rd	tulērunt	tulerant	lātī sunt	lātī erant

PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE: **ferrī** IMPERATIVE: **fer, ferte**



Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome

LESSON 47

volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
1 st	volō	volēbam	volam	voluī	volueram
2 nd	vīs	volēbās	volēs	voluistī	voluerās
3 rd	vult	volēbat	volet	voluit	voluerat
1 st	volumus	volēbāmus	volēmus	voluimus	voluerāmus
2 nd	vultis	volēbātis	volētis	voluistis	voluerātis
3 rd	volunt	volēbant	volent	voluērunt	voluerant

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
1 st	nōlō	nōlēbam	nōlam	nōluī	nōlueram
2 nd	nōn vīs	nōlēbās	nōlēs	nōluistī	nōluerās
3 rd	nōn vult	nōlēbat	nōlet	nōluit	nōluerat
1 st	nōlumus	nōlēbāmus	nōlēmus	nōluimus	nōluerāmus
2 nd	nōn vultis	nōlēbātis	nōlētis	nōluistis	nōluerātis
3 rd	nōlunt	nōlēbant	nōlent	nōluērunt	nōluerant

IMPERATIVE: **nōlī, nōlīte**

**47 A**

1. Hoc diē omnēs agricolae frumentum ex agrīs tulērunt.
2. Multōs diēs exercitus ad mare iter faciēbat.
3. Putāmus puerōs trāns flūmen ferrī nōlle.
4. Nūntius fāmam dē proeliō ad nōbilēs dēferēns īram eōrum magnopere timuit.
5. Omnia arma in castra ā mīlitibus ferentur.
6. Crēdidistī eās paucīs hōrīs ibi tēcum futūrās esse.
7. Vīsne barbarōs captōs ad ducem dēferre?
8. Nōnne puella eum locum clārum vidēre vult?
9. Scelera consulis malī semper memoriā tenēbimus.
10. Ubi ad portum pervēnimus, cōpiās hostium in summō colle expositās vīdimus.

47 B

1. But we are unwilling to send our army across the mountain.
2. They said that on that day the badges and the gold were being carried in (by) a ship.
3. Why is the consul willing to receive money from evil men.
4. Some think that the gold has been carried out of the city.
5. He now says that he was unwilling to defend even these brave and loyal women.
6. The commander, who had heard that the enemy was approaching, wished to make an attack on them.
7. He had not reported (**dēferō**) the legion's situation (**rēs**) to the allies.
8. That temple ought always to be defended by the citizens.
9. You realized that I would remain at home for several days.
10. In the second year, the tribe, by whom we had often been defeated, suddenly withdrew (**recēdō**) into its own territory.

Ludus 48

mīle, mīlia
Partitive genitive
Accusative of extent of space
īdem; quīdam

The Trojan Horse

Graecī mīlle nāvibus ad fīnēs Trōjānōrum pervēnerant et decem annōs urbem eōrum oppugnāverant, sed urbs nōn capta erat. Diē quōdam Paris, quī nōn fuit mīles fortis, ē summō mūrō proelium spectābat. Subitō deus Apollo sē ostendit. “Diū nātūra tua amōrī dulcī data est; nunc virum fortissimum occīdere dēbēs. Achillemne in mediīs ducibus Graecīs āriter pugnantem vidēs? Únam ē sagittīs tuīs cape. Eandem hanc ego regam, et Achillem multā vī certē vulnerābimus.”

Sine morā Paris sagittam mīsit quae auxiliō deī pedem Achillis vulnerāvit. Achillēs magnum dolōrem accēpit et sēnsit omnēs vīrēs suās abīre. Brevī tempore ē vītā excessit.

Ulixēs putāvit Graecōs Achille mortuō Trōjānōs numquam armīs sōlīs victūrōs esse. Propter haec cōnsilium novum et mīrum cēpit. Exercitum equum magnum aedificāre jussit. In eōdem equō multōs mīlitēs pōnere in animō habuit. “Eō in lītore relictō,” inquit, “noctū ad īnsulam propinquam pauca mīlia passuum nāvigābimus. Māne hostēs putābunt nōs bellum relīquisse et ad Graeciam redīsse. Equum cum mīlitibus in urbem trahent. Reditum (*return*) nostrum nōn exspectābunt, sed noctū redibimus et Trōjam occupābimus. Tum cognōscent nōs vīribus nōn sōlum corporum sed etiam mentium nostrārum sē superāre.” Graecī sapientiam ējus laudāvērunt et equum facere incipiēbant.

Hīs omnibus rēbus gestīs, Graecī nocte cōnstitūtā nāvēs parāvērunt et ad īnsulam abiērunt. Postrīdiē Trōjānī magnō gaudiō vīdērunt tōtum lītus ab hostibus dēsertum esse.

nātūram expellēs furcā tamen usque recurret

cognōscō, cognōscere (3), **cognōvī, cognitus**
– learn, come to know; (perf.) know

īdem, eadem, idem (pron. & adj.) – the same
nātūra, -ae, f. – nature, character, condition
passus, passūs, m. – pace, step
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam) (pron. & adj.) – a certain, a particular

dulcis, dulce – sweet, pleasant

mīlle (indecl. adj.) – thousand, 1000;
(+ **passūs**) one mile;
mīlia, mīlīum (noun), n. pl. – thousands;
(+ **passuum**) miles

mīlle, mīlia

Below is the declension of **mīlle**, one thousand:

	SING	PLUR
	mīlle , one thousand (indecl. adj.)	mīlia , thousands, n. (noun)
NOM	mīlle	mīlia
GEN	mīlle	mīlīum
DAT	mīlle	mīlibus
ACC	mīlle	mīlia
ABL	mīlle	mīlibus

Mīlle in the singular is an indeclinable adjective: **mīlle sagittae**, one thousand arrows; **mīlle avium**, of one thousand birds; and so on. In the plural, however, it is a neuter noun and can take a partitive genitive (see below), e.g., **duo mīlia**, two thousands; **tria mīlia mīlitum**, 3,000 soldiers (literally, three thousands of soldiers).

Mīlle appears frequently in some texts together with the noun **passus** as an expression of distance. *One thousand paces*, **mīlle passūs**, is one Roman mile. We translate this phrase as *one mile*. *Two miles*, though, in Latin is **duo mīlia passuum** (literally *two thousands of paces*); *ten miles* is **decem mīlia passuum**.

Partitive Genitive

An expression such as **duo mīlia passuum** involves the partitive genitive. This sort of genitive does not express possession; it expresses the whole out of which some portion is taken. For example, we say in English *more grain*, but Latin says **plūs frūmentū**, literally *more of grain*. This phrase does not mean that *more* is something which belongs to *grain*, as in, for example, **pecūnia pueri**, *the money of the boy, the boy's money*, where *money* belongs to *the boy*. *More* is a part or portion of a whole group or class, namely *grain*. Similarly, in **duo mīlia passuum**, *two thousands* are not the possession of *paces*, but *paces* are the whole out of which one is selecting *two thousand*. An equivalent English expression is *two cups of sugar*, or *twenty barrels of crude oil*, where *of* does not show possession.

Another common use of the partitive genitive in Latin is with superlatives, e.g., **sapientissima omnium mātrum**, *the wisest of all mothers*.

Accusative of Extent of Space

Just as the accusative case without preposition is used to express duration of time, the accusative case without preposition is used to express extent of space, i.e., the distance over which an action or activity occurs or a state exists. In such expressions in English, we use either the preposition *for*, or no preposition at all.

Decem pedēs ambulāmus. *We walk (for) ten feet.*

Exercitus tria mīlia passuum iter fēcit. *The army marched (for) three miles.*

Idem and *quīdam*

The indefinite pronouns **idem**, *the same*, and **quīdam**, *certain, a certain*, are formed by adding special suffixes to pronouns you already know. As you can see in the paradigms below, **idem** is a combination of the pronoun **is**, **ea**, **id** with the suffix **-dem**, and **quīdam** is a combination of the relative pronoun **quī**, **quae**, **quod** with the suffix **-dam**. These suffixes never change their form.

Notice that, for both **quīdam** and **idem**, in the accusative singular masculine and feminine, and in the genitive plural of all genders, the **-m** at the end of the pronoun becomes an **-n-** when it collides with **-dem** or **-dam**.

Notice also that, for **idem**, the masculine nominative singular and the neuter nominative and accusative singular also involve sound changes: **is + dem = idem; id + dem = idem**.

Idem, eadem, idem, the same

SING

	M	F	N
NOM	idem	eadem	idem
GEN	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem
DAT	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACC	eundem	eandem	idem
ABL	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLUR

NOM	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
GEN	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
ACC	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, certain, a certain

SING

	M	F	N
NOM	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)*
GEN	cūjusdam	cūjusdam	cūjusdam
DAT	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)*
ABL	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLUR

NOM	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

*When the neuter nominative or accusative singular is used as an adjective, the form is **quoddam** instead of **quiddam**.

Each of these pronouns can also function as an adjective (cf. **hic**, **ille**, etc.).

Quaedam fēmina mē vocat.
Quendam in urbe vīdī.

*A certain woman is calling me.
I saw a certain one/man in the city.*

Eandem legiōnem flūmen transīre jussī. *I ordered the same legion to cross the river.*
Eidem lēgēs novās fēcērunt. *The same men made the new laws.*



- Decline:
- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| a) the same nature | c) a certain sea |
| b) the same badge | d) a certain sweet step |

48 A

1. Fēmina quaedam cum eōdem virō ē templō exiit.
2. Illō diē mīlitēs nostrī in castrīs hostium mīlle sagittās sed nihil frūmentī invēnērunt.
3. Hostēs celeriter ad flūmen quīnque mīlia passuum iter faciunt.
4. Quaedam fēminaē nātūram dulcem hūjus aquae nōn cognōverant.
5. Duae classēs vī ventōrum in eundem portum dēlātae ibi manēre nōlunt.
6. Ducēs barbarī cum duōbus mīlibus mīlitum flūmen trānsierant.
7. Puerī ējusdem patris et mātris saepe eandem nātūram nōn habent.
8. Posteā rēgīna cognōvit cōpiās hostium et agmen suum eōdem tempore ad oppidum vēnisse.
9. Cognōvistis cīvēs quōsdam, pessimōs omnium, arma in urbem tulisse.
10. Mīlitēs omnibus vīribus suīs portās urbis hostium frangere temptābant.

48 B

1. It is easy to walk a mile; it is more difficult to walk nine miles.
2. He is being carried for many paces by the force of the river.
3. Is it not pleasant to have greater strength than your (personal) enemies?
4. We all do not have the same character.
5. A certain leader was unwilling to make an attack. Do you wish to see him?
6. The same soldiers remembered the place near the hill.
7. You have revealed a few things about certain gods who saved Rome.
8. We had learned that the same woman was the wisest of the Romans.
9. Everyone thinks that we stayed many hours and learned much in the home of that teacher.
10. He arrived by (means of a) ship at the same harbor; then he disembarked his men onto the land; that night they carried the fresh (sweet) water to the same ship.

The Horse, Sinon, and Laocoön

Maximum gaudium inter Trōjānōs cooriēbātur. Crēdiderunt sē fēlīcēs esse et hostēs fīnēs suōs relīquisse. Portīs apertīs rēx mīlitēsque profectī sunt; deinde multī cīvēs eōs secūtī ex urbe exībant. Equum quoque circumveniēbant et ita rogābant: “Cūr magnus equus ad caelum ā Graecīs sublātus est?” Paucās hōrās in locīs vagātī sunt ubi Graecī castra posuerant.

Eōdem tempore Graecum quendam, quī Sinōn appellātus est, invēnērunt; Trōjānī eum statim circumvēnērunt et ad rēgem Priānum traxērunt. Hic eīs fābulam nōn vēram narrāvit. Dīxit sē Graecum esse sed ā comitibus propter voluntātem malam Ulixis relictum esse.

Trōjānī nātūram vēram hūjus hominis nōn scīvērunt, et cōnsilium Ulixis eīs ignōtum erat. Propter odium satis erat nōmen Ulixis audīre. “Sī inimīcus Ulixis es,” inquit Priāmus, “amīcus populī Trōjānī es.” Deinde Sinōn, “Equus maximus,” inquit, “factus est quod Graecī eum per moenia urbī ferrī nōlunt. Equō in urbem lātō, Minerva, cui hoc dōnum sacrum ā Graecīs datum est, vōs, nōn Graecōs, dēfendet.” Priāmus, “Hoc igitur,” inquit, “facere cōnārī dēbēmus! Equum in urbem trahite!”

Quīdam sacerdōs (*priest*), Lāocoōn nōmine, ē moenibus in lītus contendit. Trōjānōs monēre cōnātus est. “Nātūram omnium Graecōrum bene cognōvī. Eōs timeō etiam dōna ferentēs.”



Laocoōn and his Sons, Vatican Museums
(1st century B.C.E?)

Tēlum in equum conjēcit. Subitō duo serpentēs ē marī vēnērunt et eundem sacerdōtem et duōs filiōs ējus necāvērunt. Deinde in templum Minervae ē cōspectū abiērunt. Multī clāmāvērunt: “Dea Lāocoōntem propter scelus necāvit. Equum in urbem ferte!” Dum virī equum per moenia trahunt, cēterī cīvēs, etiam puerī puellaeque, libenter adfuērunt et hanc rem probāvērunt. Ille diēs eīs dulcissimus vīsus est.

nōn sequitur

circumveniō (4), circumvenīre , circumvēnī , circumventus – surround; (+ accus. d.o.)	proficīscor (3), proficīscī , profectus sum – <i>set out, start out</i>
cōnor (1), cōnārī , cōnātus sum – try, attempt (+ infin.)	sequor (3), sequī , secūtus sum – follow
contendō (3), contendere , contendī , contentus – struggle (+ cum + Abl.); hasten (sometimes + infin.)	tollō (3), tollere , sustulī , sublātus – raise; raze, destroy
coorior (4), coorīrī , coortus sum – arise, rise	vagor (1), vagārī , vagātus sum – wander, roam
exeō , exīre , exīī , exitum – go out, leave	ignōtus , -a, -um (adj. + Dat.) – unknown, ignoble

Deponent Verbs

Some verbs in Latin use passive forms but have active meanings. These are called “deponent verbs” and are recognizable by their principal parts. Their forms are all regular passive forms of the four conjugations you have learned; they are only irregular in having active meanings.

Here is a first conjugation deponent verb: **cōnor**, **cōnārī**, **cōnātus sum**, *try, attempt*. The first form is the first person singular present passive indicative, *I try*. The second is the present passive infinitive, *to try*. The third is the first person singular perfect passive indicative, *I have tried*. With this verb, as with regular verbs, the first two principal parts tell you to which conjugation the verb belongs. The third conjugation deponent verb **sequor**, *follow*, has as its second principal part the normal present PASSIVE infinitive for a third conjugation verb, **sequī**, *to follow*.

Study the five deponent verbs in the vocabulary carefully.

Participles and Infinitives of Deponents

As you can see from the box on the following page, deponent verbs have all four participles that you have learned for regular verbs, including the present active.

The perfect passive PARTICIPLE has an active meaning, as does the present passive INFINITIVE. The other participles and infinitives have their usual active or passive meanings.

	Active	Passive
Present	cōnāns, cōnantis <i>trying</i>	XX
Future	cōnātūrus, a, um <i>about to try, going to try</i>	cōnandus, a, um <i>must be tried</i>
Perfect	XX	cōnātus, a, um <i><u>having tried</u></i>

Deponent verbs have only three infinitives. The present and perfect passive infinitives have active meanings.

	Active	Passive
Present	XX	cōnārī <i><u>to try</u></i>
Future	cōnātūrus, a, um esse <i>will try</i>	XX
Perfect	XX	cōnātus, a, um esse <i><u>to have tried</u></i>



49 A

1. Ille vir multōs aliōs vīribus superat.
2. Ubi equum aedificāvērunt, magnum numerum mīlitum in eum posuērunt; deinde prō moenibus hostium eundem constituērunt.
3. Rōmāna quaedam, genere ignōta, territa ex hōc proeliō fugere contendēbat.
4. Sēnsistīne puerum omnibus cum amīcīs suīs tē sequī?
5. Postquam bellum coortum est, populum nostrum dēfendere cōnābāmur.
6. Eōdem diē mīlītēs hoc tōtum oppidum, pulcherimum omnium, igne sustulērunt.
7. Hī agricolae miserī ab animālibus magnīs fugientēs per silvam perīculōsam vagābantur.
8. Puella equō in viā jacentī appropinquāre vult.
9. Dux graviter vulnerātus scūtum suum contrā hostēs sustulit, sed mox occīsus est.
10. Sōle coortō agmen profectum est, sed in itinere ab hostibus circumventum est.

OPTIONAL

11. Aliī locum castrīs idōneum invenīre volunt.

49 B

1. With great joy they follow the goddess who is going out of the city.
2. For many years he was king in name alone, not in power.
3. He raised toward the sky the sacred fire that had been saved by the women.
4. When a suitable wind had arisen, they hastened to the shore and set out to the island.
5. On the same day this wing had made an attack upon our soldiers wandering far from the camp.
6. After the insignia had been found, I gave them to the commander.
7. Soon we will hear the decision of that judge.
8. Look back. The frogs and even smaller animals are following you.
9. Afterward she learned that the same bird had been seen by the young woman.
10. Having followed the legions for many miles, we thought that we would capture them in a short time.

Ludus 50

Ipse (intensive pronoun & adj.)
Gerund (gen. + *causā*, *ad* + acc.)
Future active participle + *sum*

The Sack of Troy, Part 1

Difficillimum erat altissimum equum in urbem ferre; moenia frēgērunt et magnō cum labōre rem effēcērunt. Illā nocte omnēs Trōjānī somnō victī in tēctīs suīs jacēbant. Sinōn portam equī aperīre contendit; nēmō eum hoc facientem vīdit. Mīlitēs ex animālī ērūpērunt. Omnēs ad pugnandum parātī erant. Per viās proficīscēbantur et brevī tempore multī Trōjānī aut captī aut interfectī sunt. Multīs in locīs flammae coortae sunt. Illae erant lūx sōla quod lūna ab caelō aberat.

Trōjānī quīdam arma cēpērunt; in viīs parvās manūs Graecōrum superāre cōnātūrī erant. Breve tempus nōnnūllōs Graecōs vīcērunt, sed mox ab aliīs Graecīs circumventī et occīsī sunt. Undique mors fugientēs sequēbātur. Paucī etiam sē ē summīs tēctīs in ignem jēcērunt quod ab hostibus capī nōluērunt.

Fīlius Achillis, Neoptolemus nōmine, quī ad bellum post mortem patris vocātus erat, manum mājōrem ad rēgiam Priamī dūxit et āriter portās oppugnāvit. In interiōrem locum Priamus ipse uxorque Hecuba sē recēperant. Rēx pugnandī cupidus erat et arma sua captūrus erat, sed Hecuba id prohibuit. “Hīc ad āram sacram mēcum stā. Hīc erit salūs certa quod dī nōs dēfendent.” Subitō fīlius Priamī jam vulnerātus in eundem locum contendit. Neoptolemus nōn longē post eum secūtus est. Īdem nunc ad āram ipsam juvenem, quī in sanguine suō jacēbat, hastā interfēcit. Deinde, furōre captus, corpus juvenis sustulit et ad patrem jēcit.

moritūrī tē salūtāmus

efficiō, efficere (3), **effēcī, effectus** –

accomplish, bring about

ērumpō, ērumpere (3), **ērūpī, ēruptus** –

burst out, break out

rapiō, rapere (3), **rapuī, raptus** – *snatch, grab, seize*

recipiō, recipere (3), **recēpī, receptus** – *take back, accept, rescue; sē recipere* – *to retreat*

labor, labōris, m. – *labor, effort, toil*

nēmō, nēminī (Dat.), **nēminem** (Accus.), c. –

*no one, nobody***

cupidus, -a, -um (adj. + Gen.) – *desirous*

interior, interius (compar. adj.) – *inner, private*

ipse, -a, -um (adj. & pron.) – *him/her/itself, themselves; the very*

The gen. and abl. forms of **nēmō are provided by gen. and abl. forms of **nūllus**; you will learn the gen. sing. of **nūllus** later.

The Intensive Pronoun & Adjective *Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum*

In English *himself, herself, ourselves*, etc. are used as intensive adjectives. For example, in the sentence *They themselves prepared the meal*, *They* is the subject, while *themselves* is an adjective modifying the subject and stressing its role in the clause. In Latin, **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** serves as the intensive adjective.

Puellae ipsae equōs in agrum dūcunt. *The girls themselves lead the horses into the field.*
Legiōnem ipsam laudāvimus. *We praised the legion itself.*

While **ipse** usually functions as an adjective, it can also serve as a pronoun, as in the sentences below.

Nāvēs āmissae sunt; ipsōs servāvimus. *The ships were lost; we saved the men themselves.*
Ipsī legiōnem laudātis. *You yourselves praise the legion.*

In English it is important to distinguish this use of *myself, yourself, herself*, etc. from the use of these same words as reflexive pronouns. English uses the same words for both intensive and reflexive pronouns, while Latin uses different words.

Intensive Pronoun: **Ipsa puerum laudāvit.** *She herself praised the boy.*

Reflexive pronoun: **Puella sē laudāvit.** *The girl praised herself.*

Notice that removing the reflexive pronoun changes the meaning of the sentence radically (*The girl praised.*), but removing the intensive adjective does not change the essential meaning of the sentence (*She praised the boy.*).

Below is the complete declension of **ipse**.

ipse, -self (intensive pronoun/adjective)

	SING			PLUR		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs



Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome

The Gerund

The gerund is a verbal noun, which means that it has the properties of both a verb and a noun. In English, the gerund ends in *-ing*, e.g., *running*, *telling*, *saving*, and appears in such expressions as *You dedicate yourself to running*, and *We improved by practicing that movement*. In the first example, *running* is a verbal noun that functions as the indirect object of the verb *dedicate*. In the second, *practicing* is a verbal noun that works as a prepositional object modifying the main verb. (We would expect the second expression to be an ablative of means in Latin, and we would be correct.)

The gerund in Latin consists of four forms in the singular. These forms are considered to be neuter nouns of the second declension. They are formed in the same way as the future passive participle with the suffix **-nd-**, e.g., **ama-nd-ī**, **capi-nd-ō**. Below are the models for each conjugation.

GERUND

	amō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō	eō⁶
GEN	amandī, <i>of loving</i>	monendī	dūcendī	capiendī	audiendī	eundi
DAT	amandō, <i>to/for loving</i>	monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō	eundo
ACC	amandum, <i>loving</i>	monendum	dūcendum	capiendum	audiendum	eundum
ABL	amandō, <i>by loving</i>	monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō	eundo

The gerund can be used in any of the ways a regular noun can. For example: **audiendō multa bona cognōvimus**, *by (the action of) listening, we learned many good things*.

Gerund Expressing Purpose

One common use of the gerund is to express purpose. There are two ways in which to do this:

- 1) the genitive case of the gerund with the noun **causa** in the ablative case; in this expression **causā** always follows the gerund; and
- 2) the accusative case of the gerund with the preposition **ad**.

dīcendī causā, *for the sake of speaking* OR **ad dīcendum**, *for the purpose of speaking*

Arma pugnandī causā ferēmus. *We will bring weapons for the sake of fighting.*

OR

Arma ad pugnandum ferēmus. *We will bring weapons for the purpose of fighting.*

The Future Active Participle with **sum**

You have already learned how to form the future active participle by adding the suffix **-tūrus**, **a**, **um** to the stem of the fourth principal part. When this participle is used with a finite form of **sum**, it creates a compound verb that is the equivalent of such English expressions as

⁶ The gerund of **eō**, **īre** is usually seen only in compounds, e.g. **transeundi**.

LESSON 50

they are going to leave, we were about to speak. (The technical term for this Latin expression is the Active Periphrastic.)

Exercitum hostium secūtūrī sunt. *They are about to follow the army of the enemy.*

Mātrī respōnsūrī erāmus. *We were going to respond to our mother.*



50 A

1. Quīdam mīlitēs cupidī pugnandī ē castrīs contendērunt.
2. Nūntius imperātōrī ipsī dīxit hostēs paucīs hōrīs ad castra nostra perventūrōs esse.
3. Nāvibus fractīs, paene omne frūmentum undīs raptum est.
4. Māter ipsa puerōs ex agrīs vocātūra est quod conjūnx longē abest.
5. Postquam hostēs subitō ē moenibus ērūpērunt, cōpiae vestrae sē recipere incipiēbant.
6. In dīcendō multa exposuit et cōnsilium cōnsulīs laudāvit.
7. Ipsa mē ab animālī acerrimō dēfendī; nēmō mē juvāre volēbat.
8. Amīcī ad fugiendum ā perīculō nāvem parāvērunt.
9. Tōtus exercitus secundā hōrā ad portum interiōrem profectus est.
10. Magnae vīrēs mentis sunt praemium dulce labōris tuī.
11. Dum hostēs appropinquant, omnia proficīscendī causā parāvimus.

50 B

1. O goddess of wisdom, will you bring help to me now?
2. The commander himself showed that a few citizens had been captured by the enemy.
3. While they were lying on the shore, a voice was heard in a deserted temple.
4. The same soldiers are going to retreat to this very gate.
5. No one is desirous of struggling with you (pl.) in (by means of) battle.
6. Since she had wandered alone for three days, the girl wanted to tell everyone everything about her journey.
7. On that very day we burst out of the smaller gates for the sake of fleeing.
8. He had often excelled the rest of the citizens in strength.
9. Those who are trying to change bad laws into good are accomplishing nothing.
10. We learned that labor itself would conquer all things.

The Sack of Troy, Part 2

Rēx Priamus clāmāvit, “Scelus mājus omnibus fēcistī quī filium ante oculōs patris mātrisque occīdistī. Pater tuus mihi nōn ignōtus est. Dum corpus filiī Hectoris petō, in mē voluntātem bonam ostendit.⁷ Facile tē et animō et nātūrā superāvit. Nunc bene sciō tē nōn esse filium vērum ējus.”

Neoptolemus respondit, “Mihi nōlī dīcere dē patre meō! Nihil dīcendō efficiēs! Ego ipse sciō patrem Trōjam dēlēre cupīvisse; ego hoc idem nōn sōlum petō sed etiam efficiam!”

Priamus āram relīquit, sed Neoptolemus adventum ējus nōn timuit. Deinde rex hastam sustulit sed magnā vī jacēre nōn potuit. Illa in summō scūtō Neoptolemī stetit; eum minimē vulnerāvit. Priamus sē recipiēns ā Neoptolemō celeriter raptus et ad āram tractus est. “Sī putās,” inquit Neoptolemus, “mē esse pessimum omnium hominum, patrī meō id dīc. Brevī tempore in terrā mortuōrum eī multa narrāre poteris.” Deinde gladiō suō Priamum interfēcit.

Itaque illā nocte Trōjānī miserī Graecōs ex urbe repellere nōn potuērunt. Sōle coortō, paene tōta urbs flammīs circumventa et sublāta est. Graecī omnēs fēminās puerōsque ad lītus coēgērunt; eōs in Graeciam nāvibus latūrī erant et servōs factūrī erant. Corpus ipsum rēgis clārissimī in lītore sine capite relictum est. Ita magnus et potentissimus populus victus est.

modus operandī

cōgō, cōgere (3), coēgī, coāctus – <i>collect, gather</i> (+ Accus. d.o.); <i>force, compel</i> (+ Accus. & infin.)	adventus, adventūs , m. – <i>arrival, approach</i>
currō, currere (3), cucurrī, cursum – <i>run, hasten</i>	scientia, -ae , f. – <i>knowledge, skill</i>
possum, posse, potuī – <i>be able, can</i> (+ infin.)	vīgintī (indecl. adj.) – <i>twenty</i>
repellō, repellere (3), reppulī, repulsus – <i>drive back, repulse, repel</i>	praeter (prep. + Accus.) – <i>except, besides, past, beyond</i>

⁷ After Achilles killed Hector in battle, Priam went to the Greek camp and begged Achilles to return Hector's body to him for proper burial. Achilles, moved by the entreaty of the old king (who reminded him of his own aged father that he would never see again), allowed Priam to leave alive and with Hector's body.

Negative Imperative

Negative imperatives in Latin are formed by combining the imperatives of **nōlō** with the present infinitive of the verb in question. To express, for instance, *don't leave!*, Latin says **nōlī discēdere** (s.) or **nōlīte discēdere** (pl.) (literally, *be unwilling to leave!*).

Imperatives of **sum**

The present imperatives of **sum** are **es** and **este**, singular and plural, respectively.

The Irregular Verb **possum**

An important compound of **sum** is the irregular verb **possum**, *can, be able*, whose present system (pres., imperf., and fut.) is a combination of the adjective **potis** (*powerful*) and the forms of **sum**, which you already know. It is in the present tense that you need to be especially careful: when the form of **sum** begins with an s-, the stem becomes **pos-** instead of **pot-**, hence **possum**, *I can*, but **potes**, *you (s.) can*. Otherwise, if you know the three principal parts, you should have no difficulty making and recognizing the forms of this verb.

possum, posse, potuī, can, be able

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
1 st	possum , <i>I can, am able</i>	poteram, <i>I could, was able</i>	poterō, <i>I will be able</i>
2 nd	potes	poterās	poteris
3 rd	potest	poterat	poterit
1 st	possumus	poterāmus	poterimus
2 nd	potestis	poterātis	poteritis
3 rd	possunt	poterant	poterunt
		PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
1 st	potuī, <i>I have been able, could</i>	potueram, <i>I had been able</i>	
2 nd	potuistī	potuerās	
3 rd	potuit	potuerat	
1 st	potuimus	potuerāmus	
2 nd	potuistis	potuerātis	
3 rd	potuērunt	potuerant	

**51 A**

1. Mātrēs filiās in locum cōnstitūtum cōgere nunc possunt.
2. Postquam classis ē portū interiōre profecta est, dux ipse jussit omnēs legiōnēs ad urbem Rōmam redīre.
3. Nōlīte timēre! Brevī tempore hostēs ā moenibus repellēmus.
4. Audīvit aquam ab aliīs fēminīs prope silvam cōgī.
5. Vīgintī hominēs fortiōrēs aurum in agrum ferre coāctī sunt.
6. Nūlla uxor praeter ūnam conjugem suum dēfendere potuit.
7. Adeste, amīcī! Mē, quī vōs omnēs servāvī, contrā impetum illīus cīvis malī dēfendite!
8. Prīmā lūce cōnsul ad templum dīcendī causā vēnerat.
9. Nēmō quī labōrāre nōn vult rēs magnās efficere potest.
10. Tum ad mūrōs cucurrērunt et adventum rēgīnae clārae exspectāvērunt.

51 B

1. Although you are wise, consul, do not force the citizens to flee from the city itself.
2. While the boy was looking back at his friends, the girl was able to snatch his shield.
3. By the force of winds the waves will be raised to the sky.
4. In twenty years we have been able to build seven great temples, but three have been destroyed by fire.
5. Often by knowledge, not by strength, you will change bad circumstances into better (ones).
6. No one is going to collect the weapons of the soldiers.
7. I believe that after the arrival of our commander we will repel the enemy.
8. He said that he would report this same affair to the chief.
9. Except for the voices of birds they could hear nothing for very many days.
10. The daughter of the goddess came for the purpose of speaking about her deeds.

OPTIONAL

11. Go, flee across the river without delay, my son! Do not be brave, be quick!

Ludus 52

Future perfect act. & pass.
Future more vivid condition
Quisque

Agamemnon's Return

Cassandra, filia Priamī et Hecubae, ipsa ab Agamemnōne dēlēcta erat quod pulcherrima fuit. Ille eam in tēctō sēcum tenēre in animō habuit. Brevī tempore ad urbem suam, Mycēnās, pervēnit et nūntiōs ad rēgiam mīsit; hī rēgīnae nūntiāvērunt conjugem ējus appropinquāre.

Dum autem Agamemnōn decem annōs pugnandī causā abest, uxor ējus propter mortem Iphigenīae numquam fīnem īrae fēcit et cōnsilium ita cēpit: “Nisi conjūnx in bellō occīsus erit, ego ipsa hoc efficiam.” Virum quendam, Aegisthum nōmine, amāvit et cum eō in rēgiā habitāvit. Hī duo omnia bene parāverant et rēgem redeuntem interfectūrī erant.



“Agamemnon”, Burial Mask from Grave Circle A at Mycenae, National Museum, Athens (ca. 1600 B.C.E.)

potestātem nunc vēnisce; eum sēcum rēgnum tentūrum esse. Quamquam cīvēs scelus rēgīnae nōn probāvērunt, quisque eam timuit.

Nunc nūntius novus ad rēgīnam dēlātus est. Illa cognōvit conjugem suum Cassandram amāre et ad rēgiam ferre. Scientia hūjus reī etiam ācriōrem furōrem in rēgīnam ēgit. Nihil īrae aut furōris autem ostendit, sed sibi ita dīxit: “Conjūnx putat mē sibi fidam esse, sed odium meum mānsit. Faciam id quod Trōjānī decem annīs nōn potuērunt.”

Ubi Agamemnōn rediit, conjūnx eum libenter accēpit. Posteā Clytaemnēstra et Aegisthus in tēctō interiōre rēgem circumvēnērunt et interfēcērunt. Illa summā audāciā ē rēgiā ērūpit et omnibus gladium et sanguinem ostendit. Rem ā sē et ab Aegisthō gestam esse nūntiāvit. Ostendit ad Aegisthum

ipsō factō

quisque, quaeque, quidque/quicque (pron.) – *each one, each thing, every one*
quisque, quaeque, quodque (adj.) – *each, every*

nisi (conj.) – *if not, unless*

Future Perfect Tense

The sixth tense of the indicative mood in Latin is the Future Perfect. Its active and passive are formed by the same system as those of the perfect and pluperfect: the active uses the stem of the third principal part; the passive uses the fourth principal part and the verb **sum**.

As one of the tenses in the perfect system, it is formed in the same way for any verb, including irregular and deponent verbs. Below are the active and passive forms of **amo** in the future perfect, including English translations.

The active uses a special set of personal endings (which are very similar to the forms of the future indicative of **sum**).

FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE

amō

1 st	amāverō, <i>I will have loved</i>
2 nd	amāveris, <i>you (s.) will have loved</i>
3 rd	amāverit, <i>he/she/it will have loved</i>

amāverimus, <i>we will have loved</i>
amāveritis, <i>you (pl.) will have loved</i>
amāverint, <i>they will have loved</i>

ACTIVE ENDINGS

1 st	-erō	-erimus
2 nd	-eris	-eritis
3 rd	-erit	-erint

The passive voice uses the future indicative of **sum** as an auxiliary verb.

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

1 st	amātus erō, <i>I will have been loved</i>
2 nd	amātus eris, <i>you will have been loved</i>
3 rd	amātus erit, <i>he, she, it will have been loved</i>

amātī erimus, <i>we will have been loved</i>
amātī eritis, <i>you (pl.) will have been loved</i>
amātī erunt, <i>they will have been loved</i>

Because the future perfect is not commonly used in current English but is not uncommon in Latin, its use and meaning require attention. The future perfect refers to future time and indicates an action that will be completed before another action in the future. For example: *I will have completed the painting before you arrive tomorrow*. In this example, the speaker refers to two future actions, the completion of the painting and the arrival of the person being

LESSON 52

addressed; the speaker declares that the completion of the painting will happen first, then the arrival. On a time line, we could represent these actions as follows:



The Future More Vivid Condition

A conditional sentence is made up of two clauses, a condition (or protasis) and a conclusion (or apodosis). The conditional clause is dependent on the conclusion, which is the main, independent clause. A simple example is *If she studies the book, she learns.*

There are many kinds of conditions, but a common one in Latin is called “Future More Vivid.” An English example is *If you come, we will find the gold.* The speaker declares that if, in the future, you come, then, later in the future, you both will find the gold.

In an English future more vivid condition, we use the present tense in the conditional clause, even though we are referring to future time. Latin, however, uses the future perfect in the conditional clause, and the future in the conclusion (as does English).

Sī vēneris, aurum inveniēmus.
If you come, we will find the gold.

Sī in silvam periculōsam vēnerit, rānae eam spectābunt.
If she comes into the dangerous forest, the frogs will watch her.

The pattern of tenses, then, is:

	<u>Conditional Clause</u>	<u>Conclusion</u>
ENGLISH	present	future
LATIN	future perfect	future

Another type of future more vivid condition in Latin has the future tense in both parts of the condition. In this case, the future actions are going on at the same time. Again, in English, we use the present tense to translate the Latin future tense in the conditional clause.

Sī mēcum fortiter pugnābis, hostēs repellēmus.
If you fight bravely with me, we will repulse the enemy.

Indefinite Pronoun and Adjective *Quisque*

Another indefinite pronoun is **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quidque**, *each, each one, each thing.* It is almost entirely a combination of the interrogative pronoun **quis**, **quid** with the suffix **-que**. The adjective has the same forms as the pronoun, except that the neuter nominative and accusative singular use quod: **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**.

Although the plural of this pronoun and adjective is seen occasionally, it is normally used only in the singular. Below are all the forms of the singular.

quisque, quaeque, quidque/quicque, *each one, each thing, every one* (pronoun)

	M /	F	N
NOM	quisque	quaeque	quidque / quicque ⁸
GEN	cūjusque	cūjusque	cūjusque
DAT	cuique	cuique	cuique
ACC	quemque	quamque	quidque / quicque
ABL	quōque	quāque	quōque

quisque, quaeque, quodque, each (adjective)

	M	F	N
NOM	quisque	quaeque	quodque
GEN	cūjusque	cūjusque	cūjusque
DAT	cuique	cuique	cuique
ACC	quemque	quamque	quodque
ABL	quōque	quāque	quōque

⁸ The form **quicque** (neut. nom. & accus. sing.) is not used in *Ludus* but should be learned for later use.

**52 A**

1. Haec puella illam nātūrā scientiāque facile superat.
2. Hostibus appropinquantibus, exercitus tria mīlia passuum sē recēpit.
3. Tribus hōrīs avem quamque vīderimus.
4. Sī omnibus vīribus hastās jēceritis, cōpiae hostium repellentur.
5. Sī hostēs nōs in hanc silvam secūtī erunt, impetum in eōs statim faciēmus.
6. Quis dē hīs rēbus gestīs cognōscere volēbat?
7. Frūmentō ad urbem dēlātō, cīvis quisque satis habēbit.
8. Ante prīmam lūcem ad tēctum jūdicis dīcendī causā profectī estis.
9. Mīlitēs trāns flūmen īre cōnantēs ab hostibus ipsīs celerrimē repulsī sunt.
10. Nisi frūmentum ad portum sine morā tuleris, sociōs nostrōs servāre nōn poterimus.
11. Eōdem tempore et rēgīna et filiae oppidum relinquere coāctae erant.
12. Sī imperātum ducis magnā vōce dictum erit, ab omnibus audiētur.
13. Rēx īdem dīxit sē cuique gladium scūtumque dedisse.
14. Fēmina ad īsulam nōn redībit, nisi eī praemium dare cōstitueris.
15. Nāvem quamque ad lītus tulērunt; deinde eīsdem ad terram ignōtam pervēnērunt.

52 B

1. The king who was often advised by the goddess is going to gather his troops.
2. On account of the order of the commander he announces that they will send their wives out of the city.
3. Unless he is warned about the situation at once, he will not try to defend the town.
4. Brothers, don't do the same things that we did. Be wise.
5. He is throwing a spear; each one suddenly fears about his own safety.
6. At one time all the animals have been driven back among the trees.
7. If he reaches the harbor tomorrow, he will see that the consuls have accomplished nothing.
8. The ship of the queen was rather new.
9. If the citizens drive the enemy back beyond the river, they will give the gods many gifts.
10. Friend, go, look at your body. The years have changed it, haven't they?

TEMPVS FVGIT



ADDITIONAL READINGS - TERM 3

Nisus and Scylla

Lessons 11ff.

Mīnōs, rēx Crētae (*of Crete*), oppidum Megaram occupāre temptābat. Bellum erat longum. Tum Nīsus erat rēx Megarae. Coma (*a lock of hair*) Nīsī erat purpurea (*red*) et coma oppidum servābat.⁹ Per bellum Scylla, filia Nīsī, virōs semper spectābat. Nīsus in agrīs ante oppidum bene pugnābat; Mīnōs quoque bene pugnābat.

Ōlim Scylla Mīnōnem pulchrum vīdit et statim amāvit. Quamquam Mīnōnem juvāre dēsiderābat, territa erat. Nīsō fīda oppidum quoque amābat. “Quid parās,” inquit Scylla, “puella misera? Cūr oppidum tuum servāre nōn temptābis?” Deinde Mīnōnem pulchrum iterum spectāvit; itaque nunc Scylla nōn jam Nīsum et Megaram amābat; Mīnōnem sōlum amāvit. “Longum bellum multōs miserōs necāvit. Nōn jam pugnābimus quod Mīnōnī (dat.) comam Nīsī dabō. Nīsum et Megaram servābō et Mīnōs mē amābit! Caelum et deōs ūrō: virum pulchrum servāte!”

Noctū comam ā Nīsō dormiente (*while he was sleeping*) rapuit (*stole*). Ubi ex oppidō et trāns agrōs properāvit, Mīnōnī comam mōnstrāvit. “Tibi comam et oppidum meum dō quod tē amō.” Sed Mīnōs puellam nōn amāvit. Nunc Scylla erat misera.

Postridiē Mīnōs rēgnum Nīsī occupāvit sed multōs nōn necāvit. Ad Crētam nāvigāre parābat; Scylla ad ūram properāvit et clāmāvit: “Tē amō et semper amābō!” Nunc Mīnōs nāvigāvit. Scylla ad ūram stetit, sed mox in aquam ambulāvit. Per aquam post Mīnōnem properāre temptāvit. Nīsus quoque īrātus in aquam ambulāvit quod fīliam necāre dēsiderābat, sed deus Nīsum in avem (*bird*) subitō mūtāvit. Deinde Scyllam quoque in avem pulchram mūtāvit.

The Fountain of Arethusa

Lessons 16ff.

Arethūsa nympha (*a nymph*) pulchra in Graeciā habitāvit, sed nunc in īnsulā Siciliā est. Virgō (*virgin*) Diānae fīda erat. Ōlim Alphēus, deus flūminis (*of a river*), illam vīdit et statim amāvit. “Quem videō? Puella pulchra venit! Nympha est, sed cūjus fīlia est? Hīc manē, puella! Tē amō!” Arethūsa, “Quis es,” inquit, “et quid dēsiderās?”

“Num mē timēs? Nōn sum vir barbarus. Deus sum, magnus deus! Agrī aquā meā juvantur

⁹ Nisus' red lock of hair magically protected Megara from attack so long as it remained attached to his head.

et frūmentum agricolārum servātur. Nōnne mē amābis?”

Arethūsa hunc timuit quod virgō erat. “Cūr haec narrās? Tēne amābō? Minimē. Vītam Diānae laudō. Nunc ab hōc locō et ā mē properā!” Alphēus tamen puellam amāvit. “Tēctum meum est huic locō propinquum. Ibi vītam bonam habēbis.”

Arethūsa ibi nōn mānsit quod Alphēus aderat. Ab hōc deō properāvit sed Alphēus post illam celeriter vēnit et ita dīxit: “Cūr ā mē properās?”

Diū puella properāvit et nunc dēfessa erat. “Auxilium ūrō! Quis mē juvābit? Cūr Diāna abest? Nōnne mē vidēs, dea bona?” Diāna hanc puellam audīvit et jūvit.

Dea Arethūsam in aquam statim mūtat et hanc in terram mittit. Quamquam Alphēus in locō nunc stat ubi Arethūsa fuit, puellam nōn jam videt. “Ubi es, puella? Quis tē ab hōc locō portāvit? Ā quō tē postulābō?” Deinde et aquam in terrā et cōsilium Diānae videt. Nunc deus quoque in aquam mūtātur; in terram post Arethūsam properat.

Sed nymphā tum in oppidō Syrācūsīs adfuit. Ibi Arethūsa erat fōns (*spring*) aquae bonae. Ōrae propinquus erat et nautās saepe jūvit. Multī nautae illīus oppidī haec narrant: aqua Alphēī quoque in fonte cum Arethūsā adest quod deus post illam ē Graeciā in Siciliā vēnit.

The Flood

Lessons 30ff.

Per multōs annōs Juppiter magnā īrā mala hominum vidēbat. “Numquam,” inquit, “sunt dōna in īrīs nostrīs. Hominēs inter sē armīs semper pugnant. Dē salūte nymphārum maximē timeō quod illae in terrā habitant. Itaque gentēs hominum vastāre dēbeō. Tamen mentēs eōrum temptābō (*test*). Sī hominēs mē, rēgem deōrum, laudant, bonī sunt et propter id eōs nōn necābō.”

Juppiter ē caelō in terram vēnit. Longum post iter ad tēctum rēgis Lycāonis (gen.) vēnit. Juppiter statim, “Rēx,” inquit, “deōrum sum. Vōs juvāre dēsīderō!” Lycāon tamen sibi ita dīxit: “Hic nōn est deus vērus. Eum temptābō.” Cōsilium malum parāre audēbat. Hominem necātum in cibum (*food*) posuit (*he placed*). Sed Juppiter, hōc vīsō, rēgem in lupum mūtāvit.

Propter haec Juppiter cēterīs dīs cōsilium suum mōnstrāvit. “Ignis hominēs dēlēbit, sed caelum quoque dēlēbit. Aqua est cōsiliō meō idōnea. Hāc terram vastāre in animō habeō.” Hōc cōsiliō ā cēterīs dīs probātō, Iuppiter diū aquam ē caelō in terram mīsit (*sent*). Mox hominēs superātī sunt. Collēs et agrī, urbēs et viae, tēcta et templā antīqua, silvae et flūmina sub

aquā altā erant. Erant nec vada nec litora, sed magnum mare. Etiam multa animālia necāta sunt. Avēs arborēs nōn vīdērunt quod hae sub undīs stābant. Paucae avēs in summīs collibus sedērunt; aliās mors superāvit.

Deucaliōn et Pyrrha, vir et uxor, nāve iter ad altum montem temptābant. Ubi Juppiter hōs vīdit, subitō, “Hī sōlī,” inquit, “erant bonī. Eōs servābō.” Ita genus hominum servātum est.

Postscript

Hī ad montem Parnāsum vēnērunt. Hīc ūrāculum deae Terrae eīs respondit, “Ossa (*bones*) mātris vestrae post terga (*backs*) jacite (*throw*).”

Vir et uxor erant miserī. “Quid dea nōs temptāre jussit? Īram deōrum timēmus.” Tum Deucaliōn, “Saxa (*rocks*) sunt,” inquit, “ossa terrae, mātris nostrae.” Ita Deucaliōne duce saxa post terga jēcērunt (*threw*). Illa in hominēs mūtāta sunt: fuērunt fēminaē ē saxīs Pyrrhae, virī ex eīs Deucaliōnis. Ita genus novum hominum in terrā habitāvit.

The Story of Phaëthon

Lessons 38ff.

Phaëthōn erat puer superbissimus (*very proud*) quod Sōl erat pater ējus. Saepe amīcīs ita dīxit: “Melior vōbīs sum quod pater meus est magnus deus.” Saepe juvenis Sōlem equōs

potentēs trāns caelum agentem spectābat. Ōlim ad rēgiam illīus deī venīre audēbat. Sōl libenter dīxit, “Quid cupiēns vēnistī, mī filī? Nihil recūsābō (*refuse*).” Phaëthōn magnō gaudiō respondit, “Equōs sōlis per caelum agere cupiō.”

Sōl respondit, “Ō Phaëthōn īnfēlīx – īnfēlīcior omnibus juvenibus – es fortis sed neque satis potēns neque satis sapiēns. Propter audāciam tuam mortem inveniēs. Difficillimum¹⁰ est hōs equōs agere, neque via per caelum est facilis. Perīculum erit maximum.” Fīlius, “Hoc,” inquit, “prōmīsīstī. Hoc facere audeō. Cōnsilium meum est certissimum; mentem nōn mūtābō. Animus meus est mājor quam ille cēterōrum juvenum quod fīlius deī sum.”

Māne igitur equī ācerrimī jūnctī sunt, et per portās Aurōraē (*Dawn*) apertās Phaëthōn eōs libenter ēgit. Illī subitō respicientēs et Sōlem nōn videntēs erant audāciōrēs (*bolder*). Prīmō

¹⁰Difficillimum is neuter because it modifies the infinitive **agere**, which is the subject of the verb **est**.

prope terram, deinde altius in caelum juvenem īfēlīcissimum portantēs properāre numquam dēstitērunt. Flammae in agrīs frūmentum vastābant et suprā (*over*) montēs properāvērunt; aquae quidem flūminum mariumque recēdēbant. Juvenis nunc clāmāvit, “Quam īfēlix sum! Melius est fīlius parvī virī, nōn deī, esse! Nunc vītam āmittam.”



Tum Juppiter, perīculō graviōre vīsō, fulmen (*lightning bolt*) jēcit. Statim inter flammās Phaēthōn ē caelō in flūmen jactus est. Posteā sororēs ējus, quae ad flūmen semper mānsērunt et lacrimāre (*weep*) nōn dēstitērunt, in arborēs mūtātae sunt.

Pater miserrimus propter magnum dolōrem et etiam mājōrem īrām suam equōs sōlis per caelum nōn jam dūxit. Sine lūce sōlis nox et terram et caelum tenēbat.

Helios/Sol in his chariot
Troy, ca. 300 B.C.E.
Staatliche Museum, Berlin

Nōn sōlum hominēs sed etiam dī timēre incipiēbant. Sōlem ūrabant: “Nōs juvā! Hominēs servā!
Equōs tuōs iterum dūc per caelum. Tibi plūra et mājōra praemia dabimus.”

Pater īrātus respondit, “Numquam haec faciam. Facta deōrum sunt pessima. Rēx potentissimus deōrum puerum minōrem quam sē, fīlium meum, interfēcit. Hoc factum pējus omnibus est.” Posteā Juppiter sōlus ad eum vēnit. Multa bona dīxit, sed paucās minās (*threats*) quoque dīxit. Hīs audītīs Sōl īrātus tamen equōs parāvit et trāns caelum dūxit.

When the infinitive acts as a noun, it is considered neuter in gender.

The Abduction of Helen

Lessons 40ff.

Helena prīmō conjugem relinquere nōn dēsiderāvit, sed mox ā deā amōris capta, juvenī dīxit sē cum eō discēdere cupere. “Tibi crēdō, quī ā deā amōris certē juvāris. In urbe tuā habitābō.” Itaque noctū Paris cum fēminā amātā fūgit et nāve ad urbem Trōjam (*Troy*) vēnit.

Ubi Menelāus accēpit uxōrem ā tēctō abesse, vocāvit aliōs rēgēs Graecōs (*Greek*). Ostendit factum malum Paridis (gen.). Dīxit quoque Helenam sibi fidam nōn jam esse et nunc cum Trōjānō (*Trojan*) habitāre.

Hī rēgēs quoque Helenam amāverant et ūlim eam in mātrimōnium dūcere cupīverant. Postquam autem illa Menelāum conjugem dēlēgit, omnēs ita prōmīsērunt: “Semper Helenam ab eīs, quī eam vulnerāre temptābunt, dēfendēmus.” Itaque Menelāus dīxit eōs nunc arma capere et ad urbem Trōjam nāvigāre dēbēre. “Paris mentem vēram suam ostendit. Lēgēs nec hominum nec deōrum timet. Mox autem accipiet amōrem perīculōsum esse. Propter audāciam suam multa mala accipiet.”

Omnēs dīxērunt sē Menelāum īfelīcem juvāre cupere. Ita illud clārum bellum, quod appellātur “Trōjānum”, incipiēbat.

Mīlitibus vocātīs, plūribus nāvibus parātīs, ducēs Graecī convēnērunt. Agamēmnōn, frāter Menelāī, quī erat rēx potentissimus et mīles fortis, dux bellī dēlectus est. Sine morā cōpiās et classem convenīre Aulide (*at Aulis*) jussit. Diāna autem, cūjus animal sacrum Agamēmnōn in silvā interfēcerat, īrāta erat. Ventōs ab eō lītore prohibēbat. Ducēs prīmō nōn sēnsērunt deam contrā sē pugnāre. Deinde vātēs (*prophet*), quī Calchās appellātus est, eīs causam vēram ostendit.

Priam and Achilles

Lessons 47ff.

Nōnnūllōs diēs Achillēs corpus Hectoris circum urbem trahēbat. Postquam haec ad Priānum dēlāta sunt, rēx corpus filiī servāre et in terrā pōnere cupīvit quod lēx deōrum hominumque hoc postulāvit. Itaque ad castra Graeca (*Greek*) adīre et Achillem invenīre cōstituit. Corpus Hectoris ab eō petere in animō habēbat. Noctū sōlus aurum et multa alia dōna sēcum ferēns exiit. Duce Mercuriō (*Mercury*), ā mīlitibus Graecīs nōn vīsus est. Per medium exercitum Graecum ad castra Achillis pervēnit et in tabernāculum (*tent*) ējus statim init.

Ubi dux rēgem Trōjānum (*Trojan*) vidit, prīmō nihil dīxit. Īra odiumque etiam tum

manēbant. Sed propter iter mīrum rēgis animus ējus fortissimus vīsus est. Priamus, “Corpus fīlī meī,” inquit, “ā tē, magne Achille, petō. Voluntātem bonam in mē mōnstrā. Hāc nocte corpus in urbem feram. Plūs petere nōn audēbō. Mē spectā, virum veterem (*old*), quī multōs fīlōs jam amīsī – nūllum hōc cāriōrem – et mihi corpus dā. Tū quoque patrem veterem habēs quī, tē mortuō, magnum dōlōrem accipiet.”

Achillēs hunc spectāns et audiēns patrem suum vīdēre vīsus est. Scīvit tamen sē eum numquam iterum vīsūrum esse. Fīnem īrae breve tempus facere volēbat. Manibus suīs, quae filium Priamī occīderant, manūs Priamī cēpit. Duo virī sedēbant et lacrimābant (*cried*) – Priamus propter mortem fīlī, Achillēs propter patrem suum. Brevī tempore Graecus, “Corpus Hectoris cape,” inquit, “et ad urbem fer. Paucōs diēs proelium nōn faciēmus. Hōc tempore filium in terrā pōnēs.”

Priamus respondēre incipiēbat, sed Achillēs eum prohibuit. Īram suam timuit; rēgem vulnerāre noluit. Priamus cum corpore ad urbem rediit sed dōna in castrīs reliquit. Postrīdiē Trōjānī omnia parāvērunt; deinde corpus in igne posuērunt. Etiam Graeci magnās flammās procul vīdērunt. Memoriam fortissimī et optimī omnium Trōjānōrum semper tenuērunt. Multa bona quidem dē illō ā Graecīs scrīpta sunt.

Orestes' Revenge

Lesson 52

Ante mortem Agamēnōnis, Cassandra eum et cēterōs monēre cōnāta est, sed nēmō eī crēdidit. Hoc erat secundum dōnum Apollinis. Ille eī scientiam rērum futūrārum propter amōrem dederat, sed ab eā, cui nōn satis grātus fuit, repulsus erat. Deus igitur ita dīxit: “Sī tū mē reppuleris, ego quoque tē nōn jam amābō. Scientiam autem tibi datam nōn rēcipiam, sed post hunc diem nēmō tibi crēdet.” Itaque Cassandra magnā vōce dē perīculō mortis clāmāns ā nūllō crēdēbātur neque rēgem servāre potuit. Posteā illa quoque ā rēgīna imperfecta est.

Conjuge mortuō, Clytaemnēstra nēminem praeter ūnum hominem timuit. Fīlius ējus, Orestēs, dum puer est, ā mātre longē ā tēctō abīre coāctus erat. Ille decem annōs in aliā urbe habitāverat, sed nunc juvenis erat et ad urbem patris proficīscī cōnstituit.

Breve tempus Orestēs per urbēs Graeciae (*Greece*) vagātus est. Ā prīncipibus urbis cūjusque idem rōgāvit: “Quid dē patre meō nūntiāre potestis?” Multī dīxērunt illum ā Clytaemnēstrā occīsum esse. Prīnceps quīdam eum ita monuit: “Sī rem bene gerere vīs, ī ad orāculum (*oracle*) Apollinis (*of Apollo*). Cōnsiliō deī cognitō, tē bene parāveris.” Orestēs hoc

agere cōnstituit.

Paucīs diēbus ad orācūlūm Delphicūm (*at Delphi*) pervēnit. Hīc ā deō auxiliū petīvit: “Quid dē morte patris facere dēbeō?” Pythia, fēmina per quam vōx deī ad hominēs ferēbātur, respondit, “Lēx deōrum mortem cūjusque quī hominem occīdit postulat. Sī es fīlius vērus et fidus, hunc labōrem efficere dēbēs. Sī imperātūm Apollinis effēceris, dīs grātūs eris. Fīliī malī autem tōtam vītam īnfēlīcēs miserīque sunt. Nisi pater mortuus ā tē jūtus erit, nūllam pācem habēbis.”

Hīs dictīs, Orestēs statim ad urbē Mycēnās profectus est. Ibi Electra, filia Agamemnōnis et Clytaemnēstrae, quae patrī semper fīda fuerat, frātrem recognōvit et magnō gaudiō accēpit. Auxiliō sorōris Orestēs mātrem et Aegisthum manib⁹ suīs interfēcit. Nunc Orestēs rēs, quās Apollo jusserat, gesserat. Deae tamen antīquae et potentēs, nōmine Furiae, nunc eum sequī incipiēbant. Illō tempore vīta Orestis, quī per tōtam Graeciam ā Furiīs fugiēbat, miserrima fuit. In locum quemque in quem fūgerat, Furiae quoque currēbant.

Diē quōdam Orestēs ad urbē Athēnās (*Athens*) vēnerat. In colle sacrō, quī Arēopagus appellātus est, salūtem petīvit, quod hīc cīvēs jūdicia faciēbant. Paucī jūdicēs et dea Minerva Orestem et Furiās audīvērunt. Ille dīxit factum suum ab Apolline postulātūm et probātūm esse; scelus esse nōn posse. Hae autem, “Sī fīlius quisque,” inquiunt, “mātrem necāre poterit, lēgēs antīquae, quae gentēs hominū dēfendunt, nūllam potestātem habēbunt. Apollo, deus novus, nōs, deās antīquās, ē terrā repellere vult. Sī vīrēs nostrās sustuleritis, bellū et vīs omnia bona tollent.”

Hīs dictīs, sex jūdicēs cōnsilium Furiārum dēlēgērunt; sex id Orestis probāvērunt. Minerva, dea urbis, jūdiciūm tum facere coācta est. “Fīlia Jovis sine mātre sum (ē capite patris cum hastā scūtōque ērūpī). Putō igitur potestātem patris esse mājōrem quam illam mātris. Itaque Orestem līberum faciō. Vōbīs autem, Furiae, potestātem magnam et novam dō, quod plūrimōs annōs gentēs hominū ā malō dēfendere conātāe estis. Nunc in hāc terrā manēbitis; ad hunc populum, cīvēs urbis meae, pācem et cētera bona dē terrā, marī, et caelō semper ferētis.” Propter hoc jūdiciū Orestēs fīnem fugiēndī facere potuit.

Ludus 53

*Imperfect active & passive subjunctive
Cum situational clause ("When")
Cum causal clause ("Since")*

THE VOYAGE OF ULYSSES

Urbs Trōja dīcitur decem annōs ā Graecīs oppugnāta esse. Trōjā captā, Graecī in fīnēs suōs redīre contendērunt. Omnibus igitur rēbus paratīs, ventīs idōneīs, nāvēs in mare traxērunt et magnō cum gaudiō profectī sunt.

Omnēs praeter paucōs facile redīre potuērunt. Unus ex eīs infēlīcibus, Ājāx, Cassandram, quae in templum Minervae fugiendī causā cucurrerat, rapuerat et scelus fēcerat. Propter hoc cum ille in undīs nāve veherētur, Minerva eam ventīs et flammīs frēgit. Ājāx cum comitibus suīs interfectus est.

Erat inter ducēs Graecōs Ulixēs (*Ulysses*) quīdam, vir sapientiā longē mājor cēterīs. Nōnnūllī quidem dīcunt illum cōnsilium magnī equī cēpisse (memoriā certē tenētis Trōjam hōc equō captam et dēlētam esse). Hic rēgnūm īnsulae Ithacae (*Ithaca*) obtinuerat. Cum ad bellum discēderet, nōn sōlum conjugem, nōmine Pēnelopēn (*Penelope*, accus.), sed etiam parvum filium in eā īnsulā relīquit. Nunc, postquam jam decem annōs procul ā terrā uxōreque suā mānsit, redīre maximē cupīvit.

The Lotus-Eaters

Ulixēs comitēsque ējus vīgintī nāvibus profectī sunt. Cum per undās facile vehērentur, subitō māgnus ventus coortus est. Nāvis quā ipse Ulixēs vehēbātur, vī ventōrum multa mīlia passuum lāta, decimō (*tenth*) diē ad lītus Libyaē (*Libya*) ācta est. Cum haec terra eī ignōta esset, Ulixēs cōnstituit nōnnūllōs ē sociīs in terram expōnere; eōs aquam ad nāvēs ferre et nātūram locī cognōscere jussit. Hī igitur in terram discessērunt et imperāta facere parābant.

spēs semper resurgit

obtineō, obtinēre (2), obtinuī, obtentus – <i>hold, occupy</i>	spēs, speī, f. – <i>hope</i>
spērō, spērāre (1), spērāvī, spērātus – <i>hope</i> (+ indirect statement)	crūdēlis, crūdēle – <i>cruel, unmerciful</i>
suscipiō, suscipere (3), suscēpī, susceptus – <i>undertake</i>	cum (conj. + subjunctive) – <i>when, since</i>
vehō, vehere (3), vēxī, vectus – <i>carry, haul;</i> (pass.) <i>sail</i>	ob (prep. + Accus.) – <i>on account of</i> quam ob causam – <i>why?; therefore, for</i> <i>this reason</i>

The Subjunctive Mood

The Latin subjunctive mood expresses a variety of meanings. Often it denotes something thought or intended by someone, rather than an action or state in the world outside one's thoughts, so to speak, but the subjunctive has other uses as well. Since the subjunctive covers a wide range of expressions, there is no single translation for verbs in the subjunctive mood; you must learn how to translate each type of use appropriately.

Imperfect Subjunctive

The imperfect tense of the subjunctive looks very much like a combination of the present active infinitive and the standard active and passive personal endings: **amāre-m, amāre-r;** **dūcere-t, dūcerē-tur;** **sentīrē-mus, sentīrē-mur.** The same rule applies for irregular verbs: **esse-nt, īrē-tis, velle-t, ferre-ntur, ferrē-ris.**

Note that for deponent verbs, we must create a present *active* infinitive, which does not exist as a separate form, in order to construct the imperfect passive subjunctive of such verbs: **cōnārē-tur, sequerē-mur, coorīrē-minī.**

Below are the forms of the imperfect active and passive subjunctive of the model verb for each conjugation and of **sum**.

Notice that the first singular active ending is **-m**.

IMPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

	amō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō	sum	ENDINGS
1 st	amārem	monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem	essem	-m
2 nd	amārēs	monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs	essēs	-s
3 rd	amāret	monēret	dūceret	caperet	audīret	esset	-t
1 st	amārēmus	monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus	essēmus	-mus
2 nd	amārētis	monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis	essētis	-tis
3 rd	amārent	monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent	essent	-nt

IMPERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

	amō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō	ENDINGS
1 st	amārer	monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer	-r
2 nd	amārēris	monērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audīrēris	-ris
3 rd	amārētūr	monērētūr	dūcerētūr	caperētūr	audīrētūr	-tur
1 st	amārēmur	monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur	-mur
2 nd	amārēminī	monērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī	-minī
3 rd	amārentur	monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur	-ntur

Cum Situational Clause (Cum “When”)

Cum is used as a conjunction with a verb in the subjunctive to express the circumstances or situation in which another action occurred. We must translate the **cum** as *when* and the verb in the subjunctive with the English indicative. Since the **Cum** Situational Clause occurs only in sentences which refer to past time, you will see only the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in this type of clause.

Cum litorī appropinquārent, portum et multās nāvēs vīdērunt.
When they approached the shore, they saw a harbor and many ships.

Cum rēx sapiēns in urbe esset, nūntium accēpit.
When the wise king was in the city, he received a message.

Cum Causal Clause (Cum “Since”)

Cum is used as a conjunction with a verb in the subjunctive to express the cause of, or reason for, another action. We must translate the **cum** as *since* and the verb in the subjunctive with the English indicative.

Cum prope ūram habitārem, nautās saepe spectābam.
Since I lived near the shore, I often watched the sailors.

Cum rēx sapiēns esset, multa effēcit.
Since he was a wise king, he accomplished many things.

**53 A**

1. Cum hī castra in locō idōneō pōnerent, aliī frūmentum cogere cōnātī sunt.
2. Sperāvit nōs brevī tempore bellum contrā illam gentem susceptūrōs esse.
3. Cum vada invenīre nōn possent, ā flūmine sē recēpērunt.
4. Sī hostēs illum nūntium cēperint, sociī nostrī omnem spem relinquēt.
5. Postquam dōna quaedam in ārā posita sunt, fēminaē ad templum nōn mānsērunt.
6. Quam ob causam māter mihi eadem haec saepe dīxit?
7. Cum nox fīnem pugnandī faceret, etiam hic rēx crūdēlis pācem petīvit.
8. Et meliōrēs et fortiōrēs ob eam scientiam esse possumus.
9. Dux ipse cornū, quod in manū suā habuit, exercituī signum dedit.
10. Quam ob causam tribus diēbus incolae multa mīlia passuum nāvibus vehentur.

53 B

1. When your friends were departing, you (pl.) returned to your city without hope.
2. Since the walls were very high, she could not see the top of the mountain.
3. When the statue had been carried through the gates, it was placed in the temple.
4. For this reason I hoped that the cruel queen would not hold the throne for many years.
5. After the soldiers had waited a long time for the grain, they captured animals in the forest.
6. While we were away, we learned that there was great danger in the town.
7. Since the enemy was following us, we pitched camp on a nearby hill.
8. Therefore if the commander orders, these things will be carried from the camp by horses.
9. Since I was not able to bring help to them, I hoped that their spouses had saved them.
10. With whom will they join their forces and undertake war?

Ludus 54

Pluperfect active & passive subjunctive
Cum concessive clause ("Although")
Indirect question

The Lotus-Eaters (cont'd)

Hī, dum aquam petunt, ā quibusdam virīs vīsī et libenter acceptī sunt. Illī neque malī neque crūdelēs erant sed labōrem numquam suscipiēbant. Tōtum diem frūctum (*fruit*) quendam, quem lōtum appellābant, edēbant (*ate*). Graecīs lōtum dedērunt quem illī sine morā edēbant. Cum ob illum frūctum Graecī nihil jam facere vellent, dīxērunt sē numquam ad sociōs reditūrōs esse sed in eā terrā cum lōtō dulcī mānsūrōs esse.

Noctū hī comitēs ad nāvem nōn redierant. Ulixēs, cum propter haec dōlōrem accēpisset, spērāvit tamen eōs servārī posse. Paucōs virōs fidōs et fortēs in ḍoram mīsit. "Comitēs nostrōs invenīte et servāte. Deinde eōs celeriter capite et ad nāvēs ferte! Etiam si illī cupiditātem redeundī nōn habent, eōs ad Ithacam redīre cōgere dēbēmus."

Virī ab Ulike (abl.) missī oppidum quod nōn longē aberat facile invēnērunt. Cum ad hunc locum pervēnissent, sociōs suōs vīdērunt. Hī autem, lōtō superātī, ambulāre nōn poterant. Cum nihil quidem agere possent, tamen maximō cum gaudiō sedēre et lōtum edere vidēbantur. Nunc virī intellēxērunt quam ob causam hī ad nāvēs nōn redīssent. Cum causam veniendī ostendissent, comitēs suōs ad nāvēs sēcum redīre cōgere cōnātī sunt. Illī tamen manib⁹ sē dēfendēbant, saepe magnā vōce dīcentēs sē numquam ex eō locō abitūrōs esse. Cum rēs ita essent, virī ad ducem suum rediērunt et imperāta nōn facta esse nūntiāvērunt.

insatiābilis quaedam cupiditās vērī videndī

intellegō, intelligere (3), **intellēxi,**
intellēctus – understand, realize
nesciō, nescīre (4), **nescīvī, nescītus** – not
know, be ignorant
quaerō, quaerere (3), **quaeſīvī, quaeſītus** –
ask, inquire, ask of someone (+ **ab**, **dē**, or
ex + abl.); seek, search for

cupiditās, cupiditātis, f. – greed, desire
quantus, quanta, quantum – how great?
how large?; (pl.) how many?
tantus, tanta, tantum – so great, so much;
(pl.) so many
cum (conj. + subj.) – although

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

The pluperfect active subjunctive is formed by adding to the stem of the third principal part the suffix **-isse**, plus the active personal endings: **amāv-isse-t**, **māns-issē-mus**, **sēns-issē-tis**. This formation is the same for irregular verbs: **fu-issē-s**, **tul-isse-nt**, **nōlu-issē-mus**.

Notice, though, that for **eō**, the **i-** of the third principal part combines with **-isse** into **īsse-**: **īssem**, **īssēs**, **īsset**, etc. Below are the forms of the pluperfect active subjunctive of the model verb for each conjugation and of **sum** and **eō**.

Notice that the first singular ending is **-m**.

PLUPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

amō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
1 st amāvissem	monuisssem	dūxissem	cēpissem	audīvissem
2 nd amāvissēs	monuissēs	dūxiſſēs	cēpiſſēs	audīviſſēs
3 rd amāvisset	monuisset	dūxiſſet	cēpiſſet	audīviſſet
1 st amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	dūxiſſēmus	cēpiſſēmus	audīviſſēmus
2 nd amāvissētis	monuissētis	dūxiſſētis	cēpiſſētis	audīviſſētis
3 rd amāvissent	monuissent	dūxiſſent	cēpiſſent	audīviſſent
sum		eō	ENDINGS	
1 st fuiſſem		īſſem	-iſſem	
2 nd fuiſſēs		īſſēs	-iſſēs	
3 rd fuiſſet		īſſet	-iſſet	
1 st fuiſſēmus		īſſēmus	-iſſēmus	
2 nd fuiſſētis		īſſētis	-iſſētis	
3 rd fuiſſent		īſſent	-iſſent	

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

The pluperfect passive subjunctive is formed by combining the fourth principal part with the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**: **amātus essem**, **vocātae essent**, **relictī essēmus**. This formation is the same for irregular verbs: **lātus essem**, **lātī essent**. Below are the forms of the pluperfect passive subjunctive of the model verb for each conjugation.

Notice that the first singular active ending is **-m**.

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

amō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
1 st amātus essem	monitus essem	ductus essem	captus essem	audītus essem
2 nd amātus essēs	monitus essēs	ductus essēs	captus essēs	audītus essēs
3 rd amātus esset	monitus esset	ductus esset	captus esset	audītus esset
1 st amātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	ductī essēmus	captī essēmus	audītī essēmus
2 nd amātī essētis	monitī essētis	ductī essētis	captī essētis	audītī essētis
3 rd amātī essent	monitī essent	ductī essent	captī essent	audītī essent

Cum Concessive Clause (*Cum “Although”*)

Cum is used as a conjunction with a verb in the subjunctive to express an action contrary or opposed to another action. In English we must translate the **cum** as *although* and the verb in the subjunctive with the indicative. Often, but not always, **tamen**, *nevertheless*, appears in the main clause (not the **cum** clause).

Cum prope ūram **habitārem**, aquam timēbam.

Although I lived near the shore, I was afraid of the water.

Cum rēx multōs annōs **fuisset**, tamen nihil effēcerat.

Although he had been king for many years, he nevertheless had accomplished nothing.

Indirect Questions

In the same way that we can report statements by direct or indirect quotation (see Lesson 40) we can report another type of thought or expression, a question, directly or indirectly.

Direct Question: *What were the women doing?*

Indirect Question: *I knew what the women were doing.*

More precisely, of course, the indirect question in the second sentence above is the clause *what the women were doing*, while *I knew* is the main verb of the sentence and takes as its direct object the entire clause *what the women were doing*.

In Latin, the main verb of an indirect question must be in the subjunctive mood. We must translate that subjunctive verb with the English indicative.

Notice also that

- indirect questions are introduced by some sort of interrogative word or expression, e.g., *what, which, who, why, at what hour*.
- the verb governing the indirect question (not the subjunctive verb of the indirect question itself) must be a verb of asking, saying, knowing, or perceiving (“head verb”).

Sciēbam quid fēminaē facerent. *I knew what the women were doing.*

Mihi dīxit quid fēminaē fēcissent. *He told me what the women had done.*

Quō diē aurum inventum esset cognōscere cōnātī sumus.

We tried to learn on what day the gold had been found.



54 A

1. Cum agmen nostrum vincere possent, tamen pugnāre subitō dēstitērunt.
2. Cum rēx crūdēlis rēgnum nōn jam obtinēret, spēs nostra erat mājor.
3. Quis ūnam hōram prō templō stetit?
4. Quaesīvit ex eīs quis ūnam hōram prō templō stetisset.
5. Ubi ad ūram pervēnī, in aquam statim cucurri.
6. Cum imperātor scīret exercitum hostium castrīs propinquum esse, tamen impetum in eōs facere nōluit.
7. Tantus ventus subitō coortus est; quam ob causam id quod puella dīcēbat audīre nōn poterāmus.
8. Cum rēgnum in gente suā vīgintī annōs obtinēret, tamen pauca suspicere voluit.
9. Nescīvit quanta esset cupiditās belli¹¹.
10. Pater vester nōn cognōvit ubi illō diē fuissētis.

OPTIONAL

11. Cum exercitus Rōmānus id quod voluistī fēcisset, ad urbem statim rediit.
12. Virī iterum dē mē quaeſīvērunt quid ā fēminīs ipsīs dictum esset.
13. Omnī frūmentō coāctō, haec gēns montēs trānsīre cōnābātur.
14. Quaeſīvī quae nāvēs post medium noctem igne dēlētae essent.
15. Cum tantae rānae nostrō in tēctō essent, celerrimē fūgimus.
16. Multae rogābant sed ūna fēmina intellegēbat quam ob causam cēterae ad portum interiōrem contendenter.
17. Cum cōsulem crūdēlissimum interficere vellet, tamen id facere nōn audēbat.

¹¹ **bellī** is not a possessive genitive. It is called “objective genitive” because **bellī** is the object of the verbal idea in **cupiditās** (‘someone desires war’). You may prefer to translate the phrase *desire for war*. You will learn the objective genitive formally later this year.

54 B

1. Since they never feared danger, they undertook the war with great hope.
2. Although the messenger was approaching quickly, we knew that the Romans would seize him.
3. Although you (s.) were doing this almost in sight of the city, the cruel king did not see it.
4. She asked (**rogō**) who was saying that. She asked (**quaerō**) who had said that.
5. Since he knew where the teacher lived, he often brought money to him.
6. I did not understand that the consul wanted to wage war on account of a desire for power.
7. In so great danger we always did what you had ordered.
8. He did not know what the king had responded to that citizen.
9. When I inquired, I learned how great power she had held at that time.
10. Although no one defended the animals, they were never captured.

OPTIONAL

11. He could not understand who held the rule in this city.
12. Since the roads were rather wide, I thought that you (s.) would follow us very easily.

Ludus 55

Adverbial purpose clause
Relative purpose clause
Dative with special intransitive verbs

The Rescue

Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Ulixēs noluit aliōs mittere quī comitēs servārent, sed ipse cum omnibus quī in nāvibus relictī erant profectus est. Cum comitēs invēnisset, ab eīs quaesīvit quam ob causam lōtus ab eīs ita amārētur et grātior esset quam oppida et uxōrēs et puerī eōrum. “Quid vōs hīc tenet? Tōtamne vītam nihil agere vultis?” Cum autem intellēxisset eōs ibi manēre velle, manibus captīs eōs ad nāvēs redīre coēgit. Deinde ē portū celerrimē nāvigāvit.

The One-Eyed Giant

Postquam eam tōtam noctem per undās vectī sunt, postrīdiē ad terram ignōtam vēnērunt. Deinde Ulixēs, cum nescīret quanta esset īnsula aut quī populus ibi habitāret, cum paucīs ē sociīs profectus est ut nātūram locī cognōsceret. Brevī tempore magnae spēluncae (*cave*) appropinquāvērunt. Sē frūmentum ibi inventūrōs esse spērābant. Quam ob causam cum intellegērent sē nōn sine perīculō id facere, tamen in spēluncam iērunt. Dum quaerunt quis in eō locō habitāret, subitō gigantem (*giant*) per portam spēluncae venientem vīdērunt. Cum vīdissent eum ūnum oculum habēre, intellēxērunt eum esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus.

Simul atque nātūram gigantis recognōvērunt, eī sē tradere noluērunt et in interius spatium spēluncae fūgērunt nē ab eō vidērentur. Polyphēmus autem (ita Cyclōps appellābātur) animālia sua in spēluncam coēgit; deinde, cum magnō saxō (*rock*) portam clausisset, ignem in mediā spēluncā fēcit ut omnia bene vidēret.

virtūs et scientia

arbitror, arbitrārī (1), **arbitrātus sum** – *think, consider, judge*

ēgređior, ēgređī (3), **ēgressus sum** – *go out, depart, set out*

persuādeō, persuādēre (2), **persuāsī, persuāsus** (intrans. + Dat.) – *persuade*

trādō, trādere (3), **trādidī, trāditus** – *hand over, surrender, hand down; sē trādere* – *to surrender*

spatiūm, spatīī, n. – *space, distance, interval*

virtūs, virtūtis, f. – *manliness, courage, bravery*

paulō (adv.) – *a little, somewhat*

simul atque (conj.) – *as soon as*

Adverbial Clause of Purpose

The subjunctive is used to express the purpose of another action. Such clauses are introduced by the conjunction **ut** if positive and by **nē** if negative. We have more than one English equivalent of such clauses, but you should not translate the subjunctive of a purpose clause with the English indicative. Study carefully the possible translations of the following Latin sentences:

MAIN CLAUSE

PURPOSE CLAUSE

Ad lītus cucurrimus**ut nāvēs vīderēmus.***We ran to the shore**(in order) to see the ships.**(in order) that we might see the ships.***Magnā vōce clāmāvī****ut mē audīrēs.***I shouted in a loud voice**(in order) that you might hear me.**(in order) that you hear me.***ē proeliō fūgit****nē caperētur.***He fled from the battle**in order not to be captured.**(in order) that he might not be captured.**(in order) that he not be captured.**lest he be captured***Relative Clause of Purpose**

Purpose is sometimes expressed in Latin by the subjunctive in a relative clause. Such clauses are introduced by a relative pronoun and should be translated in the same ways as the adverbial purpose clause. You will often find that the governing verb (not the subjunctive verb of the relative clause) is **mittō** or a compound of that verb.

Eum mīsimus**quī numerum hostium cognōsceret.***We sent him**(in order) to learn the number of the enemy.**(in order) that he might learn the number of the enemy.**(in order) that he learn the number of the enemy.***Viam aedificāvimus quā ad portum celerius frūmentum ferrēmus.***We built a road by which to bring/we might bring grain to the harbor more quickly.***Dative Indirect Object with Special Intransitive Verbs**

Some intransitive Latin verbs take a dative indirect object. In English, we translate the dative noun as the direct object of that verb. You have already encountered one verb of this type, **crēdō** (Lesson 40).

Cīvibus persuāsimus. *We persuaded the citizens.*

In the example above, **persuāsimus** is the intransitive verb which governs the dative noun **cīvibus**, but, as you can see, in English *citizens* is treated as the direct object of *persuaded*. More literally, the Latin means *we made [something] agreeable to the citizens*.

**55 A**

1. Igne subitō coortō, servus aquam ferēbat ut frūmentum servāret.
2. Legiōnēs prope flūmen cōstituere cōstituimus nē facile circumvenīrentur.
3. Magnās cōpiās coēgit ut tōtam īnsulam occupāret.
4. Māter mea hunc pīncipem mīsit quī voluntātem rēgis cognōsceret.
5. Multa tēla cōgēbant quibus Rōmānōs vincerent.
6. Nōn intellēximus quantī mīlitēs sē trādidissent.
7. Ab urbe statim ēgredī cupiēbam nē cōnsulēs cōnsilia mea cognōscerent.
8. Simul atque rēgīna comitēs suōs vīdit, spēs salūtis paulō mājor erat.
9. Arbitrābar virtūtem hūjus ducis paulō mājōrem quam meam esse.
10. Cum facta hōrum trīum hominum cognōvissem, cīvibus de scelere eōrum facile persuāsī.

55 B

1. The leader of the enemy's forces demanded this, in order that he might defeat the Romans.
2. For many days our hope has been a little smaller.
3. We sent three of (**ex**) our comrades to give rewards to the bravest soldier.
4. When you had persuaded the girls, they handed over their animals.
5. As soon as he saw a band approaching the camp, he went out to hear the report.
6. Since you were asking for help, I came to undertake this great labor.
7. They think that there is a short interval between the Roman army and the shore.
8. The goddess asked what her sisters wanted, lest she be ignorant of their wish.
9. You (pl.) did not realize how great the courage of this king was.
10. Those (personal) enemies spoke much against me, that I might not be chosen commander.

The Giant's Supper

Cum Polyphēmus vīdisset hominēs in interiōre locō esse, magnā vōce ab eīs quaesīvit quī essent. Ulixēs respondit sē esse ducem hōrum virōrum. “Magnus in bellō,” inquit, “propter virtūtem meam sum, sed nōn pugnandī causā vēnī.” Dīxit quoque eōs ē spēluncā ēgredī cupere sed tantum saxum movēre nōn posse. Tum Polyphēmus quaesīvit ubi esset nāvis eōrum; sed Ulixēs, cum hanc rem esse perīculōsam intellegereret, respondit nāvem in lītus vī ventōrum conjectam et fractam esse. Ille autem nihil respondēns duo ē sociīs Ulixis manū rapuit et corpora eōrum edere (*eat*) incipiēbat. Hōc vīsō Graecī arbitrātī sunt sē ex hōc perīculō nōn facile fugitūrōs¹.

A Failed First Attempt

Dum haec geruntur, Graecī erant magnopere territī. Nihil dīcere potuērunt. Polyphēmus, cum satis ēdisset, in terrā jacuit et somnō sē dedit. Ulixēs, cum haec vīdisset, arbitrābatur sē comitēs servāre nunc posse. Ūnum comitem cēterīs praefēcit eīque imperāvit ut cēterōs longē ā Polyphēmō prohibēret. Deinde alium comitem mīsit quī gladium ad sē statim ferret.

Ulixēs Polyphēmō appropinquābat ut eum gladiō interficeret. Subitō autem sēnsit quantā audāciā et quantō perīculō hoc cōnārētur. Bene intellēxit portam spēluncae magnō saxō clausam esse; id etiam decem virōs ā portā agere nōn posse. Vīdit sē Polyphēmō occīsō ē spēluncā numquam ēgressūrum esse. Cum haec ita essent, Ulixēs Cyclopem occīdere cōnārī dēstitit et ad sociōs rediit.

tempus edax rērum

hortor, hortārī (1), **hortātus sum** – *encourage, urge*

imperō, imperāre (1), **imperāvī, imperātus** (intrans. + Dat.) – *command, order*

praeficiō, praeficere (3), **praefēcī, praefectus** (+ Accus. & Dat.) – *put in charge (of)*

reperiō, reperīre (4), **repertus** – *find out, discover, learn*

Substantive Clause of Volition (Noun Clause of Desire)

Like declarative statements and questions (see lessons 40 and 54), commands or wishes can be expressed directly or indirectly. The formal name for such an expression is “Substantive Clause of Volition”. Examine the following examples:

¹ **fugitūrōs (esse)**. The **esse** of the future active infinitive is often left understood (also in the perf. pass. infin.).

Direct Command: *Call the sailor!*

Command Expressed Indirectly: *I demanded that he call the sailor.*

More precisely, of course, the clause of volition in the second sentence above is *that he call the sailor*, while *I demand* is the main verb of the sentence and takes as its direct object the entire clause *that he call the sailor*. (Since this sort of clause acts as a noun, it is called “substantive”.)

In Latin, the main verb of a clause of volition must be in the subjunctive mood and its clause is introduced by **ut** if positive and by **nē** if negative. There is more than one correct English equivalent of such Latin clauses, but you should not translate the subjunctive verb of a volition clause with the English indicative.

Notice also that the verb governing a volition clause (not the subjunctive verb of the volition clause itself) must be a verb of commanding, wishing, persuading, advising, or the like. Among the most common verbs that take the substantive clause of volition are these six: **petō**, *seek, beg; postulō, demand; persuādeō, persuade; imperō, command; moneō, advise, and hortor, encourage* (but recall that **jubeō** takes accusative and infinitive).

Study carefully the possible translations of the following Latin sentences:

MAIN CLAUSE

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE OF VOLITION

Postulāvērunt

ut virī urbem dēfenderent.

They demanded

that the men defend the city.

Mē monuit

nē castra relinquem.

She advised me

*not to abandon the camp.
that I not abandon the camp.*

Dative Indirect Object with Special Compound Verbs

Some Latin verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super** take a dative object. The translation of such datives varies with the meaning of the particular verb.

Eum legiōnī praefēcērunt. *They put him in charge of the legion.*

In the example above, **praefēcērunt** is a compound verb which governs the dative noun **legiōnī** and which means *put in charge of* (something). With this particular verb, the dative noun is the thing in charge of which someone is put. Since, however, **praeficiō** combines the prefix **prae** with the transitive verb **faciō**, it requires a direct object in addition to the dative. (More literally, the Latin means *they made him at the head of/in front of the legion.*) As a rule, the compound verb **praeficiō** puts the accusative in charge of the dative. (A verb that you have already learned takes a dative, **appropinquō**, belongs to this category of special compound verbs.)



56 A

1. Illum huic legiōnī contrā voluntātem mīlitum praeſēcimus.
2. Ab eā postulāvī nē mē domī relinqueret.
3. Hōc audītō statim quaesīvī quam ob causam hoc scelus fēcisset.
4. Rēx vōs monuit nē pācem cum hostibus crūdēlibus facerētis.
5. Multī mē hortābantur ut locum castrīs idōneum reperīrem.
6. Imperātor gentib⁹ victīs imperāvit ut arma statim traderentur.
7. Pater noster, exercituī Rōmānō praefectus, mīlītēs classe ad īnsulam vehī statim jussit.
8. Māter sōla poterat mihi persuādēre ut hunc labōrem susciperem.
9. Amīcō territō persuāsimus ut ē nāve in terram ēgrederētur.
10. Fēmina servum quendam ad agrōs mīsit quī nuntium ad conjugem dēferret.

56 B

1. We had encouraged a band of virgins to flee to the walls.
2. The commander put him in charge of that legion to attack the camp of the enemy.
3. The consul demanded that those very bad citizens go out of the city within two days.
4. With courage she went to the king and begged (**petō**) him (**ab** + abl.) not to harm me.
5. He went back to the city to defend his friend against the violence of these powerful men.
6. He asked (**petō**) them to find out how large the enemy's forces were.
7. You (pl.) could not persuade the daughter to surrender her father.
8. The consuls demanded that the gates of the camp be opened.
9. At the same time, we ordered her to seek safety in the temple of the great goddess.
10. Since you (s.) had discovered the danger, you sent a messenger to warn us.

A Plan for Escape

Illī, cum intellēxissent quō in locō rēs essent, nōn jam arbitrātī sunt cōnsilium mīrum ducis suī sē servātūrum esse. Ulixēs tamen animum paulō mājōrem habuit, neque Polyphēmō crūdēlī sē tradere voluit. Sociīs igitur persuādēre conātus est. “Vōs, sociōs meōs,” inquit, “hortor nē spem vestram relinquātis. Jam ē multīs et magnīs perīculīs fūgistiſ quod dī auxilium tulērunt.” Dīxit sē nunc auxilium repertūrum esse.

Lūce coortā Polyphēmus idem fēcit: cum duōs ē cēterīs virīs rapuisset, corpora eōrum sine morā ēdit. Ipse, cum saxum ā portā tulisset, cum animālibus suīs ē spēluncā excessit. Hōc vīsō Graecī spērābant sē nunc ēgressūrōs et līberōs futūrōs. Postquam autem omnia animālia exiērunt, Polyphēmus saxum in portā iterum posuit. Tum Graecī sine spē salūtis dolōrem maximum accipiēbant.

Ulixēs, cum intellegereret rem in summō perīculō esse, tamen sociōs hortātus est ut magnō animō opus quoddam susciperent. “Hoc tantum saxum, quō porta clausa est, ē locō suō ā nōbīs ēripī nōn potest. Itaque nōs cōnsilium novum capere oportet. Tēlum faciēmus ut Polyphēmum vulnerēmus. Nē eum occīdāmus, oculum sōlum ējus vulnerāre cōnābimur. Propter hoc vulnus nōs vidēre nōn jam poterit, sed portam posteā certē aperiet. Tum ēgredī nōbīs licēbit. Nunc crēdite mihi et omnia quae¹² vōbīs imperō sine morā facite!”

Deinde ē lignīs (*logs*), quae in spēluncā posita erant, ūnum longiōrem dūriōremque cēterīs dēlēgit. Comitibus imperāvit ut hunc praeacūtum (*very sharp*) facerent. Tum, postquam Ulixēs quid eōs facere vellet ostendit, illī omnia parāvērunt et Polyphēmum exspectābant.

¹² **quae:** accus. direct object of **imperō**, which, though originally intransitive, may take an accus. direct object as well as a dat. for the person(s) ordered (here, **vōbīs**).

magnum opus

ēripiō, ēripere (3), ēripuī, ēreptus – <i>tear away, steal, rescue</i>
licet, licēre (2), licuit or licitum est (impers.) – <i>it is allowed/permited, one may (+ Dat. + infin.)</i>
mūniō, mūnīre (4), mūnīvī, mūnītus – <i>fortify, secure, build</i>
oportet, oportēre (2), oportuit (impers.) – <i>it is right, one must (+ Accus. + infin.)</i>
opus, operis, n. – <i>(complete) work, fortification</i>
vulnus, vulneris, n. – <i>wound</i>

Present Active and Passive Subjunctive

The present tense of the subjunctive uses the standard personal endings for active and passive, but the forms vary by conjugation. In each conjugation, the vowels that precede the personal ending are different than those used in the present indicative. For example, compare the following analysis of the second singular present active indicative of **laudō** with the same form of the subjunctive mood: present indicative - **laud-ā-s**; present subjunctive - **laud-ē-s**.

Since only a single vowel indicates this very important difference in mood, it is essential not only to learn the formation of the present subjunctive given below but also to recall the conjugation of every verb, in order to be able to determine the mood accurately.

In each conjugation the present subjunctive uses characteristic vowels as follows:

Conjugation	I	II	III	III -iō	IV
Vowel	e	ea	a	ia	ia
Example	amem	moneam	dūcam	capiam	audiām

Below are the forms of the present active and passive subjunctive of the model verb for each conjugation. Notice that the first singular active ending is **-m**.

PRESENT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

	amō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō	ENDINGS
1 st	amem	moneam	dūcam	capiam	audiām	-m
2 nd	amēs	moneās	dūcās	capiās	audiās	-s
3 rd	amet	moneat	dūcat	capiat	audiat	-t
1 st	amēmus	moneāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus	-mus
2 nd	amētis	moneātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis	-tis
3 rd	ament	moneant	dūcant	capiant	audiānt	-nt

PRESENT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

						ENDINGS
1 st	amer	monear	dūcar	capiar	audiar	-r
2 nd	amēris	moneāris	dūcāris	capiāris	audiāris	-ris
3 rd	amētur	moneātur	dūcātūr	capiātūr	audiātūr	-tur
1 st	amēmur	moneāmūr	dūcāmūr	capiāmūr	audiāmūr	-mūr
2 nd	amēminī	moneāminī	dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī	-minī
3 rd	amentur	moneantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur	-ntur

Sequence of Tenses with the Subjunctive, Step One

To refer to an action occurring at the SAME TIME, or TIME AFTER the action of the governing verb:

- 1) a subjunctive clause takes the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE,
if the governing verb is in the present, future, or future perfect tense;
- 2) a subjunctive clause takes the IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE,
if the governing verb is the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect tense.

Hic manēbō ut animal mīrum videam. *I will remain here to see the amazing animal.*
or ...that I may see...

Hic mānsī ut animal mīrum vidērem. *I remained here to see the amazing animal.*
or ...that I might see...

Impersonal Verbs

A few Latin verbs are used primarily or exclusively in the third person singular in so-called “impersonal” expressions. These verbs are labeled “impersonal verbs” and can be identified easily in the vocabulary by their principal parts, which are in the third singular form, except for the present infinitive: **licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est, it is allowed.**

Impersonal verbs are frequently used with an infinitive (which is grammatically the subject of the verb) and a noun. **Licet**, for instance, normally governs a dative and infinitive: **tibi discēdere licet.** In translating such an expression, we should avoid the literal meaning, *it is permitted to you to depart*, in favor of a personal translation in standard English: *you are permitted to depart, you may depart, you are allowed to depart.*



Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome



57 A

1. Omnesne cives vocavistī ut eōs hortārēris?
2. Cum tēlum suum omnibus viribus suis teneat, id ā manibus ejus eripitur.
3. Māter mihi imperat nē tantum scelus faciam.
4. Periculum timēns filios hortātur nē postridiē ex oppidō egrediantur.
5. Nōn sine labore in hanc terram venit ut urbem clārissimam pulcherrimamque spectet.
6. Quam ob causam nobis in templum ire nōn licuit.
7. Simul atque vulnus minimum accēpit magnā vōce clāmāre incēpit.
8. Cum pācem habeāmus, vōs illud opus suscipere nunc oportet.
9. Nescimus quae dōna ad rēgem ferre dēbeāmus.
10. Legiōnēs castra mūnīvērunt ut impetus hostium repellerētur.

57 B

1. The leader himself has urged his soldiers to fight (**faciō**) a battle with us.
2. Are you making a most difficult journey in order to hear the advice of the goddess?
3. Who will carry this book to the field in order to give it to the farmer?
4. While we were absent, the money was snatched away from our son.
5. It is not right for a person greater in wisdom to be harmed by a cruel citizen.
6. They were indeed withdrawing from the town, but we asked them to follow us more quickly.
7. You command (**imperō**) them to hand over their weapons immediately.
8. He does not know why they are fortifying another camp.
9. Since¹³ the queen has departed, we may (it is allowed for us to) abandon the fortifications.
10. After having set out toward the river, she saw no one for two days.

¹³ Do not use a **cum** clause. Use a participle construction.

A Drunken Giant

Is ubi rediit, duo virōs iterum interfēcit. Tum Ulixēs prō Polyphēmō stetit. Eī vīnum (*wine*), quod sēcum tulerat, ostendit. Ille, quī dē vīnō nihil sciēbat, ab eō quaesīvit quid esset. Cum ē magnō pōculō (*cup*) bibere (*to drink*) coepisset, tantum gaudium accēpit ut iterum et iterum plūs vīnī postulāret. Tum, cum quaesīvisset quō nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Nēminem appellārī. Hōc audītō Polyphēmus ita dīxit: “Mihi hoc dōnum deōrum tam bonum dedistī. Cum igitur tibi praemium idōneum prō tantō dōnō dare velim, hoc faciam: tē post cēterōs occīdam!” Cum Ulixēs eum iterum hortārētur ut vīnum biberet, Polyphēmus negāvit sē plūs bibere posse. Deinde in terrā jacuit et brevī tempore somnō sē dedit.

Vengeance Achieved

Polyphēmō somnō victō, Ulixēs sociīs vocātīs ita dīxit: “Nunc habēmus id quod petīvimus. Hortor igitur ut virī sītis. Sī tantum dōnum deōrum amīserimus, ā Polyphēmō omnēs interficiēmur. Quam ob causam, ut fugiāmus, omnēs rēs magnā virtūte facere oportet.” Graecī igitur tēlum sustulērunt et eō oculum Polyphēmī vulnerāvērunt. Ille tantum dolōrem accipiēbat ut statim sē ex somnō recipere¹⁴ et tēlum ex oculō ēriperet. Magnum clāmōrem (*shouting*) sustulit, et dum per spēluncam vagātur, omnibus vīribus suīs Ulixem manū capere cōnātus est. Cum tamen caecus (*blind*) esset, nihil effēcit. Interim cēterī Cyclōpes vōce Polyphēmī audītā ad spēluncam convēnērunt. Ad portam Polyphēmī stantēs quaesīvērunt quid Polyphēmus ageret, et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem mediā nocte sustulisset.



Blinding of Polyphemus, Greek vase found at Argos, Greece (7th cent. B.C.E.)

¹⁴ Here sē recipere means *to recover (from)*.

annuit coeptīs

coepī, coepisse, coeptus (defective) – <i>began, started</i>	tālis, tāle – <i>such, of such a kind</i>
negō, negāre (1), negāvī, negātus – <i>say...not, deny</i>	
occurrō, occurrere (3), occucurrī or occurrī ,	tam – <i>so</i> (modifies adjs. & advs.)
occursum (compound + Dat.) – <i>run into, meet</i>	

Present Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs

While the present subjunctive of **ferō** is simply that of a regular third conjugation verb (**feram ferās, ferat**, etc.; **ferar, ferāris, ferātur**, etc.), that of **sum, volō, nōlō**, and **eō** is irregular and must be memorized separately.

The present active subjunctive of **sum, volō, and nōlō** uses the characteristic vowel **i** and the same personal endings as the regular present active subjunctive (there are no passive forms of these verbs).

Notice, however, that the verb stems used for **sum, possum**, and **volō** are usually different from those used in the present indicative.

PRESENT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

	sum	possum	volō	nōlō
1 st	sim	possim	velim	nōlim
2 nd	sīs	possīs	velīs	nōlīs
3 rd	sit	possit	velit	nōlit
1 st	sīmus	possīmus	velīmus	nōlīmus
2 nd	sītis	possītis	velītis	nōlītis
3 rd	sint	possint	velint	nōlint

The present subjunctive of **eō** uses the stem **ea-** in combination with the regular personal endings. (There is no passive.)

PRESENT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

eō

1 st	eam	eāmus
2 nd	eās	eātis
3 rd	eat	eant

Adverbial Result Clause

The subjunctive is used to express the result of another action. Such clauses are introduced by the conjunction **ut** if positive and by **ut nōn** if negative. The Latin subjunctive of a result clause is translated with (so) that and the English indicative. Notice in the following examples that the main clause usually contains a word with the meaning *so* or *such*, which, in effect, foreshadows the expression of result.

MAIN CLAUSE

Ita omnī nocte vigilāvistī
You kept watch thus every night

Tanta est virtūs tua
So great is your courage

Ventī erant secundī
The winds were favorable

Virtūtem nostram ita timēbant
They so feared our courage

RESULT CLAUSE

ut urbem servārēs.
that you saved the city.
so that you saved the city.

ut hoc perīculum nōn timeās.
that you do not fear this danger.

ut ad portum facile pervēnīrēmus.
so that we easily reached the harbor.

ut legiōnem nostram nōn oppugnārent.
that they did not attack our legion.

Defective Verbs

A few Latin verbs exist only in some of the six tenses. In this lesson you will learn the verb **coepī**, *began*, which is used only in the perfect system (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect), never in the present, imperfect, or future. The forms and translation of **coepī** are completely regular. You simply can not use it to express *I am beginning*, *you will begin*, etc.



58 A

1. Avēs tam propinquae sunt ut oculōs eōrum vidēre possīmus.
2. Tantum est perīculum ut legiōnēs pugnāre nōlīnt.
3. Cum mīlitēs castra munīre jam coepissent, dux eīs imperāvit ut opus relinquerent.
4. Vulnus tāle accēpit ut sē recipere cogerētur.
5. Manum servī cēpīt ut eum ab animālī acrī ēriperet.
6. Dīxit sē haec promissa certē factūram esse.
7. Barbarī tam fortiter impetum fēcērunt ut Rōmānī repulsī ad castra sua fugerent.
8. Ita potentēs estis ut vōbiscum pugnāre nōn possīmus.
9. Paucās fēminās mittō quae equōs trāns vada dūcant.
10. Cum ducī occurrisset, negāvit sē castra dēseruisse.

58 B

1. So great was their courage that they were able to fight most fiercely.
2. She is such a woman that she gladly undertakes this work.
3. When the messenger had come, I opened the letter immediately.
4. The journey was so easy that the children did not ask for water.
5. When we had crossed the river, we did not hear the voices of birds, but we did hear a great wind.
6. You (pl.) kept watch for many nights, so that this evil citizen was unable to commit a crime.
7. Without delay he showed the soldiers to which camp he wanted the weapons to be brought.
8. They learned that in a short time this tribe would contend with the Romans.
9. You (s.) know, don't you, why they are unwilling to rescue those girls?
10. The consul's grief is so severe that he is going out of the sight even of his friends.

Ludus 59

Ablative with special deponent verbs
(PUFF V deponent verbs)
Dative of possession

A Second (Delayed-Action) Trick

Polyphemus respondit sē vulnus gravissimum accēpissee. Cum Cyclōpes tamen posteā quaesīvissent quis hoc fēcisset, ille respondit Nēminem sē vulnerāvisse. Hōc audītō ūnus ē Cyclōpibus, “Sī nēmō tē vulnerāvit, certē tantus dolor tibi est,” inquit, “propter cōnsilium deōrum, quibuscum pugnāre nec possumus nec volumus.” Hoc cum ille dīxisset, abiērunt Cyclōpes arbitrātī Polyphēmum furōre captum esse.

And a Third to Escape

Polyphēmus ubi sociōs suōs abīsse sēnsit, furōre vērō victus Ulixem iterum petere coepit, sed eum nōn invēnit. Tandem autem saxum ē portā ēgit, ut animālia in agrōs exīrent. Tum ipse sub portā sēdit, et terga (*backs*) omnium animālium manibus trāctābat (*touched*), nē virī inter ea exīre possent.

Id cum vīdisset Ulixēs, intellēxit nūllam spem sibi in vīribus esse. Itaque ad fugiendum hoc cōnsilium cēpit. Illā nocte duo animālia quae maxima vidēbantur coēgit et jūnxit. Ūnum ex sociōs suīs sub hīs duōbus animālibus ita posuit ut tōtus tegerētur. Māne tandem, omnibus sociōs ita positīs, animālia hominēs ferentia ad portam ēgit. Postquam Polyphēmus terga eōrum manibus tractāvit, eīs exīre licuit. Ulixēs, cum magnō gaudiō vīdisset omnia fēlīciter efficī, ipse sub ūnō maximō animālī fūgit.

Hōc cōnsiliō ūsus Ulixēs cum sociōs celerrimē ad lītus contendit. Ibi omnēs ab eīs quī ad nāvem relictī erant libenter acceptī sunt. Hī cum trēs diēs eōs exspectāvissent, putāvērunt eōs in perīculō esse et juvandī causā ēgredī parābant.

imperium sine fīne dedī

potior, potīrī (4), **potītus sum** – *get possession of* (+ Abl.)

ūtor, ūtī (3), **ūsus sum** – *use, employ* (+ Abl.)

imperium, imperīi, n. – *command, power, rule*

multitūdō, multitūdinis, f. – *great number, crowd, multitude, majority*

tandem (adv.) – *at last, finally*

Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs (“PUFF V” Deponents)

Five Latin deponent verbs take an ablative noun, rather than an accusative. In English we must translate the noun in the ablative as the direct object of the deponent verb. In this lesson you will learn two such verbs, **ūtor**, *use*, and **potior**, *get/gain possession of*. The other three are **fruor**, *enjoy*, **fungor**, *perform*, and **vescor**, *eat*. Together their initial letters spell PUFF V, a handy phrase for remembering these FIVE special deponents.

- Sagittis** bene ūtor. *I use the arrows well.*
Finibus eōrum potīris. *You get possession of their territory.*

Dative of Possession

A noun in the dative case together with **sum** can express possession. In translating this construction, make the dative the subject and use *has/have* as the verb; make the Latin nominative the direct object.

- Liber mihi est.** *I have the book.* (Literally, *The book is to me.*)
Multī equī eis fuērunt. *They had many horses.*

**59 A**

1. Fēminae facilius sequēbantur quod equī ūtēbantur.
2. Tantā cupiditāte rēgnī superātus est ut tandem rēgem interficere audēret.
3. Sex filiae nōbīs sunt; cuique eārum ūnus equus est.
4. Quaerit quis imperiō exercitūs Rōmānī potiātur.
5. Eī in animō est hoc iter facere ut pācem cum gentibus populō Rōmānō inimīcīs faciat.
6. Tribus hōrīs exercitus oppidō potītus est; ita imperātum ducis effectum est.
7. Magister malus ā tantā multitūdine mātrum circumventus est ut fugere nōn posset.
8. Amīcī nostrī lātissimē vagantēs multō aurō potītī sunt.
9. Frūmentō ūtēminī quod agricolae parāvērunt.
10. Quō diē tandem, magister optime, hōc librō ūtī dēsistēmus?

59 B

1. We have taken possession of very many things and we are now using them.
2. So great is the reward that everyone is trying to find the boys.
3. These soldiers have greater strength. I say (**negō**) that you are not telling the truth (a true thing).
4. Do not think that you (s.) will easily get possession of the wise queen's territory.
5. Your father told us that the rule of the Roman people was being destroyed by these barbarous tribes.
6. The angry crowd used force to kill the consuls and many good citizens.
7. At that time the Roman women had a good reputation on account of their brave deeds.
8. In order that we may not get possession of their city, it is being fortified by the citizens with long walls.
9. Why have I not been allowed to use the ships which I rescued from the waves?
10. You (pl.) no longer have hope of winning; hand over your weapons and seek peace.

Out of Danger?

Ulixēs cum in eō locō manēre nōllet, celerrimē proficīscī cōnstituit. Omnes igitur in nāvem īre jussit. Cum Graecī altō (*the deep*) nōn potītī essent, tamen Ulixēs magnā vōce clāmāre ausus est: "Tū, Polyphēme, lēgēs deōrum nōn timuistī. Nōbīs nūllum auxilium dedistī, quamquam nōs in tē bonam volunātātem mōnstrāvimus. Nunc tamen facile vidēre potes vīrēs tuās esse minōrēs imperiō lēgibusque deōrum. Dīs semper sunt summae vīrēs. Nunc dīs ego ducibus tē vīcī. Ad illud tēctum pulcherrimum tuum redī! Numquam iterum corpora hominum – tibi tam grāta – edēbis."

Hāc vōce audītā Polyphēmus maximē īrātus ad mare cucurrit. Ubi nāvem ā lītore abesse intellēxit, magnum saxum manū raptum in eum locum conjēcit ex quō vōcem venīre sēnsit. Nāvis autem satis longum spatium āfuit ut saxō nōn vulnerārētur.

The Land of the Winds

Pauca mīlia passuum ab eō locō vectus Ulixēs ad īnsulam Aeoliam pervēnit. Haec erat terra ventōrum, quibus rēx nōmine Aeolus (*Aeolus*) erat. Rēx ipse Graecōs libenter accēpit et eīs persuāsit ut paucōs diēs in rēgnō suō manērent. Cum sociī ē labōribus sē recēpissent¹⁵, Ulixēs, nē annī tempore ā marī prohiberētur, nāvigāre cōnstituit. Sociīs igitur ita dīxit: "Nōs sine ūllā morā proficīscī oportet." Aeolus, quī sēnsit Ulixem abīre magnopere cupere, eī proficīscentī magnum saccum (*bag*) dedit in quō omnēs ventōs praeter ūnum posuerat. Hunc ūnum ventum līberum relīquit quī hominī ab Aeoliā ad Ithacam nāvigantī erat secundus. Ulixēs hoc dōnum libenter accēpit. Brevī tempore omnibus rēbus ad proficīscendum parātīs ē portū ēgressus est.

¹⁵ Here sē recipere means *to recover (from)*.

multum legendum esse, non multa

audeō, audēre (2), **ausus sum** (semi-deponent) – *dare*
condō, condere (3), **condidī, conditus** – *found, establish, build*
legō, legere (3), **lēgī, lēctus** – *gather, choose, read*

alter, altera, alterum (Gen. s. **alterīus**; Dat. s. **alterī**) – *the other* (of two)
neuter, neutra, neutrum (Gen. s. **neutrīus**; Dat. s. **neutrī**) – *neither* (of two)
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum (Gen. s. **ūllīus**; Dat. s. **ūllī**) – *any, some*
uter, utra, utrum (Gen. s. **utrīus**; Dat. s. **utrī**) – *which?* (of two)
uterque, utraque, utrumque (Gen. s. **utrīusque**; Dat. s. **utrīque**) – *each* (of two), *both*

“Terrible Ten” Pronomial Adjectives

Ten common Latin adjectives of the type **bonus, -a, -um** have irregular endings in the genitive and dative singular only, **-īus** and **-ī**, respectively. All other forms are regular. (Note that you have already seen these two endings in demonstratives, relatives, and interrogatives: **ill-īus, e-ī, cu-ī.**) Learn the list of ten given below, as well as the declension of **alius**.

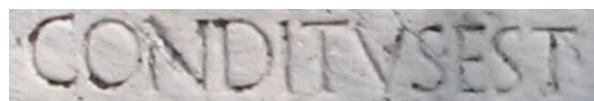
alius, alia, aliud, other, another	tōtus, tōta, tōtum, whole, entire
alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two)	ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, any, some
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two)	ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, no, none	uter, utra, utrum, which? (of two)
sōlus, sōla, sōlum, only, alone	uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both

alius, alia, aliud, other

	SING		PLUR	
	M	F	M	F
NOM	alius	alia	aliūd	aliae
GEN	alīus	alīus	alīus	alīārum
DAT	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs
ACC	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs
ABL	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs

Semi-Deponent Verbs

A few Latin verbs are regular in some tenses, deponent in others. **Audeō** is regular in the present system but deponent in the perfect system. The principal parts indicate this characteristic: **audeō, audēre, ausus sum** (no perfect active form because there are no active forms in the perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect). A little care must be taken, then, when you encounter passive forms of such verbs: **proelium audēbitur, battle will be dared; vir pugnāre ausus est, the man has dared to fight.**



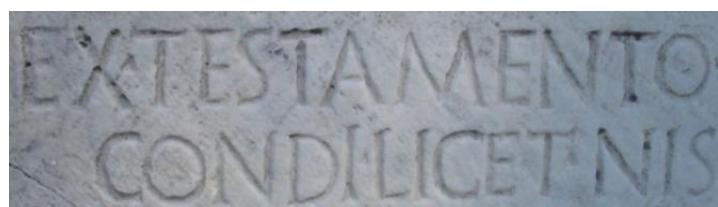
Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome

**60 A**

1. Sōlīne huic gentī urbem novam condere licet?
2. Impetus barbarōrum tam ācriter factus est ut paucī ē Rōmānīs sine ūllō vulnere fugerent.
3. Uterque equus tibi est. Utrō in hōc itinere ūsus es?
4. Māter perīculum timēns filium minōrem mittit quī frātrem in silvā petat.
5. Numquam intellegam quam ob causam neuter cōnsulum ab alterō cōnsilium petat.
6. Propter animum suum rēgīna tōtī exercituī praeſiciētur.
7. Illa virgō, cum audīvisset templa utrīusque urbis dēlēta esse, p̄rīcipēs statim lēgit.
8. Magnae vīrēs eī sunt sed in hōc opere auxiliō ūnūs amīcī ūtī vult.
9. Hīs rēbus ā fortissimīs virīs bene gestīs tamen mājōra effēcī quod hunc pessimum cīvem ā moenibus urbis reppulī.
10. Cum facilius sit noctū fugere, mediā nocte proficīscēmur.

60 B

1. The two goddesses were wonderful; each used a heavy sword.
2. He defeated the other wing without the aid of any ally.
3. While the enemy were waiting for night, we found another route.
4. The terrified soldier reported that the army of each consul had been destroyed.
5. He finally persuaded the other nation that it not undertake a war.
6. My sister warned me in such a way that I did not receive those men having been rejected by many good citizens.
7. You (pl.) are carrying on things so bravely that you will preserve the safety of the entire nation.
8. The woman had two sisters. Which one did you meet?
9. Since the others are departing, it is not right for me to read another book.
10. The thing was so easy that we wives did it alone.



Portion of Euhodus Inscription, ca. C.E.
Via Appia near Rome

Ludus 61

*Gerundive
Gerundive to express purpose*

The Sailors' Folly

Novem diēbus in cōspectum Ithaceae secundissimō ventō vectī erant. Ulixēs, cum hoc tōtum tempus vigilāre nōn dēstitisset, tandem somnō victus est. Sociī, quī saepe rogāverant quid in illō saccō esset, cum ducem suum somnō captum vidērent, saccum aperīre ausī sunt. Crēdēbant quidem aurum in eō esse. Itaque cupiditās aurī eōs vīcit.

Ventī ē saccō ērūpērunt et maximā vī in omnēs partēs suprā mare fūgērunt. Tantae undae subitō coortae sunt ut Graecī eīs resistere nōn possent sed in eandem partem, ex quā profectī erant, ferrentur. Ulixēs quō in locō rēs esset statim intellēxit; saccum apertum, Ithacam post tergum relictam vīdit. Magnā īrā sociīs dīxit eōs scelus pessimum fēcisse; nunc eōs propter cupiditātem pecūniae nūllam spem Ithaceae videndae habēre. Cum ad īnsulam Aeolī iterum pervēnissent, duodecim ē sociīs ad auxilium rēgis petendum dēlēgit. Eōs mīsit quī rem ad Aeolum dēferrent.

Sōciīs Ulixis procul vīsīs rēx putāvit sē rem huic parem numquam vīdisse. Cum Graecī dōnō ējus ūtī possent, tamen nōn ad Ithacam sed iterum ad Aeoliam vectī erant. Tam graviter perturbātus est ut negāret sē cum eīs conventūrum esse. Mīsit lēgātum quī haec dīcēret: “Facile intellegere possum deōs vōs ūdisse. Dī hominēs quibus sunt mentēs malae semper ūdērunt. Nūlla cīvitās cum eīs sociētātem facere vult. Mē igitur inimīcōs deōrum ē fīnibus meīs repellere oportet, nē dīs adversīs rēgnum amittam. Vōbīs igitur imperō ut statim hinc abeātis. Numquam redīte!”

in cīvitāte līberā linguam mentemque līberās esse dēbēre

augeō, augēre (2), **auxī, auctus** – increase, enlarge

ōdī, ōdisse (3), **ōsus** (defective) – hate, dislike

perturbō, perturbāre (1), **perturbāvī, perturbātus** – throw into confusion, alarm

resistō, resistere (3), **restitū**, — – resist, oppose (intrans. + dat.)

aciēs, aciēī, f. – *line of battle, battle line*

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f. – *state, community*

lēgātus, lēgātī, m. – *officer, envoy, ambassador*

pars, partis, f. – *part, direction, section;*

in omnēs partēs – *in all directions*

societās, societātis, f. – *alliance, association*

duodecim (indecl. adj.) – twelve

fīrmus, firma, firmum – strong, stable

pār, paris (adj. + Dat.) – equal, like

hīnc – from here, hence

The Gerundive

The term “gerundive” is another name for the future passive participle, which you have already learned (Lesson 36). Since it is a participle, it is a verbal adjective, with properties of both a verb and an adjective. (The gerund, which you have also learned [Lesson 50], is a verbal noun.)

Like the gerund, the gerundive may appear in some of the common case constructions you have learned. Since it is an adjective, however, it will always be modifying a noun. In translating a gerundive, make that noun the direct object of the gerundive.

Fīnem bellī gerendī facere nōluit. *He was unwilling to make an end of waging war.*

Quaesīvit dē cōnsiliīs capiendīs. *He asked about forming plans.*

Cupidus sorōrīs videndae erās. *You were desirous of seeing your sister.*

Gerundive Expressing Purpose

The first specialized use of the gerundive is one that you have already learned for the gerund (Lesson 50). Like the gerund, the gerundive can be used in the accusative case with **ad** or in the genitive case with **causā** to express purpose.

GERUND

Pugnandī causā vēnit. *He came for the sake of fighting.*

Ad pugnandum vēnit. *He came for the purpose of fighting.*

GERUNDIVE

Urbis occupandae causā vēnērunt. *They came for the sake of capturing the city.*

Ad pācem petendam vēnērunt. *They came for the purpose of seeking peace.*

Notice that the gerundive must agree with its noun in case, number, and gender.

**61 A**

1. Postrīdiē in urbem ad uxōrem meam dēfendendam vēnī.
2. Impetus hostium tam ācer erat ut agmen perturbāret.
3. Cōpiae ad hostēs oppugnandōs coāctae erant.
4. Hī agricolae equīs trāns flūmen vectī sunt, quod pōns (*bridge*) nōn firmus vidēbātur.
5. Illō diē partēs parēs frūmentī cīvibus datae erant.
6. Brevī tempore haec cīvitās duodecim lēgātōs mīsit quī auxilium ā rēgīnā peterent.
7. Sī exercitus vester aciēī hostium restiterit, cōpiae nostrae eōs circumvenīre facile poterunt.
8. Pars legiōnis alterīus trāns flūmen cōnstituitur nē hostibus sit potestās trānseundī.
9. Sociētātem quae multōs annōs nōbis grātissima fuit nunc ūdimus.
10. Cūr illud praemium cui nūllum aliud est pār postulāre nōn ausa es?

61 B

1. There are three parts to this plan.
2. You (s.) have saved the ships by resisting very bravely.
3. For the sake of increasing her knowledge, she stayed at home many hours today.
4. In no land have you (pl.) found a state equal to this one.
5. It is easy to see why they are resisting the army of that city with all their strength.
6. The commander sent both officers with three soldiers to learn the nature of the mountain.
7. In one hour the girls made an end of fleeing.
8. All men do not have the same nature, but his crimes are so great that they can not be endured.
9. Although we hated the actions (**rēs**) of the evil king, we had not dared to kill him.
10. The leader persuaded twelves tribes to make an alliance with us.

Another Dangerous Island

Posteā Graecī īinsulae cuidam appropinquāvērunt in quā Circē, filia Sōlis, habitābat. Ulixēs ad auxilium petendum ēgredī cōnstituit; cognōverat enim nihil frūmentī jam in nāve esse. Sociīs igitur ad sē vocātīs, “Frūmentum nōbīs, amīcī,” inquit, “quaerendum est.” Omnēs tamen constitērunt ; ducī nihil dīxērunt. Nēmō enim hunc labōrem suscipere volēbat. Sibi ita dīcēbant: “Multī morte crūdēlī caesī sunt quī in spēluncam Polyphēmī ēgressī erant.” Mox magna contrōversia (*argument*) inter eōs oriēbātur quod nēmō nāvem relinquere voluit.

Tandem rēs ducī cōnstituenda erat. Ulixēs ad pācem faciendam sociōs in duās manūs posuit. Īnī Eurylochum, virum virtūte firmissimum, praefēcit; alterī sē praefēcit. Tum hī inter sē sortītī sunt (*choose by lot*) uter in terram ēgrederētur. Hōc factō, Eurylochus sorte (*by lot*) dēlēctus est. Ille cum vīgintī aliīs missus est quī rem susciperet.

The House of Circe

Hīs rēbus ita cōnstitūtīs, iter eīs, quī dēlēctī erant, in interiōrem partem īinsulae faciendum erat. Tantus timor animōs eōrum occupāverat ut vix ambulāre possent. Vix quidem poterant eī ad nāvem relictī spem sustinēre; crēdēbant sē sociōs suōs numquam iterum vīsūrōs. Illī autem postquam parvum spatium iērunt, tēctum quoddam cōnspexērunt pulcherrimē aedificātum. Cum ad hoc tēctum adīssent, vōcem dulcissimam ūnīus fēminaē audīvērunt. Tantum fuit gaudium virōrum ut fēminam statim vocārent. Ipsa Circē exiit et omnēs in tēctum dūxit. Eurylochus autem fēminaē nōn crēdēns ibi manēre cōnstituit, sed cēterī sine timōre iniērunt.

pedibus timor addidit ālās

caedō, caedere (3), **cecīdī, caesus** – kill, slaughter
cōsistō, cōsistere (3), **cōstitū**, — — make a stand, halt, stand
cōspiciō, cōspicere (3), **cōspexī, cōspectus** – catch sight of, observe
opprimō, opprimere (3), **oppresī, oppressus** – overwhelm, crush
orior, orīrī (4), **ortus sum** – arise, rise, spring (from)
sustineō, sustinēre (2), **sustinuī, sustentus** – withstand, endure, support

timor, timōris, m. – fear

enim (postpositive conj.) – for
vix – hardly, scarcely

Passive Periphrastic

The second of the two specialized uses of the gerundive is with forms of **sum** to express obligation or necessity. In translating this construction you should use the literal translation of the gerundive/future passive participle (e.g., *must be loved, must be warned*).

Urbs dēlenda est. *The city must be destroyed/has to be destroyed.*

PAST TIME: **Templum dēfendendum fuit.** *The temple had to be defended.*

Dative of Agent

The dative case is used to express the agent in the passive periphrastic construction. In English, we usually translate this dative with the preposition *by*.

In some cases, however, it may be preferable to translate the passive periphrastic actively and make the dative noun the subject, as in the second version of each translation below.

Urbs nōbīs dēfendenda est. *The city must be defended by us.*
We must defend the city.

Id mihi agendum est. *This must be done by me.*
I must do this.

When the neuter of the gerundive is used impersonally (i.e., not in agreement with a neuter noun or pronoun) in the passive periphrastic, an active English translation is required:

Tibi contendendum erat. *You had to hurry.* (literally, *It had to be hurried by you.*)
Nōbīs fortiter pugnandum est. *We must fight bravely.* (literally, *It must be fought bravely by us.*)



62 A

1. Oppidum vōbīs mūniendum est (erat, erit); hinc mihi proficīscendum est.
2. Sperāmus enim nūllum bellum inter nōs ortūrum esse.
3. In cōsule dēligendō et scientia lēgum et virtūs postulandae sunt.
4. Magna unda nāvem nostram oppressit; nautae ipsī ad lītus venīre vix potuērunt.
5. Patrēs hīc consistent; mātrēs ad aquam inveniendam mittentur.
6. Ante noctem tibi cōnstituendum est quid crās faciendum sit.
7. Mīlitēs, quī in altīs undīs nūllam spem cōsistendī jam habuērunt, ad nāvēs rediērunt.
8. Quam ob causam simul atque illa dua animālia cōspexistis, utrumque caedere cōnātī estis?
9. Cīvēs propter timōrem suum perturbātī arbitrābantur potestātem cōsulūm augendām esse.
10. Tanta vulnera accipiēbant ut impetū nostrū sustinēre nōn jam possent.

62 B

1. At the second hour a strong line of battle must be stationed at the foot of the mountain.
2. The women had to gather a band for the purpose of finding their sons.
3. Since she had written so much, we were scarcely able to read the very long book.
4. So evil was his spirit that he never gave fire and water to those seeking (them).
5. The town will have to be attacked by all our soldiers; for the enemy will resist us very fiercely.
6. Did you understand why fear had arisen among the citizens of this state?
7. For we, after having been alarmed, sent this legion for the purpose of sustaining their attack.
8. Having gotten possession of the other camp, they decided to stay there for one night.
9. You, my daughters, must halt at the river which is the widest of all.
10. The messenger reported that another legion, crushed by the multitude of the enemy, had been slaughtered.

The Magic Potion

Ubi in tēctō constitērunt, magnam cēnam (*meal*) invēnērunt. Circē ab eīs petīvit ut jacērent et edērent. Ea autem in vīnum quod servī tulērunt medicāmentum (*drug*) quoddam posuerat. Cum Graecī id bibissent, gravī somnō subitō oppressī sunt.

Tum Circē, quae artis magicae (*magic art*) summam scientiam habēbat, baculō (*with a rod*) quod gerēbat caput eōrum tetigit (*touched*). Hōc factō omnēs in porcōs (*swine*) subitō mutātī sunt et ā Circē ē tēctō āctī sunt.

Interim Eurylochus nescīvit quid in tēctō accideret, sed postquam diū exspectāvit nec sociī ē tēctō exiērunt, ad nāvem redīre contendit. Cum Ulixem et sociōs suōs tandem cōspexisset, timōre ita perturbābātur ut quid vīdisset vix narrāre posset. Ulixēs autem, ubi satis intellēxit quō in locō rēs essent, gladiō suō raptō Eurylochō imperāvit ut sine morā viam mōnstrāret. Ille tamen ab Ulike petere coepit nē illī fēminaē sē traderet. “Sī tū, dux noster, occīsus eris, salūs omnium summō in perīculō erit.”

Ulixēs autem respondit, “Ipse sōlus rem suscipiam. Vōbīs licet, comitēs, sī vēnire nōn vultis, hīc manēre. Mihi quaerendum est quid in tēctō hūjus fēminaē gestum sit.” Hoc cum magnā vōce dīxisset, nūllō sequente iter facere coepit. Cum pauca mīlia passuum iter fēcisset, tēctum dē quō Eurylochus eum monuerat cōspexit. Sine timōre autem eī appropinquābat.

nōlī jūdicāre nē jūdicēris

accidō, accidere (3), accidī , — — happen
jūdicō, jūdicāre (1), jūdicāvī, jūdicātus — judge, deem
polliceor, pollicērī (2), pollicitus sum — promise

LESSON 63

Perfect Subjunctive

The fourth and last tense of the subjunctive is the perfect. All verbs, including irregular ones, form the active voice by adding to the stem of the third principal part the endings **-erim**, **-erīs**, **-erit**, **-erīmus**, **-erītis**, **erint**. The passive is formed by combining the fourth principal part and the present subjunctive of **sum**. Below are the forms of the perfect active and passive subjunctive of the models verbs.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

	amō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō	
ACTIVE						
1 st	amāverim	monuerim	dūixerim	cēperim	audīverim	ENDINGS -erim
2 nd	amāverīs	monuerīs	dūixerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs	-erīs
3 rd	amāverit	monuerit	dūixerit	cēperit	audīverit	-erit
1 st	amāverīmus	monuerīmus	dūixerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus	-erīmus
2 nd	amāverītis	monuerītis	dūixerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis	-erītis
3 rd	amāverint	monuerint	dūixerint	cēperint	audīverint	-erint
PASSIVE						
1 st	amātus sim	monitus sim	ductus sim	captus sim	audītus sim	
2 nd	amātus sīs	monitus sīs	ductus sīs	captus sīs	audītus sīs	
3 rd	amātus sit	monitus sit	ductus sit	captus sit	audītus sit	
1 st	amātī sīmus	monitī sīmus	ductī sīmus	captī sīmus	audītī sīmus	
2 nd	amātī sītis	monitī sītis	ductī sītis	captī sītis	audītī sītis	
3 rd	amātī sint	monitī sint	ductī sint	captī sint	audītī sint	

Sequence of Tenses, Step 2

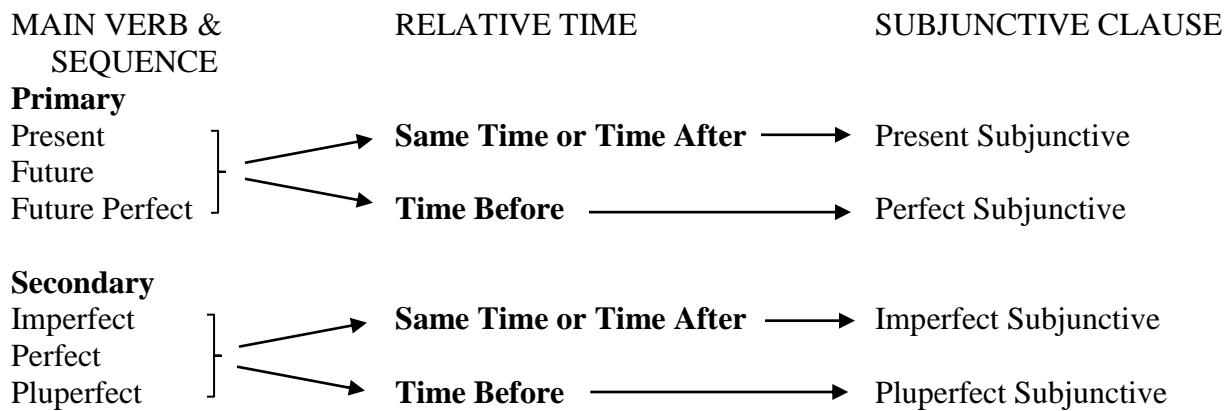
The tenses of the subjunctive mood, like those of participles and infinitives, show relative time only:

Present and Imperfect: SAME TIME or TIME AFTER the main verb.

Perfect and Pluperfect: TIME BEFORE the main verb.

In addition, the present and perfect subjunctive are used when the main verb is in the present, future, or future perfect tense. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used when

the main verb is in any past tense (imperfect, perfect, pluperfect). Because the tense of the main verb affects which tense is used in the subjunctive clause which normally follows (*sequēns*), this system is referred to as the “sequence of tenses”. Below is a complete chart of these sequences.



In constructions such as purpose, volition, and result clauses, which always refer to an action going on at the same time as or after that of the main verb, the tense of the main verb will determine whether the present or imperfect subjunctive is used.

Time After in Primary Sequence	in Secondary Sequence
Tē vocō ut mē juvēs. <i>I am calling you that <u>you may help me.</u></i>	Tē vocāvī ut mē juvārēs. <i>I called you that <u>you might help me.</u></i>

The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, which must refer to actions occurring before that of the main verb, are normally used only in **cum** clauses and indirect questions, i.e., subjunctive clauses that can refer to prior events.

Time Before in Primary Sequence	in Secondary Sequence
Saepe quaerit quis templum viderit. <i>He often asks who <u>has seen / saw</u> the temple.</i>	Saepe quæsīvit quis templum vidiſſet. <i>He often asked who <u>had seen</u> the temple.</i>



Conjugate in the perfect subjunctive:

active:	a) jūdicō	b) caedō
passive:	a) polliceor	b) audeō

Explain fully the use of the both the tense and the mood in the underlined verbs below:

Cum sorōrem yīdissem, statim sēnsī quid faceret.

63 A

1. Intellegō quid accidat. Tribus hōrīs intellēxī quid accideret.
2. Intellegō quid illō diē acciderit. Intellēxī quid accidisset.
3. Haec conjunx pollicita est sē flūmen trānsitūram esse.
4. Uterque mīles ad summum collem cucurrit ut rēgī signum daret.
5. Lēgibus Rōmānīs ūtī dēbēmus ut rēs nostrās bene gerāmus.
6. Imperātor, cum jūdicet hunc virum omnēs cīvēs suōs virtūte superāre, eum legiōnī praeſicit.
7. Dum filiī exspectant, mātrem ē templō exeuntem cōnspexērunt.
8. Quid amīcīs pollicitus sit mihi dīcit.
9. Cum multa audērētis, tamen paucās rēs bonās aut fortēs gessistis.
10. Nōnne vidēs tē ab omnibus cīvibus bonīs diem noctemque spectārī ?

63 B

1. Although we have completed this great work, we must now undertake another labor.
2. The gods gave us a good leader, lest our enemy destroy us.
3. Do you understand why (not **cūr**) he abandoned his mother?
4. For if they choose him king, he will never put you in charge of the army.
5. But why must the state be severely alarmed on account of the crime of a few (men)?
6. She made the journey to tell her father about her son's accomplishments (**rēs gestae**).
7. The master sends his son to lead the horse out of the field.
8. These affairs had been carried on in such a way that many wished to flee from the city.
9. In asking he learned which legion (of two) had sustained the attack a little more bravely.
10. In the morning they will urge the consul to find out what has happened.
11. Since she wrote so many books, we cannot read them all.

Ludus 64

*Fearing clause
Indirect dependent clause (I.D.C.)*

A Bit of Divine Aid

Dum Ulixēs prope tēctum stat, subitō juvenis pulcherimus eī occurrit. Hic Ulixem manū firmā rapuit. “Quid agis?” inquit. “Nōnne scīs quid acciderit? Hīc Circē amīcōs tuōs, quī ex hominibus in porcōs mūtātī sunt, cēpit et tenet. Nōnne timēs nē illa tē quoque mūtet?” Ulixēs deum Mercurium recognōvit; tamen negāvit sē sociōs suōs dēsertūrum. Ab cōnsiliō suō repellī nōn potuit. Cum Mercurius id sēnsisset, herbam (*herb*) quandam eī dedit quae eum dēfenderet. “Hanc cape,” inquit. “Tē moneō ut, sī Circē tibi appropinquet, tū gladiō impetum in eam faciās.” Mercurius postquam fīnem dīcendī fēcit, ē cōnspectū ējus fūgit.

Deinde Ulixēs ad portam constitit et clāmāvit ut Circē ipsa sē ostenderet. Cum illa ipsa eum ibi repperisset, hortāta est ut ad cēnam venīret. Post cēnam optimam Ulixī vīnum dedit. Ille cum sentīret medicāmentum in id positum esse, propter herbam sibi datam nōn veritus est nē in porcum mūtarētur. Vīnum statim bībit. Circē caput ējus baculō tetigit, sed cum dolōre vīdit eum integrum esse. Tanta quidem vīs erat ējus herbae quam Ulixī Mercurius dederat ut medicāmentum nihil efficere posset. Ulixēs autem, ubi sē hominem etiam esse sēnsit, gladiō eam petīvit. Circē cum potestātem suam nihil agere intellēxisset, eum ḍrāre coepit nē sē caederet.

Men Again

Ulixēs ubi sēnsit eam sē timēre, postulāvit ab eā ut sociōs suōs sine morā in hominēs mūtāret. Circē hīs rēbus graviter perturbāta ad pedēs ējus sē jēcit et pollicita est sē quae ille imperāvisset omnia factūram esse.

Additional Reading

Circē porcōs ad sē mittī jussit. Multitūdō porcōrum signō datō iniit. Cum ducem suum vīdissent, magnō dolōre oppressī sunt quod nihil dē rēbus suīs dīcere poterant. Circē tamen corpora eōrum in ea hominum statim mūtāvit. Ulixēs cum jūdicāret Circēn (acc.) bonam voluntātem in Graecōs nunc ostendere, nūntium ad lītus mīsit, quī reliquīs sociīs amīcōs receptōs esse dīceret. Illī hīs rēbus cōgnītīs statim ad tēctum Circēs (gen.) convēnērunt. Summō cum gaudiō omnēs sociī conjūncī sunt.

On the Sea Again

Hīs rēbus gestīs Circē jūdicāvit Ulixem omnibus hominibus et virtūte et animō praestāre. Quā dē causā ūdium ējus in amōrem mūtātum est. Ulixī et sociīs ējus tanta dōna nōn sōlum pollicita est sed libenter dedit ut illī ūnum annum ibi manērent. Post hoc spatium Ulixēs magnā cupiditātē Ithacae videndae captus est. Sociīs igitur vocātīs quid in animō habēret ostendit. Eōs celerrimē omnia ad proficīscendum parāre jussit. Hoc opus tribus diēbus effēcērunt. Circē cum haec cōspexisset, ab Ulike petīvit nē sē, quae eum magnopere amāret, dēsereret. Ulixēs tamen, nē annī tempore ā marī prohiberētur, sibi proficīscendum esse arbitrātus est. Brevī tempore Graecī profectī sunt.

Multī quidem labōrēs Ulixī suscipiendī erant ut tandem ad īnsulam suam pervenīret, quōs tamen in hōc librō longum est scrībere.

integer vītae scelerisque pūrus

praestō, praestāre (1), **praestitī, praestitum**

(compound + Dat.) – *stand before, excel*

vereor, verērī (2), **veritus sum** – *fear*

amīcitia, -ae, f. – *friendship*

jūs, jūris, n. – *right, rights, law*

integer, integra, integrum – *whole, entire, fresh*

Clauses of Fear

The subjunctive is used in clauses expressing fear. Such clauses are governed by verbs meaning *fear* (**timeō, vereor**) or by equivalent expressions (e.g., **perīculum est**, *there is a danger*). Study the examples below carefully.

Notice that positive fearing clauses are introduced by **nē**, negative ones by **ut**.

Timeō nē hoc faciat. *I fear that he will do this (or that he is doing this).*

Timuī ut hoc faceret. *I feared that he would NOT do this (or that he was not doing this).*

Indirect Dependent Clause

Simply stated, a subordinate clause within a form of indirect discourse has its verb in the subjunctive; you should translate such a verb with the English indicative. The category of indirect discourse includes the following:

Indirect Statement	<i>He said that we praised the girl.</i>
Indirect Question	<i>He asked why we praised the girl.</i>
Substantive Clause of Volition	<i>He commanded that we praise the girl.</i>
Clauses of Purpose	<i>We went there in order to praise the girl.</i>
Clause of Fear	<i>He fears that we will not praise the girl.</i>

All these types of subordinate clauses express indirectly what someone is perceiving, intending, saying, ordering, and so on. In effect, they express someone's thought indirectly.

Sometimes, of course, that thought may involve not just a single clause but a dependent (or subordinate) clause as well. For example, *we loved the boy who lived on the island*, has a relative clause depending on the verb *we loved*. If we put this sentence into indirect statement, we could have, for example, the sentence *I said that we praised the girl who lived on the island*, which we can analyze as follows:

<u>MAIN CLAUSE</u>	<u>INDIRECT STATEMENT</u>		
<i>I said</i>			
	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>MAIN CLAUSE OF IND. STAT. <i>that we praised the girl</i></td> <td>I.D.C. (RELATIVE) <i>who lived on the island.</i></td> </tr> </table>	MAIN CLAUSE OF IND. STAT. <i>that we praised the girl</i>	I.D.C. (RELATIVE) <i>who lived on the island.</i>
MAIN CLAUSE OF IND. STAT. <i>that we praised the girl</i>	I.D.C. (RELATIVE) <i>who lived on the island.</i>		

In Latin, the main verb of indirect statement must be in the infinitive mood, but the verb of the dependent clause within the indirect statement must be in the subjunctive mood.

I said that we praised the girl who lived on the island.

Dīxī nōs puellam laudāre quae in īnsulā habitāret.

There are three basic types of the I.D.C., which are all types of clauses that normally take the indicative mood, but take the subjunctive when they are part of indirect discourse.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Relative | quī, quae, quod |
| 2. Quod Causal | quod |
| 3. Conditional | sī, nisi |

Study the examples below.

Scīvimus amīcōs nostrōs dōna ad templum ferre quod dea īrāta esset.

We knew that our friends brought gifts to the temple because the goddess was angry.

Miles ad illud cornū contendit ut ad eōs quī vulnerātī essent auxilium ferret.

The soldier hastened to that wing in order to bring help to those who had been wounded.

Credēbant sē fēlīcēs esse, sī aqua esset bona.

They believed that they were fortunate, if the water was good.



64 A

1. Verēmur nē puerī aurō potiantur. Veritus es ut mīles aurō potīrētur.
2. Dīxit puellam quae ē silvā ēgressa esset nunc marī propinquam esse.
3. Timeō ut exercitus sine cōpiīs integrīs impetum hostium sustineat.
4. Imperātor verēbātur nē illae trēs legiōnēs in flūmine ab hostibus circumvenīrentur.
5. Rēx arbitrātus est hostēs frūmentum quod ad exercitum missum esset captūrōs esse.
6. Omnibus frātribus suīs praestābat quod prīma et virtūte et scientiā erat.
7. Vērentēs nē ab hostibus opprimantur, moenia firmissima mūniunt.
8. Tālis sum ut perīculum sit nē rāna mihi sapientiā praestet.
9. Puella dīxit crās sē domī nōn mānsūram esse quod patrem in agrō labōrantem juvāre vellet.
10. Tē verērī vix oportet. Id enim quod pollicitus sum magnō gaudiō faciam.



Portion of Euhodus Inscription
Via Appia near Rome

64 B

1. In (respect to) many things you stand before us, but you are scarcely equal to any person in courage.
2. I ask who is being allowed to go to the mountain of the gods.
3. The soldiers said that they would obey (**faciō**) the commands that had been given.
4. While these things were going on (being carried on), he feared that the king would flee.
5. She commands you (pl.) to defend the rights of nations (**gēns**).
6. I did not know that I had been defeated because he surpassed me in knowledge.
7. Do not be afraid that certain wives will not praise their husbands.
8. For I persuaded him to resist the enemy's attack with fresh forces.
9. So great was their fear that they did not dare to give power to the citizens.
10. They denied that the ships, which were sailing toward the island, had been captured and destroyed.

magnus liber magnum malum

$\Omega \bullet \Omega \bullet \Omega \bullet \Omega$



Epitaph of Gaius Atilius Euhodus
Via Appia near Rome

APPENDIX I - FORMS

First Declension - Nouns

terra, f., *land*

SINGULAR

NOMINATIVE	terra , <i>a land, the land</i>	ENDINGS
GENITIVE	terrae , <i>of a land, the land</i>	-a
DATIVE	terrae , <i>to or for a land, the land</i>	-ae
ACCUSATIVE	terram , <i>a land, the land</i>	-ae
ABLATIVE	terrā , <i>by or with a land, the land</i>	-am -ā

PLURAL

NOMINATIVE	terrae , <i>lands, the lands</i>	ENDINGS
GENITIVE	terrārum , <i>of lands, the lands</i>	-ae
DATIVE	terrīs , <i>to or for lands, the lands</i>	-ārum
ACCUSATIVE	terrās , <i>lands, the lands</i>	-īs
ABLATIVE	terrīs , <i>by or with lands, the lands</i>	-ās -īs

Second Declensions - Nouns

equus, m., *horse***dōnum**, n., *gift*

SINGULAR

MASCULINE ENDINGS			NEUTER ENDINGS	
NOM	equus	-us	dōnum	-um
GEN	equī	-ī	dōnī	-ī
DAT	equō	-ō	dōnō	-ō
ACC	equum	-um	dōnum	-um
ABL	equō	-ō	dōnō	-ō

PLURAL

NOM	equī	-ī	dōna	-a
GEN	equōrum	-ōrum	dōnōrum	-ōrum
DAT	equīs	-īs	dōnīs	-īs
ACC	equōs	-ōs	dōna	-a
ABL	equīs	-īs	dōnīs	-īs

APPENDIX I - FORMS

	puer , m., <i>boy</i>	ager , m., <i>field</i>	vir , m., <i>man</i>
SINGULAR			
NOM	puer	ager	vir
GEN	puerī	agrī	virī
DAT	puerō	agrō	virō
ACC	puerum	agrum	virum
ABL	puerō	agrō	virō
PLURAL			
NOM	puerī	agrī	virī
GEN	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
DAT	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
ACC	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
ABL	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

Third Declension - Regular Nouns (Gen. Plur. in *-um*)

	dux , m., <i>leader</i>	lēx , f., <i>law</i>	frāter , m., <i>brother</i>	
SINGULAR				
NOM	dux	lēx	frāter	M/F ENDINGS
GEN	ducis	lēgis	frātris	-s or none
DAT	ducī	lēgī	frātrī	-is
ACC	ducem	lēgem	frātrem	-ī
ABL	duce	lēge	frātre	-em
PLURAL				
NOM	ducēs	lēgēs	frātrēs	-es
GEN	ducum	lēgum	frātrum	-um
DAT	ducibus	lēgibus	frātribus	-ibus
ACC	ducēs	lēgēs	frātrēs	-ēs
ABL	ducibus	lēgibus	frātribus	-ibus

flūmen, n., *river***genus**, n., *kind*

SINGULAR

NOM	flūmen	genus	NEUTER ENDINGS
GEN	flūminis	generis	-is
DAT	flūminī	generī	-ī
ACC	flūmen	genus	none (=nom.)
ABL	flūmine	genere	-e

PLURAL

NOM	flūmina	genera	-a
GEN	flūminum	generum	-um
DAT	flūminibus	generibus	-ibus
ACC	flūmina	genera	-a
ABL	flūminibus	generibus	-ibus

Third Declension - i-stem Nouns (Gen. Plur. in *-ium*)**urbs**, f., *city***collis**, m., *hill*

SINGULAR

NOM	urbs	collis	M/F ENDINGS
GEN	urbis	collis	-is or -s
DAT	urbī	collī	-ī
ACC	urbem	collēm	-em
ABL	urbe	colle	-e

PLURAL

NOM	urbēs	collēs	-ēs
GEN	urbium	collium	-ium
DAT	urbibus	collibus	-ibus
ACC	urbēs	collēs	-ēs
ABL	urbibus	collibus	-ibus

APPENDIX I - FORMS

	mare , n., <i>sea</i>		animal , n., <i>animal</i>
SINGULAR			
NOM	mare	animal	-e or none
GEN	maris	animālis	-is
DAT	marī	animālī	-ī
ACC	mare	animal	-e or none
ABL	marī	animālī	-ī
PLURAL			
NOM	maria	animālia	-ia
GEN	marium	animālium	-ium
DAT	maribus	animālibus	-ibus
ACC	maria	animālia	-ia
ABL	maribus	animālibus	-ibus

Fourth Declension - Nouns

	exercitus , m., <i>army</i>		cornū , n., <i>horn</i>
SINGULAR			
MASCULINE	ENDINGS	NEUTER	ENDINGS
NOM	exercitus	-us	cornū
GEN	exercitūs	-ūs	cornūs
DAT	exercituī	-uī	cornū
ACC	exercitum	-um	cornū
ABL	exercitū	-ū	cornū
PLURAL			
NOM	exercitūs	-ūs	cornua
GEN	exercituum	-uum	cornuum
DAT	exercitibus	-ibus	cornibus
ACC	exercitūs	-ūs	cornua
ABL	exercitibus	-ibus	cornibus

Fifth Declension - Nouns

rēs, f., *thing***diēs**, m., *day*

SINGULAR

NOM	rēs	diēs	ENDINGS
GEN	reī	diēī	-ēs
DAT	reī	diēī	-ēī or -ī
ACC	rem	diem	-ēī or -ī
ABL	rē	diē	-em

PLURAL

NOM	rēs	diēs	ENDINGS
GEN	rērum	diērum	-ēs
DAT	rēbus	diēbus	-ērum
ACC	rēs	diēs	-ēbus
ABL	rēbus	diēbus	-ēs

Irregular Nouns

deus, m., *god***vīs**, f., *force*

SINGULAR

NOM	deus	vīs
GEN	deī	vīs
DAT	deō	vī
ACC	deum	vim
ABL	deō	vī

PLURAL

NOM	dī	vīrēs
GEN	deōrum	vīriūm
DAT	dīs	vīribus
ACC	deōs	vīrēs
ABL	dīs	vīribus

First and Second Declensions - Adjectives

bonus, good

		SINGULAR				
		M	F	N		
NOM	bonus		bona	bonum		
GEN	bonī		bonae	bonī		
DAT	bonō		bonae	bonō		
ACC	bonum		bonam	bonum		
ABL	bonō		bonā	bonō		
PLURAL						
NOM	bonī		bonae		bona	
GEN	bonōrum		bonārum		bonōrum	
DAT	bonīs		bonīs		bonīs	
ACC	bonōs		bonās		bona	
ABL	bonīs		bonīs		bonīs	

liber, free

pulcher, beautiful

SINGULAR

	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM	līber	lībera	līberum	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrūm
GEN	līberī	līberae	līberī	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
DAT	līberō	līberae	līberō	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
ACC	līberum	līberam	līberum	pulchrūm	pulchram	pulchrūm
ABL	līberō	līberā	līberō	pulchrō	pulchra	pulchrō

PLURAL

	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM	līberī	līberae	lībera	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
GEN	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
DAT	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
ACC	līberōs	līberās	lībera	pulchrōs	pulchras	pulchra
ABL	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

Declension of Pronomial Adjectives

ūnus, one**alius, other**

SINGULAR

	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	alius	alia	aliud
GEN	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	alīus	alīus	alīus
DAT	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	alīī	alīī	alīī
ACC	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	alium	aliām	aliud
ABL	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	aliō	aliā	aliō

alter, the other (of two)**uter, which? (of two)**

NOM	alter	altera	alterum	uter	utra	utrum
GEN	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
DAT	alterī	alterī	alterī	utrī	utrī	utrī
ACC	alterum	alteram	alterum	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL	alterō	alterā	alterō	utrō	utrā	utrō

Third Declension - Adjectives of Three Endings

ācer, sharp

SINGULAR

	M	F	N
NOM	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

NOM	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
ABL	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Third Declension - Adjectives of Two Endings

omnis, all

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM	M & F omnis	N omne
GEN	omnis	omnis
DAT	omnī	omnī
ACC	omnem	omne
ABL	omnī	omnī
		M & F omnēs
		omnium
		omnibus
		omnia
		omnibus

Third Declension - Adjectives of One Ending

fēlīx, fortunate

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM	M & F fēlīx	N fēlīx
GEN	fēlīcis	fēlīcis
DAT	fēlīcī	fēlīcī
ACC	fēlīcem	fēlīx
ABL	fēlīcī	fēlīcī
		M & F fēlīcēs
		fēlīcium
		fēlīcibus
		fēlīcia
		fēlīcibus

Third Declension - Present Active Participles

amāns, loving

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM	M & F amāns	N amāns
GEN	amantis	amantis
DAT	amantī	amantī
ACC	amantem	amāns
ABL	amante	amante
		M & F amantēs
		amantium
		amantibus
		amantēs
		amantibus

Third Declension - Comparatives

longior, longer

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M & F	N	M & F	N
NOM	longior	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
GEN	longiōris	longiōris	longiōrum	longiōrum
DAT	longiōrī	longiōrī	longiōribus	longiōribus
ACC	longiōrem	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
ABL	longiōre	longiōre	longiōribus	longiōribus

Third Declension - Irregular Comparative

plūs, more

	SINGULAR (NOUN)		PLURAL (ADJECTIVE)	
	M & F	N	M & F	N
NOM	none	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN	none	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT	none	none	plūribus	plūribus
ACC	none	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
ABL	none	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

Regular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longus	longior, longius	longissimus
fēlīx	fēlīcior, fēlīcius	fēlīcissimus
potēns	potentior, potentius	potentissimus

Comparison of Adjectives in *-er*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
līber	līberior, līberius	liberrimus
pulcher	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus
ācer	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus

Comparison of Adjectives in *-ilis*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis	facilior, facilius	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior, difficilius	difficillimus
similis	similior, similius	simillimus
dissimilis	dissimilior, dissimilius	dissimillimus
humilis	humilior, humilius	humillimus

Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior, melius	optimus
malus	pējor, pējus	pessimus
magnus	mājor, mājus	maximus
parvus	minor, minus	minimus
multus	plūs	plūrimus

Regular Comparison of Adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longē	longius	longissimē
līberē	līberius	līberrimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
āriter	ārius	ācerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

Irregular Comparison of Adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene	melius	optimē
male	pējus	pessimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
magnopere	magis	maximē
parum	minus	minimē

Numerals

SIGN	CARDINAL	ORDINAL
I	ūnus	prīmus
II	duo	secundus
III	trēs	tertius
III, IV	quattuor	quārtus
V	quīnque	quīntus
VI	sex	sextus
VII	septem	septimus
VIII	octō	octāvus
VIII, IX	novem	nōnus
X	decem	decimus
XX	vīgintī	vīcēnsimus
C	centum	cēntēsimus
M	mīlle	mīllēsimus
MM	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

Declension of Certain Numerals

duo, two

	M	F	N
NOM	duo	duae	duo
GEN	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC	duōs, duo	duās	duo
ABL	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

trēs, three

mīlle, thousand

	M/F	N	M/F/N (ADJ.)	N (NOUN)
NOM	trēs	trīa	mīlle	mīlia
GEN	trīum	trīum	mīlle	mīlīum
DAT	tribus	tribus	mīlle	mīlibus
ACC	trēs	trīa	mīlle	mīlia
ABL	tribus	tribus	mīlle	mīlibus

APPENDIX I - FORMS

Declension of Personal Pronouns

	SINGULAR	
	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON
NOM	ego	tū
GEN	meī	tuī
DAT	mihi	tibi
ACC	mē	tē
ABL	mē	tē

	PLURAL	
NOM	nōs	vōs
GEN	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī
DAT	nōbīs	vōbīs
ACC	nōs	vōs
ABL	nōbīs	vōbīs

Declension of Reflexive Pronoun

	SINGULAR & PLURAL
	suī
	sibi
	sē, sēsē
	sē, sēsē

Declension of Demonstrative Pronouns/Adjectives

hic, this

ille, that

	SINGULAR					
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
GEN	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	illīus	illīus	illīus
DAT	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
ACC	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
ABL	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

	PLURAL					
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
GEN	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
ABL	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

is, this or that

	SINGULAR						PLURAL					
	M	F	N	M	F	N	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea						
GEN	ējus	ējus	ējus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum						
DAT	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs						
ACC	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea						
ABL	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs						

īdem, the same

	SINGULAR		
	M	F	N
NOM	īdem	eadem	idem
GEN	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem
DAT	eīdem	ēīdem	eīdem
ACC	eūndem	eāndem	idem
ABL	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	PLURAL		
	M	F	N
NOM	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
GEN	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
ACC	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

Declension of Intensive Pronoun**ipse, self**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

Declension of Relative Pronoun**quī, who, which, that**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Declension of Interrogative Pronoun

quis, who? which? what?

		SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M/F	N	M	F	N	
NOM	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae	
GEN	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
DAT	cui	cui	quiibus	quiibus	quiibus	
ACC	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae	
ABL	quō	quō	quiibus	quiibus	quiibus	

Declension of Interrogative Adjective

quī, which?

	M	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	F	N	M	F	N	
NOM	quī	quae	quod			
GEN	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus			
DAT	cui	cui	cui			<i>same as pronoun</i>
ACC	quem	quam	quod			
ABL	quō	quā	quō			

Declension of Indefinite Pronouns

quisque, each

	PRONOUN			ADJECTIVE		
	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM	quisque	quaequē	quidque / quicque	quisque	quaequē	quodque
GEN	cūjusque	cūjusque	cūjusque	cūjusque	cūjusque	cūjusque
DAT	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
ACC	quemque	quamque	quidque / quicque	quemque	quamque	quodque
ABL	quōque	quāque	quōque	quōque	quāque	quōque

quīdam, a certain

PRONOUN					
	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M/F	N	M	F	N
NOM	quīdam	quiddam	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN	cūjusdam	cūjusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT	cuidam	cuidam	qui ^{bus} dam	qui ^{bus} dam	qui ^{bus} dam
ACC	quendam	quiddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL	quōdam	quōdam	qui ^{bus} dam	qui ^{bus} dam	qui ^{bus} dam

ADJECTIVE					
	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	M	F	N	M	F
NOM	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam		
GEN	cūjusdam	cūjusdam	cūjusdam		
DAT	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	same as pronoun	
ACC	quendam	quandam	quoddam		
ABL	quōdam	quādam	quōdam		

Verbs

Five Regular Conjugations

First:	amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus, <i>love</i>
Second:	moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, <i>warn</i>
Third:	dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, <i>guide</i>
Third -iō:	capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, <i>seize</i>
Fourth:	audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, <i>hear</i>

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

amō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
amās	monēs	dūcis	capis	audīs
amat	monet	dūcīt	capit	audit
amāmus	monēmus	dūcīmus	capimus	audīmus
amātis	monētis	dūcītis	capitis	audītis
amant	monent	dūcīunt	capiunt	audiunt

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

amābam	monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
amābās	monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
amābat	monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
amābāmus	monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
amābātis	monēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
amābānt	monēbānt	dūcēbānt	capiēbānt	audiēbānt

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

amābō	monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiām
amābis	monēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
amābit	monēbit	dūcēt	capiēt	audiēt
amābīmus	monēbīmus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
amābītis	monēbītis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
amābīnt	monēbīnt	dūcēnt	capiēnt	audiēnt

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

amāvī	monuī	dūxī	cēpī	audīvī
amāvistī	monuistī	dūxistī	cēpistī	audīvistī
amāvit	monuit	dūxit	cēpit	audīvit
amāvimus	monuimus	dūximus	cēpimus	audīvimus
amāvistis	monuistis	dūxistis	cēpistis	audīvistis
amāvērunt	monuērunt	dūxērunt	cēpērunt	audīvērunt

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

amāveram	monueram	dūixeram	cēperam	audīveram
amāverās	monuerās	dūixerās	cēperās	audīverās
amāverat	monuerat	dūixerat	cēperat	audīverat
amāverāmus	monuerāmus	dūixerāmus	cēperāmus	audīverāmus
amāverātis	monuerātis	dūixerātis	cēperātis	audīverātis
amāverant	monuerant	dūixerant	cēperant	audīverant

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

amāverō	monuerō	dūixerō	cēperō	audīverō
amāveris	monueris	dūixeris	cēperis	audīveris
amāverit	monuerit	dūixerit	cēperit	audīverit
amāverimus	monuerimus	dūixerimus	cēperimus	audīverimus
amāveritis	monueritis	dūixeritis	cēperitis	audīveritis
amāverint	monuerint	dūixerint	cēperint	audīverint

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

amor	moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
amāris	monēris	dūceris	caperis	audīris
amātur	monētur	dūcitur	captur	audītur
amāmur	monēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audīmur
amāminī	monēminī	dūciminī	capiminī	audīminī
amāntur	monentur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

APPENDIX I - FORMS

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

amābar	monēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
amābāris	monēbāris	dūcēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
amābātūr	monēbātūr	dūcēbātūr	capiēbātūr	audiēbātūr
amābāmur	monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
amābāminī	monēbāminī	dūcēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
amābantur	monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

amābor	monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
amāberis	monēberis	dūcēris	capiēris	audiēris
amābitur	monēbitur	dūcētūr	capiētūr	audiētūr
amābimur	monēbimur	dūcēmūr	capiēmūr	audiēmūr
amābiminī	monēbiminī	dūcēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
amābuntur	monēbuntur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

amātūs sum	monitus sum	ductus sum	captus sum	audītūs sum
amātūs es	monitus es	ductus es	captus es	audītūs es
amātūs est	monitus est	ductus est	captus est	audītūs est
amātī sumus	monitī sumus	ductī sumus	captī sumus	audītī sumus
amātī estis	monitī estis	ductī estis	captī estis	audītī estis
amātī sunt	monitī sunt	ductī sunt	captī sunt	audītī sunt

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

amātūs eram	monitus eram	ductus eram	captus eram	audītūs eram
amātūs erās	monitus erās	ductus erās	captus erās	audītūs erās
amātūs erat	monitus erat	ductus erat	captus erat	audītūs erat
amātī erāmus	monitī erāmus	ductī erāmus	captī erāmus	audītī erāmus
amātī erātis	monitī erātis	ductī erātis	captī erātis	audītī erātis
amātī erant	monitī erant	ductī erant	captī erant	audītī erant

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

amātus erō	monitus erō	ductus erō	captus erō	audītus erō
amātus eris	monitus eris	ductus eris	captus eris	audītus eris
amātus erit	monitus erit	ductus erit	captus erit	audītus erit
amātī erimus	monitī erimus	ductī erimus	captī erimus	audītī erimus
amātī eritis	monitī eritis	ductī eritis	captī eritis	audītī eritis
amātī erunt	monitī erunt	ductī erunt	captī erunt	audītī erunt

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

amem	moneam	dūcam	capiam	audiām
amēs	moneās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
amet	moneat	dūcat	capiat	audiat
amēmus	moneāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
amētis	moneātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
ament	moneant	dūcant	capiant	audiant

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

amārem	monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
amārēs	monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
amāret	monēret	dūcerēt	caperēt	audīret
amārēmus	monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
amārētis	monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
amārent	monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

amāverim	monuerim	dūxerim	cēperim	audīverim
amāverīs	monuerīs	dūxerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
amāverit	monuerit	dūxerit	cēperit	audīverit
amāverīmus	monuerīmus	dūxerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
amāverītis	monuerītis	dūxerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
amāverint	monuerint	dūxerint	cēperint	audīverint

APPENDIX I - FORMS

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

amāvissem	monuissem	dūxissem	cēpissem	audīvissem
amāvissēs	monuissēs	dūxissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
amāvisset	monuisset	dūxisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	dūxissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
amāvissētis	monuissētis	dūxissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis
amāvissent	monuissent	dūxissent	cēpissent	audīvissent

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

amer	monear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
amēris	moneāris	dūcāris	capiāris	audiāris
amētur	moneātur	dūcātūr	capiātūr	audiātūr
amēmur	moneāmur	dūcāmūr	capiāmūr	audiāmūr
amēminī	moneāminī	dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
amentur	moneantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

amārer	monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
amārēris	monērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
amārētūr	monērētūr	dūcerētūr	caperētūr	audīrētūr
amārēmur	monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
amārēminī	monērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
amārentur	monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

amātus sim	monitus sim	ductus sim	captus sim	audītus sim
amātus sīs	monitus sīs	ductus sīs	captus sīs	audītus sīs
amātus sit	monitus sit	ductus sit	captus sit	audītus sit
amātī sīmus	monitī sīmus	ductī sīmus	captī sīmus	audītī sīmus
amātī sītis	monitī sītis	ductī sītis	captī sītis	audītī sītis
amātī sint	monitī sint	ductī sint	captī sint	audītī sint

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

amātus essem	monitus essem	ductus essem	captus essem	audītus essem
amātus essēs	monitus essēs	ductus essēs	captus essēs	audītus essēs
amātus esset	monitus esset	ductus esset	captus esset	audītus esset
amātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	ductī essēmus	captī essēmus	audītī essēmus
amātī essētis	monitī essētis	ductī esētis	captī esētis	audītī esētis
amātī essent	monitī essent	ductī essent	captī essent	audītī essent

PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

SING				
amā	monē	dūc	cape	audī
		(regular ending: -e)		
PLUR				
amate	monēte	dūcite	capite	audīte

INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES	amāre	amārī
	monēre	monērī
	dūcere	dūcī
	capere	capī
	audīre	audīrī
FUT	amātūrus esse	amātūm īrī
	monitūrus esse	monitūm īrī
	ductūrus esse	ductūm īrī
	captūrus esse	captūm īrī
	audītūrus esse	audītūm īrī
PERF	amāvisse	amātus esse
	monuisse	monitus esse
	dūxisse	ductus esse
	cēpissee	captus esse
	audīvisse	audītus esse

APPENDIX I - FORMS

PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE			
PRES	amāns, amantis				
	monēns, monentis				
	dūcēns, dūcentis				
	capiēns, capientis				
	audiēns, audientis				
FUT	amātūrus	amandus			
	monitūrus	monendus			
	ductūrus	dūcendus	(GERUNDIVE)		
	captūrus	capiendus			
	audītūrus	audiendus			
PERF		amātus			
		monitus			
		ductus			
		captus			
		audītus			
		GERUND			
GEN	amandī	monendī	dūcendī	capiendī	audiendī
DAT	amandō	monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō
ACC	amandum	monendum	dūcendum	capiendum	audiendum
ABL	amandō	monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō

Deponent Verbs

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *try*
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT	cōnor	sequor	cōner
	cōnāris	sequeris	cōnēris
	cōnātūr	sequitur	cōnētūr
	cōnāmūr	sequimur	cōnēmūr
	cōnāmīnī	sequimīnī	cōnēmīnī
	cōnāntūr	sequuntur	cōnēntūr

IMPERFECT	cōnābar	sequēbar	cōnārer	sequerer
	cōnābāris	sequēbāris	cōnārēris	sequerēris
	cōnābātur	sequēbātur	cōnārētur	sequerētur
	cōnābāmur	sequēbāmur	cōnārēmur	sequerēmur
	cōnābāminī	sequēbāminī	cōnārēminī	sequerēminī
	cōnābantur	sequēbantur	cōnārentur	sequerentur
FUTURE	cōnābor	sequar		
	cōnāberis	sequēris		
	cōnābitur	sequētur		
	cōnābimur	sequēmur		
	cōnābiminī	sequēminī		
	cōnābuntur	sequentur		
PERFECT	cōnātus sum	secūtus sum	cōnātus sim	secūtus sim
	cōnātus es	secūtus es	cōnātus sīs	secūtus sīs
	cōnātus est	secūtus est	cōnātus sit	secūtus sit
	cōnātī sumus	secūtī sumus	cōnātī sīmus	secūtī sīmus
	cōnātī estis	secūtī estis	cōnātī sītis	secūtī sītis
	cōnātī sunt	secūtī sunt	cōnātī sint	secūtī sint
PLUPERFECT	cōnātus eram	secūtus eram	cōnātus essem	secūtus essem
	cōnātus eras	secūtus erās	cōnātus essēs	secūtus essēs
	cōnātus erat	secūtus erat	cōnātus esset	secūtus esset
	cōnātī eramus	secūtī erāmus	cōnātī essēmus	secūtī essēmus
	cōnātī eratis	secūtī erātis	cōnātī essētis	secūtī essētis
	cōnātī erant	secūtī erant	cōnātī essent	secūtī essent
FUT PERFECT	cōnātus erō	secūtus erō		
	cōnātus eris	secūtus eris		
	cōnātus erit	secūtus erit		
	cōnātī erimus	secūtī erimus		
	cōnātī eritis	secūtī eritis		
	cōnātī erunt	secūtī erunt		

APPENDIX I - FORMS

		INFINTIVES		
		ACTIVE	PASSIVE	
PRES			cōnārī sequī	
FUT		cōnātūrus esse secūtūrus esse		
PERF			cōnātus esse secūtus esse	
PARTICIPLES				
		ACTIVE	PASSIVE	
PRES		cōnāns, cōnantis sequēns, sequentis		
FUT		cōnātūrus secūtūrus	cōnandus (GERUNDIVE) sequendus	
PERF			cōnātus secūtus	
		GERUND	PRESENT IMPERATIVE (PASSIVE)	
GEN	cōnandī	sequendī	SING	PLUR
DAT	cōnandō	sequendō	cōnāre	cōnāminī
ACC	cōnandum	sequendum		
ABL	cōnandō	sequendō		

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *Sum*

sum, esse, fuī, futurus, *be*

		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	sum es est	sim sīs sit	
	sumus	sīmus	
	estis	sītis	
	sunt	sint	

IMPERFECT	eram erās erat	essem essēs esset
	erāmus erātis erant	essēmus essētis essent
FUTURE	erō eris erit	
	erimus eritis erunt	
PERFECT	fuī fuistī fuit	fuerim fuerīs fuerit
	fuimus fuistis fuērunt	fuerīmus fuerītis fuerint
PLUPERFECT	fueram fuerās fuerat	fuissem fuissēs fuisset
	fuerāmus fuerātis fuerant	fuissēmus fuissētis fuissent
FUTURE PERFECT	fuerō fueris fuerit	
	fuerimus fueritis fuerint	
PRES IMPERATIVE	SING es	PLUR este

APPENDIX I - FORMS

	INFINITIVES	PARTICIPLE
	ACTIVE	ACTIVE
PRES	esse	
FUT	futūrus esse	futūrus
PERF	fuisse	

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *eō*

eō, īre, īī, itum, go

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	PRESENT	
eō		eam
īs		eās
it		eat
īmus		eāmus
ītis		eātis
eunt		eant
	IMPERFECT	
ībam		īrem
ībās		īrēs
ībat		īret
ībāmus		īrēmus
ībātis		īrētis
ībant		īrent
	FUTURE	
ībō		
ībis		
ībit		
ībimus		
ībitis		
ībunt		

PERFECT

iī	ierim
īstī	ierīs
iit	ierit
īimus	ierīmus
ītis	ierītis
īerunt	ierint

PLUPERFECT

ieram	īssem
ierās	īssēs
ierat	īsset
ierāmus	īssēmus
ierātis	īssētis
ierant	īssent

FUTURE PERFECT

ierō	
ieris	
ierit	
ierimus	
ieritis	
ierint	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING	PLUR
ī	īte

INFINITIVES

PARTICIPLES

GERUND

PRES	ACTIVE īre	ACTIVE īens, euntis	GEN DAT	eundi eundō
FUT	itūrus esse	itūrus	ACC ABL	eundum eundō
PERF	īsse			

Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs *volō* and *nōlō*

volō, *velle*, *voluī*, *wish, be willing*
nōlō, *nōlle*, *nōluī*, *be unwilling*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	PRESENT		
volō	nōlō	velim	nōlim
vīs	nōn vīs	velīs	nōlīs
vult	nōn vult	velit	nōlit
volumus	nōlumus	velīmus	nōlīmus
vultis	nōn vultis	velītis	nōlītis
volunt	nōlunt	velint	nōlint
IMPERFECT			
volēbam	nōlēbam	vellem	nōllem
volēbās	nōlēbās	vellēs	nōllēs
volēbat	nōlēbat	vellet	nōllet
volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus
volēbātis	nōlēbātis	vellētis	nōllētis
volēbant	nōlēbant	vellent	nōllent
FUTURE			
volam	nōlam		
volēs	nōlēs		
volet	nōlet		
volēmus	nōlēmus		
volētis	nōlētis		
volent	nōlent		
PERFECT			
voluī	nōluī	voluerim	nōluerim
voluistī	nōluistī	voluerīs	nōluerīs
voluit	nōluit	voluerit	nōluerit
voluimus	nōluimus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus
voluistis	nōluistis	voluerītis	nōluerītis
voluērunt	nōluērunt	voluerint	nōluerint

PLUPERFECT			
volueram	nōlueram	voluissem	nōluissem
voluerās	nōluerās	voluissēs	nōluissēs
voluerat	nōluerat	voluisset	nōluisset
voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus
voluerātis	nōluerātis	voluissētis	nōluissētis
voluerant	nōluerant	voluissernt	nōluissernt
FUTURE PERFECT			
voluerō	nōluerō		
volueris	nōlueris		
voluerit	nōluerit		
voluerimus	nōluerimus		
volueritis	nōlueritis		
voluerint	nōluerint		
PRESENT IMPERATIVE			
SING	nōlī	PLUR	nōlīte
INFINITIVES			
PRES	velle		nōlle
PERF	voluisse		nōluisse
PARTICIPLE			
PRES ACTIVE	volēns, volentis		nōlēns, nōlentis

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *ferō*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear

INDICATIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	
		SUBJUNCTIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
		INDICATIVE	
		PRESENT	
ferō	feram	feror	ferar
fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris
fert	ferat	fertur	ferātūr
ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur

APPENDIX I - FORMS

IMPERFECT			
ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
ferēbās	ferrēs	ferēbāris	ferrēris
ferēbat	ferret	ferēbātūr	ferrētūr
ferēbāmus	ferrēmus	ferēbāmūr	ferrēmūr
ferēbātis	ferrētis	ferēbāmīnī	ferrēmīnī
ferēbant	ferrent	ferēbāntūr	ferrentūr
FUTURE			
feram		ferar	
ferēs		ferēris	
feret		ferētūr	
ferēmus		ferēmūr	
ferētis		ferēmīnī	
ferent		ferentūr	
PERFECT			
tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
tulistī	tulerīs	lātus es	lātus sīs
tulit	tulerit	lātus est	lātus sit
tulimus	tulerīmus	lātī sumus	lātī sīmus
tulistis	tulerītis	lātī estis	lātī sītis
tulērunt	tulerint	lātī sunt	lātī sint
PLUPERFECT			
tuleram	tulissem	lātus erām	lātus essem
tulerās	tulissēs	lātus erās	lātus essēs
tulerat	tulisset	lātus erat	lātus esset
tulerāmus	tulissēmus	lātī erāmus	lātī essēmus
tulerātis	tulissētis	lātī erātis	lātī essētis
tulerant	tulissent	lātī erant	lātī essent
FUTURE PERFECT			
tulerō		lātus erō	
tuleris		lātus eris	
tulerit		lātus erit	
tulerimus		lātī erimus	
tuleritis		lātī eritis	
tulerint		lātī erunt	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING **fer** PLUR **ferte**

INFINITIVES			
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	
PRES	ferre		ferrī
FUT	lātūrus esse		lātum īrī
PERF	tulisse		lātus esse
PARTICIPLES			
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	
PRES	ferēns, ferentis	PERF	lātus
FUT	lātūrus	FUT PASS	ferendus
			(GERUNDIVE)
GERUND			
GEN	ferendī		
DAT	ferendō		
ACC	ferendum		
ABL	ferendō		

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *possum*possum, posse, potuī, *be able*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
possum	possim
potes	possīs
potest	possit
possumus	possīmus
potestis	possītis
possunt	possint
IMPERFECT	
poteram	possem
poterās	possēs
poterat	posset
poterāmus	possēmus
poterātis	possētis
poterant	possent

APPENDIX I - FORMS

FUTURE

poterō
poteris
poterit

poterimus
poteritis
poterunt

PERFECT

potuī
potuistī
potuit

potuerim
potuerīs
potuerit

potuimus
potuistis
potuērunt

potuerīmus
potuerītis
potuerint

PLUPERFECT

potueram
potuerās
potuerat

potuissem
potuissēs
potuisset

potuerāmus
potuerātis
potuerant

potuissēmus
potuissētis
potuissent

FUTURE PERFECT

potuerō
potueris
potuerit

potuerimus
potueritis
potuerint

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE

PRESENT **posse** PERFECT potuisse

APPENDIX II - A BRIEF GRAMMAR

Numbers at the end of each entry refer to the lesson(s) in which the topic appears.

- Agreement of Verb** - A verb agrees with its subject in person and number (1).

Puer ambulat. *The boy walks.* **Puerī ambulant.** *The boys walk.*

- Agreement of Noun** - An appositive or predicate noun agrees in case with the noun which it modifies (4).

Rōma est urbs. *Rome is a city.* **Dīcunt Rōmam esse urbem.** *They say that Rome is a city.*

- Adjective-Noun Agreement** - An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies (1).

Fēminaē clārae mē vocant. *Famous women call me.* **Nautās bonōs laudō.** *I praise good farmers.*

- Agreement of Relative Pronoun** - The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction in which it is used in its own relative clause. (39)

Puellae quārum māter clāra est urbem servant. *The girls whose mother is famous are saving the city.* **Dux quem laudāmus urbem servāvit.** *The leader whom we praise saved the city.*

Nouns

Nominative Case

- The subject is in the nominative. (1)

Genitive Case

- Genitive of Possession** - The genitive case is used to express the possessor. (1)

- Partitive Genitive** - The genitive is used, most often with certain indefinite words (e.g., **plūs, nihil**) and with superlatives, to express the whole out of which some part is taken. (48)

plūs frūmentī, *more grain.* **magna pars Rōmānōrum,** *a large part of the Romans.*

Dative Case

- Indirect Object** - The indirect object of verbs of giving, showing, and telling is in the dative case. (3) **Puerō dōnum dedī.** *I gave a gift to the boy.*

- Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs** - Certain intransitive verbs govern the dative case (in this text, **crēdō, imperō, persuādeō, resistō**). (55)
Hostibus resistimus. *We are opposing the enemy.*

- Dative with Special Compound Verbs** - Certain verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super** govern the dative case (in this text, **appropinquō, occurrō, praeficiō, praestō**). (56)
Hostibus occurrimus. *We meet the enemy.*

- Dative with Special Adjectives** - Certain adjectives may take a dependant dative (in this text, **adversus, cārus, fidus, grātus, inimīcus, idōneus, pār, propinquus, secundus**). (3)

APPENDIX II - GRAMMAR

Vir amīcīs cārus est vir bonus. *A man dear to his friends is a good man.*

12. **Dative of Possession** - The dative is used with **sum** to express possession. (59)

Decem equī mihi sunt. *I have ten horses.*

13. **Dative of Agent** - The dative is used with the passive periphrastic to denote the personal agent. (62)

Hic liber tibi legendus est. *This book must be read by you. (You must read this book.)*

Accusative Case

14. **Direct Object** - The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. (1)

Puerum amō. *I like the boy.*

15. **Accusative with Prepositions** - The accusative is used with certain prepositions, e.g., **ad**, **trāns**, **per**, **inter**, **in**, **sub**, **propter**. Usually the preposition depends on a verb of motion. (11) **Trāns viam properō.** *I hurry across the road.*

16. **Accusative of Duration of Time** - The accusative is used to express duration of time. (46)
Multās hōrās ducem exspectāvī. *For many hours I waited for the leader.*

17. **Accusative of Extent of Space** - The accusative is used to express extent of space. (48)
arbor multōs pedēs alta, *a tree many feet high*

18. **Subject Accusative in Indirect Statement** - The subject of an indirect statement is in the accusative case. (40) **Dīcō mīlitem esse fortēm.** *I say that the soldier is brave.*

Ablative Case

19. **Ablative with Prepositions** - The ablative is used with certain prepositions, e.g., **ā/ab**, **dē**, **ē/ex**, **in**, **sub**. Usually the preposition depends on a stationary verb or refers to motion away from someone/thing. (4) **ab aquā**, *away from the water.* **dē fugā**, *concerning flight*

20. **Ablative of Means** - The ablative is used to express the means by which an action is done. (11) **Aquā flammās superāvī.** *I overcame the flames with water.*

21. **Ablative of Agent** - The ablative with **ab** is used with a passive verb to denote the person by whom a thing is done. (13) **Ā puellā laudātur.** *She is being praised by the girl.*

22. **Ablative of Accompaniment** - The ablative with **cum** is used to express accompaniment. (28) **Multīs cum amīcīs ad āram properat.** *He hurries to the altar with many friends.*

23. **Ablative of Manner** - The ablative with **cum** is used to express the manner in which a thing is done, but the **cum** may be omitted when an adjective modifies the noun. (28)
Magnā cum īrā respondet. *He answers with great anger.*

24. **Ablative of Comparison** - A comparative without **quam** takes the ablative; but when **quam** is used, the words denoting the things compared are in the same case. (37)
amīcus vītā cārior, *a friend dearer than life*

25. **Ablative of Respect** - The ablative is used to specify the respect in which another word applies. (45) **et animō et corpore miser,** *wretched in both mind and body*

26. **Ablative of Time When or Within Which** - The ablative is used to express the time at which or within which a thing is done. (46)

WHEN: **Secundō diē servāta est.** *She was saved on the second day.*

WITHIN WHICH: **Decem annīs consul dēligētur.** *Within ten years he will be chosen consul.*

27. **Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs (“PUFF V” verbs)** - The deponents **potior**, **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, and **vescor** govern the ablative. (59) **Equō ūtor.** *I use a horse.*

28. **Ablative Absolute** - The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a participle, noun, or adjective is used to express time, cause, opposition, condition, or other circumstances. (28)
Urbe captā fūgimus. *When the city had been captured, we fled.*

Vocative Case

29. The vocative case expresses the person or thing directly addressed by a speaker. It normally follows one or more words. (5)
- Quid facis, bone serve?** *What are you doing, good slave?*
Ubi properās, mī filī? *Where are you hurrying, my son?*

Verbs

Indicative Mood

30. **Dum with Present Indicative** - The present indicative is used with **dum**, *while*, to refer to past time. (20)
Dum in urbe sum, saepe auxilium petīvi. *While I was in the city, I often sought help.*
31. **Postquam and Ubi with Perfect Indicative** - The perfect indicative is used with **postquam**, *after* and **ubi**, *when* to refer to time before another past action. (6 & 22)
Ubi ad oppidum properāvit, patrem vocāvit. *When she had hurried to the town, she called her father.*
32. **Future More Vivid Condition** - Conditions referring to future time in Latin use the future or future perfect in the conditional (*if*) clause and future in the main clause (conclusion). In English, we use the present tense in the conditional clause, the future in the main clause.
(52) **Sī tē in perīculō vīderō, tē juvābō.** *If I see you in danger, I will help you.*

Infinitive Mood

33. **Complementary Infinitive** – Certain verbs that imply another action to complete their meaning, e.g., **dēsiderō**, and **temptō**, take a present infinitive; the subject of both verbs is the same. (4) **Ambulāre dēsiderō.** *I wish to walk.*
34. **Infinitives and Relative Time** - The present infinitive represents an action at the same time as that of the verb on which it depends. The perfect infinitive represent an action before the time of the verb on which it depends. The future infinitive represents an action after the time of the verb on which it depends. (40 & 41)
Dīcō tē fugere. *I say that you are fleeing.*
Dīcō tē fūgisse. *I say that you have fled.*
Dīcō tē fugitūrum esse. *I say that you will flee.*
35. **Indirect Statement** - The infinitive, with an accusative noun as subject, is used in indirect statements. In this use the infinitive is normally governed by a verb of mental action, e.g., **putō, sciō, credo.** (40 & 41) See examples in #34 above.

Imperative Mood

36. **Direct Command** - The imperative mood is used for direct commands. The imperative normally follows one or more words. (5) **Mē juvāte!** *Help me!*

Subjunctive Mood

- 37. Adverbial Purpose Clause** - The subjunctive is used with **ut** and **nē** in clauses expressing purpose. (55) **Magnō cum exercitū venit ut Rōmānōs vincat.** *He comes with a large army (in order) to conquer the Romans.*
- 38. Relative Clause of Purpose** - The subjunctive is used in relative clauses expressing purpose; the governing verb is often **mittō** or a compound of that verb. (55)
Nuntium mittit quī Rōmānōs moneat. *He sends a messenger (in order) to warn the Romans.*
- 39. Adverbial Result Clause** - The subjunctive is used with **ut** and **ut nōn** in clauses expressing result. (58) **Hostēs tam propinquī sunt ut signa eōrum videāmus.** *The enemy is so close that we see their standards.*
- 40. Cum Situational Clause (When)** - The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used with **cum** in clauses describing the situation or circumstances of another action. (53)
Cum quaererem, dē magnō animō ējus cognōvī. *When I inquired, I learned about his great courage.*
- 41. Cum Causal Clause (Since)** - The subjunctive is used with **cum** to express the cause of another action. (53)
Cum vada reperīre nōn possint, aliud iter petunt. *Since they cannot find fords, they are seeking another route.*
- 42. Cum Adversative Clause (Although)** - The subjunctive is used with **cum** to express an action opposed to another action. (54)
Cum vadum reperissent, flūmen nōn trānsiērunt. *Although they had found a ford, they did not cross the river.*
- 43. Indirect Question** - The subjunctive is used with an interrogative word in indirect questions. (54) **Quaerit quis Rōmānōs oppugnet.** *He asks who is attacking the Romans.*
- 44. Sequence of Tenses** - The present or perfect subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause when the main verb represents present or future action, the imperfect or pluperfect when the main verb represents a past action. The present and imperfect represent an action occurring at the same time or after the time of the main verb; the perfect and pluperfect represent an action occurring before the time of the main verb. (see examples in 57 & 63)
- 45. Substantive Clause of Volition** - The subjunctive is used with **ut** and **nē** in substantive clauses expressing what is wanted. Verbs commonly governing such clauses are **hortor**, **imperō**, **moneō**, **persuādeō**, **petō**, and **postulō**. (56)
Pater imperat nē inimicōs meōs juvem. *My father orders that I not help my enemies.*
- 46. Clause of Fearing** – The subjunctive is used with **nē** and **ut** in substantive clauses expressing fear. A fearing clause introduced by **nē** must be translated positively, while one introduced by **ut** must be translated negatively. (64)
Timeō nē capiar. *I fear that I may be captured / lest I be captured.*
Timeō ut nōn veniat. *I fear that he will not come / that he may not come.*
- 47. Indirect Dependent Clause** – Subordinate (dependent) clauses which form a part of indirect discourse have their verbs in the subjunctive. Indirect discourse includes: indirect statement, adverbial and relative purpose, substantive clause of volition, clause of fearing, and indirect question. (64)
Relative clause in DIRECT discourse.
Silva [in quā puer est] multa perīcula habet. *The forest in which the boy is has many dangers.*
Relative clause in INDIRECT discourse.
Dīcit silvam [in quā puer sit] multa perīcula habet.
The forest in which the boy is has many dangers.

Gerund and Gerundive

48. **Gerund and Gerundive Expressing Purpose** - The genitive of the gerund or gerundive with **causā** (ablative) and the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with **ad** express purpose. **Causā** normally follows its gerund/ive; **ad** normally precedes it. (48 & 61)
monendī causā, for the sake of warning. **ad dīcendum, for the purpose of speaking**
49. **Passive Periphrastic** - The gerundive with **sum** expresses obligation or necessity. With the passive periphrastic, the dative of agent (not the ablative) must be used to express the person by whom the action must be done (see #13 above). (62)
Hic liber tibi legendus est. *This book must be read by you. (You must read this book.)*

LATIN - ENGLISH GLOSSARY

ABBREVIATIONS: 1=1st conjugation; 2=2nd conjugation; 3=3rd regular or 3rd-io conjugation; 4=4th conjugation; abl.=ablative; acc.=accusative; adj.=adjective; adv.=adverb; AR= word used in an additional reading. Term 3; c.=common gender; compar.=comparative; conj.=conjunction; d.o.=direct object; dat.=dative; f.=feminine; gen.=genitive; impers.=impersonal; indecl.=indeclinable; indef.=indefinite; indic.=indicative; ind. stat.=indirect statement; infin.=infinitive; interrog.=interrogative; m.=masculine; n.=neuter; pass.=passive; perf.=perfect; pers.=person; pl.=plural; postposit.=postpositive; prep.=preposition; pres.=present; pron.=pronoun; R=word used in a reading passage; s.=singular; subj.=subjunctive; superlat.=superlative

Special Expressions are in standard form, i.e., with verb in the infinitive.

- ne – enclitic used to denote a neutral question (16)
- que – *and* (enclitic) (31)

A

- ā, ab** – (prep. + abl.) *from, away from* (4)
- abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum** – *go away, leave* (45)
- absum, abesse, āfūlī, āfutūrus** – *be away, be absent* (15)
- accidō, accidere** (3), **accidī, —— happen** (63)
- acciō, accipere** (3), **accēpī, acceptus** – *receive; perceive, learn, suffer* (40)
- ācer, ācris, ācre** – *sharp, fierce* (35)
- Achillēs, Achillis**, m. – Greek hero at Troy, son of Peleus & Thetis (41R)
- aciēs, aciēlī**, f. – *line of battle, front line* (61)
- ācritēr** – *fiercely* (13)
- ad** – (prep. + acc.) *to, toward* (+ verb of motion); *at, near* (+ stationary verb) (11)
- adeō, adīre, adiī, aditum** – *go to(ward)* (45)
- adsum, adesse, adfūlī, adfutūrus** – *be at, be present* (15)
- adventus, -ūs**, m. – *arrival, approach* (51)
- adversus, -a, -um** – *unfavorable, opposed* (+ dat.) (43)
- aedificō, aedificāre** (1), **aedificāvī, aedificātus** – *build* (18)
- Aegisthus, -ī**, m. – paramour of Clytemnestra (51R)
- Aegyptus, -ī**, m. – brother of Danaus & king of Egypt (15R)
- Aegyptus, -ī**, f. – *Egypt* (15R)

- Aenēas, -ae**, m. – Trojan who after the war voyaged to Italy (18R)
- Aeolia, -ae**, f. – island of the winds (60R)
- Aeolus, -ī**, m. – king of Aeolia (60R)
- Aetna, -ae**, f. – *Aetna* (volcanic mountain on Sicily) (11R)
- Agamemnōn, Agamemnōnis**, m. – king of Mycenae & leader of the Greek forces at Troy (40R)
- ager, agrī**, m. – *field* (9)
- agmen, agminis**, n. – *(marching) column, line of march* (31)
- agō, agere** (3), **ēgī, āctus** – *do, drive, accomplish; nihil agere* – *to accomplish nothing* (34)
- agricola, -ae**, m. – *farmer* (1)
- Ājāx, Ājācis**, m. – 1) son of Telamon & Greek warrior at Troy (44R); 2) son of Oileus & Greek warrior killed by Minerva after the Trojan War (53R)
- āla, -ae**, f. – *wing (of a bird)* (30R)
- Alba Longa, -ae -ae**, f. – town near Rome (18R)
- Alexander, Alexandrī**, m. – king of Macedonia and conqueror of the Persian empire (29R)
- alius, alia, aliud** (gen. s. **ālius**; dat. s. **āliī**) – *another, other* (8; 60)
- Alphēus, -ī**, m. – river & river god in Greece (16R)
- alter, altera, alterum** (gen. s. **alterīus**; dat. s. **alterī**) – *the other (of two)* (60)
- altus, -a, -um** – *high, tall, deep* (1.12); **altum, -ī**, n. – *the deep* (60R)

ambulō, ambulāre (1), **ambulāvī**, **ambulātūm** – walk (2)
amicitia, -ae, f. – friendship (64)
amicus, -ī, m. – friend (9)
āmittō, āmittere (3), **āmīsī**, **āmissus** – lose (33)
amō, amāre (1), **amāvī**, **amātus** – love, like (2)
amor, amōris, m. – love, desire (35)
amphora, -ae, f. – amphora, clay vessel (15R)
Amūlius, -ī, m. – legendary king of Alba Longa (18R)
Ancus Martius, -ī -ī, m. – legendary 4th king of Rome (19R)
animal, animālis, n. – animal (25)
animus, -ī, m. – spirit, courage; mind; **in animō habēre** – to have in mind, to intend (26)
annus, -ī, m. – year (15)
anser, anseris, m. – goose (13R)
ante – (prep. + acc.) before, in front of (11)
Antiochus, -ī, m. – *Antiochus* (name taken by Eunus) (28R)
antīquus, -a, -um – ancient, old (8)
aperiō, aperīre (4), **aperūī**, **apertus** – open, reveal, uncover (38)
Apollō, Apollinis, m. – god of music & prophecy (9R)
appellō, appellāre (1), **appellāvī**, **appellātūs** – call (by name), name (18)
appropinquō, appropinquāre (1), **appropinquāvī** – draw near, approach (+ dat.) (25)
aqua, -ae, f. – water (4)
āra, -ae, f. – altar (8)
arbitror, arbitrārī (1), **arbitrātūs sum** – think, consider, judge (55)
arbor, arboris, f. – tree (27)
Arēopagus, -ī, m. – Mars' hill in Athens (AR)
Arethūsa, -ae, f. – a nymph (16R)
Ariadna, -ae, f. – *Ariadne*, daughter of King Minos of Crete (34R)
arma, -ōrum, n. pl. – arms, weapons (13)
Ascānius, -ī, m. – son of Aeneas (18R)

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl. – *Athens* (34R)
audācia, -ae, f. – daring, boldness, audacity (19)
audeō, audēre (2), **ausus sum** – dare (28; 60)
audiō, audīre (4), **audīvī**, **audītus** – hear, listen (to) (31)
augeō, augēre (2), **auxī**, **auctus** – increase, enlarge (61)
Aulis, Aulidis, f. – Greek port from which the Greeks sailed for Troy (40R)
Aurōra, -ae, f. – goddess of dawn (38R)
aurum, -ī, n. – gold (10)
aut – or; aut...aut – either...or (11)
autem – (postposit. conj.) however (33)
auxilium, -ī, n. – help, aid (12)
avis, avis, f. – bird (25)
avunculus, -ī, m. – uncle (17R)

B

Bacchus, -ī, m. – *Bacchus*, god of wine & ecstasy (10R)
baculum, -ī, n. – rod (63R)
barbarus, -a, -um – barbarous, foreign; **barbarus, -ī**, m. – barbarian (16)
bellum, -ī, n. – war (11)
bene – well (2)
bibō, bibere (3), **bibī**, — – drink (56R)
bonus, -a, -um – good (1)
brācchium, -ī, n. – arm, limb (17R)
brevis, breve – short, brief (46)
Briseīs, Briseīdos, f. – *Briseīs* (a slave of Achilles)
Brūtus, -ī, m. – Roman family name (20R)
Bucephalus, -ī, m. – Alexander the Great's favorite horse (29R)

C

C. – abbreviation for *Gaius*, a Roman praenomen (26R)
cadō, cadere (3), **cecidī**, **casum** – fall (30R)

Caecilia, -ae, f. – Roman female name, formed from the family name (7R)

caecus, -a, -um – *blind* (58R)

caedō, caedere (3), **cecīdī, caesum** – *kill, slaughter* (62)

caelum, -ī, n. – *sky, heaven* (8)

Calchās, Calchantis, m. – Greek prophet at Troy (42R)

Camillus, -ī, m. – Roman general (23R)

canis, canis, c. – *dog* (33R)

canō, canere (3), **cecīnī, —— sing** (35R)

capiō, capere (3), **cēpī, captus** – *seize, capture, take; cōsilium capere – to form a plan* (30)

Capitōlinus, -ī, m. – *of/related to the Capitoline* (13R)

Capitōlium, -īī, n. – *the Capitoline Hill (in Rome)* (13R)

caput, capitīs, n. – *head* (24)

carcer, carceris, m. – *prison, jail* (28R)

cārus, -a, -um – *dear, precious (+ dat.)* (8)

Cassandra, -ae, f. – Trojan priestess and prophet (51R)

castra, -ōrum, n. pl. – *camp* (1.13)

causa, -ae, f. – *cause, reason* (40)

celer, celeris – *quick, swift* (42)

celeriter – *quickly* (5)

cella, -ae, f. – *vaulted chamber* (17R)

cēna, -ae, f. – *meal, dinner* (63R)

centum (indecl. adj.) – *one hundred* (14)

cera, -ae, f. – *wax* (30R)

Cerberus, -ī, m. – dog guarding the entrance to the Underworld (35R)

Cerēs, Cereris, f. – goddess of grain & agricultural fertility (10R)

certē – *surely, certainly* (36)

certus, -a, -um – *sure, certain, definite* (38)

cēterī, -ae, -a (pl.) – *(adj.) the other, the rest of; (noun) the others, the rest* (18)

cibus, ī, m. – *food* (28R)

Cilicius, -a, -um – *Cilician, from Cilicia* (28R)

cinis, cineris, m. – *ash* (17R)

Circē, Circēs, f. – a sorceress (62R)

circum (prep. + acc.) – *around, about* (17)

circumdō, circumdare (1), **circumdedī, circumdatus** – *put around* (32R)

circumvenīō, circumvenīre (4), **circumvēnī, circumventus** – *surround, (+ acc. d.o.)* (49)

Circus Maximus, -ī, -ī, m. – arena for chariot racing in Rome (19R)

cīvis, cīvis, c. – *citizen* (26)

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f. – *state, community* (61)

clāmō, clāmārē (1), **clāmāvī, clāmātus** – *shout* (3)

clāmor, clāmōris, m. – *shouting* (58R)

clārus, -a, -am – *bright, famous* (5)

classis, classis, f. – *fleet* (30)

claudō, claudere (3), **clausī, clausus** – *close* (37)

Cleōn, Cleōnis, m. – *Cleon (a Cilician enslaved on Sicily)* (28R)

Clytaemnēstra, -ae, f. – *Clytemnestra, wife of Agamemnon* (41R)

Cocles, Coclitis, m. – cognomen of Horatius who guarded the bridge; literally, *man blind in one eye* (24R)

coepī, coepisse, coeptus (defective) – *began, started* (58)

cognōscō, cognōscere (3), **cognōvī, cognitus** – *learn, come to know; know (perf.)* (48)

cōgō, cōgere (3), **coēgī, coāctus** – *collect, gather (+ acc. d.o.); force, compel (+ acc. + infin.)* (51)

collis, collis, m. – *hill* (25)

coma, -ae, f. – *hair, lock of hair* (11R)

comes, comitis, c. – *companion* (26)

condō, condere (3), **condidī, conditus** – *found, establish, build* (60)

conjiciō, conjicere (3), **conjēcī, conjectus** – *throw, hurl* (44)

conjūnx, conjugis, c. – *husband, wife, spouse* (32)

cōnor, cōnārī (1), **cōnātus sum** – *try, attempt (+ infin.)* (49)

cōnservus, -ī, m. – *fellow slave* (17R)

cōnsilium, cōnsiliī, n. – *plan, advice, judgement* (15); **cōsilium capere** – *to form a plan* (30)

cōsistō, cōsistere (3), **cōnstitī**, — *make a stand, halt, stand* (62)

cōspectus, cōspectūs, m. — *sight, view* (42)

cōspiciō, cōspicere (3), **cōnspexī**, **cōspectus** — *catch sight of, observe* (62)

cōstituō, cōstituere (3), **cōnstituī**, **cōstitūtus** — (+ infin.) *decide;* (+ acc.) *station, determine, establish* (34)

cōsul, cōsulis, m. — *highest elected official at Rome* (23)

contendō, contendere (3), **contendī**, **contentus** — *struggle (+ cum); hasten (sometimes + infin.)* (49)

contrā (prep. + acc.) — *against, opposite* (15)

contrōversia, -ae, f. — *argument* (62R)

conveniō, convenīre (4), **convēnī**, **conventum** — *come together, assemble, gather* (39)

coorior, coorīrī (4), **coortus sum** — *arise, rise* (49)

cōpia, -ae, f. — *supply, abundance; (pl.) cōpiae, -ārum* — *troops, forces* (14)

Corinthus, -ī, f. — *Corinth, a Greek city* (12R)

cornū, cornūs, n. — *horn, wing (of an army)* (42)

corpus, corporis, n. — *body* (24)

cotidiē — *daily, every day* (40R)

crās — *tomorrow* (26)

crēdō, crēdere (3), **crēdidī, crēditus** — *believe, trust (+ dat.)* (40)

Crēta, -ae, f. — *Crete* (11R)

crūdēlis, -e — *cruel, unmerciful* (53)

culīna, -ae, f. — *kitchen* (17R)

cum (prep. + abl.) — *with* (4); (conj. + subj.) *when, since, although* (53 & 54)

cupiditās, cupiditātis, f. — *desire, greed* (54)

Cupīdō, Cupīdinis, m. — *Cupid, god of love* (11R)

cupidus, -a, -um — *desirous (+ gen.)* (50)

cupiō, cupere (3), **cupīvī, cupītus** — *desire, want* (30)

cūr — *why?* (2)

cūrō, curare (1), **cūrāvī, cūrātus** — *care for* (5R)

currō, currere (3), **cucurrī, cursum** — *run, hasten* (51)

currus, -ūs, m. — *chariot* (10R)

Cyclops, Cyclōpis, m. — *a one-eyed giant* (14R)

D

Daedalus, -ī, m. — *legendary craftsman from Athens* (30R)

Damophilus, -i, m. — *Damophilus (slave owner in Enna)* (28R)

Danaides, -um, f. pl. — *the Danaids, daughters of Danaus* (115R)

Danaus, -ī, m. — *brother of Aegyptus & king of Argos* (15R)

Daphnē, -ēs, f. — *a nymph* (27R)

dē (prep. + abl.) — *about, concerning* (6)

dea, deae, -a, f. — *goddess* (4)

dēbeō, dēbēre (2), **dēbuī, dēbitus** — (+ acc.) *owe; (+ infin.) ought, must* (12)

decem (indecl. adj.) — *ten* (14)

decimus, -a, -um — *tenth* (53R)

dēfendō, dēfendere (3), **dēfendī, dēfēnsus** — *defend* (29)

dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus — *bring down, report (+ ad + acc.)* (47)

dēfessus, -a, -um — *tired, exhausted* (8R)

deinde — *then, next (in a series)* (11)

Dēiphobus, -ī, m. — *brother of Hector* (46R)

dēleō, dēlēre (2), **dēlēvī, dēlētus** — *destroy* (20)

dēligō, dēligere (3), **dēlēgī, dēlēctus** — *choose, select* (31)

Delos, -ī, f. — *sacred island in the Aegean where Apollo & Diana were born* (9R)

Delphicus, -a, -um — *of Delphi; at Delphi* (AR)

dēnsus, -a, -um — *thick, dense* (17R)

dēserō, dēserere (3), **dēseruī, dēsертus** — *abandon, desert* (42)

dēsiderō, dēsiderāre (1), **dēsiderāvī, dēsiderātus** — *desire, wish* (4)

dēsistō, dēsistere (3), **dēstitū, dēstitutum** – cease (+ infin.) (38)
Deucaliōn, Deucaliōnis, m. – Greek hero who survived the Flood (28R)
deus, deī, m. – god (10)
dexter, dextra, dextrum – right, right-hand; **dextra, -ae**, f. – right hand (26R)
Diāna, -ae, f. – goddess of the moon & hunting (6R)
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus – say, speak, tell (30)
diēs, diēt̄, m. – day, daytime, period (46)
difficilis, difficile – difficult (38)
dīmidium, dīmidīi, n. – half, one half (11R)
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum – depart, leave (40)
discō, discere (3), **didicī, — — learn** (23R)
Discordia, -ae, f. – goddess of strife (39R)
diū – for a long time (7)
dō, dare (1), **dedī, datus** – give (3)
dolor, dolōris, m. – sorrow, grief, pain (35)
domī – at home, home (43)
domina, -ae, f. – owner [female] (17R)
dominus, -ī, m. – master (26)
dōnum, -ī, n. – gift (8)
dormiō, dormīre (4), **dormīvī, dormītum** – sleep (11R)
dūcō, dūcere (3), **dūxī, ductus** – lead (29)
dulcis, dulce – sweet, pleasant (48)
dum – while (+ pres. indic.) (20)
duo, duae, duo – two (37)
duodecim (indecl. adj.) – twelve (61)
dūrus, -a, -um – hard, difficult, tough (21)
dux, ducis, m. – leader (23)

E

ē, ex (prep. + abl.) – out of, from (4)
Echo, Echous, f. – a nymph (21R)
edō, esse (3), **ēdī, ēsus** – eat (53R)
efficiō, efficere (3), **effēcī, effectus** – accomplish, bring about (50)
Ēgeria, -ae, f. – a prophetic nymph (19R)
ego, meī – I, me (43)

ēgredior, ēgredī (3), **ēgressus sum** – go out, depart, set out (55)
Ēlectra, -ae, f. – sister of Orestes (52R)
enim (postposit. conj.) – for (62)
ēō, īre, īī, itum – go (45)
epistula, -ae, f. – letter (1.2)
equus, -ī, m. – horse (9)
ēripiō, ēripere (3), **ēripuī, ēreptus** – tear away, steal, rescue (57)
ērumpō, ērumpere (3), **ērūpī, ēruptus** – burst out, break out (50)
Eryx, Erycis, m. – Mt. Eryx (in NW Sicily, site of a temple of Venus) (11R)
et – and (1); **et...et** – both...and (14)
etiam – even, also, too (27)
Etrūria, -ae, f. – homeland of the Etruscans north of Rome (19R)
Etruscus, -a, -um – Etruscan; **Etruscus, -ī**, m. – an Etruscan (23R)
Eunus, -ī, m. – *Eunus* (a Syrian enslaved in Enna) (28R)
Eurydicē, -ēs, f. – wife of Orpheus (2.13R)
Eurylochus, -ī, m. – a comrade of Ulysses (62R)
excēdō, excēdere (3), **excessī, excessum** – go out, leave, depart (35)
exeō, exīre, exīī, exitum – go out, leave (49)
exercitus, exercitūs, m. – army (42)
expellō, expellere (3), **expulī, expulsus** – drive out, expel (19R)
expōnō, expōnere (3), **exposuī, expositus** – arrange, set out, explain; disembark (47)
exspectō, exspectāre (1), **exspectāvī, exspectātus** – wait for, await (2)

F

fābula, -ae, f. – story (2)
facile (adv.) – easily, readily (39)
facilis, facile – easy (38)
faciō, facere (3), **fēcī, factus** – do, make (32); + **proelium** – to fight a battle (32); + **iter** – to march, make a journey (33); + **scelus** – to commit a crime (41)
factum, -ī, n. – deed, act, fact (18)

Falerīī, -iōrum, m. pl. – Etruscan town near Rome (23R)

Falisci, -ōrum, m. pl. – *the Faliscans, people of Falerīī* (23R)

fāma, -ae, f. – *rumor, reputation, report* (15)

Faustulus, -ī, m. – Italian shepherd who found Romulus & Remus (18R)

fēlīciter – *fortunately, successfully* (59R)

fēlīx, fēlīcis – *fortunate, happy* (34)

fēmina, -ae, f. – *woman* (3)

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus – *carry, bring, bear, endure* (47)

fidus, -a, -um – *faithful, loyal* (+ dat.) (9)

filia, -ae, f. – *daughter* (2)

filius, -īī, m. – *son* (11)

filum, -ī, n. – *thread* (34R)

finis, fīnis, m. – *end, limit, boundary; (pl.) finēs, fīnium* – *territory* (33)

firmus, -a, -um – *strong, stable* (61)

flamma, -ae, f. – *flame* (4)

flōs, flōris, m. – *flower* (11R)

flūmen, flūminis, n. – *river* (24)

folium, -īī, n. – *leaf* (27R)

fōns, fontis, m. – *spring (of water)* (17R)

forma, -ae, f. – *shape, form* (29R)

fortis, forte – *brave, strong* (38)

fortiter – *bravely* (16)

forum, -ī, n. – *the Forum (at Rome)* (20R)

frangō, frangere (3), **frēgī, fractus** – *break, wreck* (32)

frāter, frātris, m. – *brother* (27)

frīgus, frīgoris, n. – *cold* (33R)

frūctus, -ūs, m. – *fruit* (53R)

frūmentum, -ī, n. – *grain* (9)

fuga, -ae, f. – *flight, escape* (19)

fugiō, fugere (3), **fūgī, fugitūrus** – *flee, escape* (32)

fulmen, fulminis, n. – *lightning bolt* (14R)

fūmus, -ī, m. – *smoke* (17R)

Furiae, -ārum, f. pl. – *the Furies, goddesses punishing blood crimes* (AR)

furor, furōris, m. – *fury, rage, anger, madness* (31)

G

Gāius, Gāīī, m. – Roman praenomen (26R)

Gallicus, -a, -um – *Gallic, of the Gauls/ of Gaul* (36R)

Gallus, -ī, m. – *a Gaul* (13R)

gaudium, -īī, n. – *joy* (37)

Gela, -ae, f. – Greek city on Sicily (12R)

Gelon, Gelōnis, m. – ruler of Syracuse (25R)

gēns, gentis, f. – *tribe, nation* (27)

genus, generis, n. – *type, kind* (24)

gerō, gerere (3), **gessī, gestus** – *carry on, wage (war); wear* (32)

gigās, gigantis, m. – *giant* (55R); **Gigantes, -um**, m. pl. – *Giants* (14R)

gladius, -īī, m. – *sword* (9)

glōria, -ae, f. – *glory* (10R)

Graecia, -ae, f. – *Greece* (15R)

Graecus, -a, -um – *Greek*; **Graecus, -ī**, m. – *a Greek* (12R)

grātus, -a, -um – *pleasing (to)* (+ dat.) (3)

gravis, grave – *heavy, serious, severe* (37)

graviter – *heavily, seriously, severely, deeply* (36)

H

habeō, habēre (2), **habuī, habitus** – *have, hold* (12)

habitō, habitāre (1), **habitāvī, habitātus** – *dwell, live* (2)

harēna, -ae, f. – *sand, arena* (36R)

hasta, -ae, f. – *spear* (7)

Hector, Hectoris, m. – Trojan hero, son of Priam (43R)

Hecuba, -ae, f. – wife of Priam (50R)

Helena, -ae, f. – *Helen, wife of Menelaus & queen of Sparta* (39R)

Henna, -ae, f. – *Enna (town in central Sicily)*

herba, -ae, f. – *herb* (64R)

Herculāneum, -eī, n. – a town between Pompeii & Naples (17R)

heu (interjection) – *alas!* (25R)

hīc (adv.) – *here, in this place* (5)

hic, haec, hoc – *this, (pl.) these* (15)
hinc – *from here, hence* (61)
Hippocrates, -is, m. – *tyrant of Gela* (12R)
hodiē – *today* (3)
homō, hominis, m. – *human, man* (24)
hōra, -ae, f. – *hour* (17)
Horātius, -ī, m. – *Roman family name* (24R)
horribilis, -e – *horrible, terrifying* (30R)
hortor, hortārī (1), **hortātus sum** –
encourage, urge (56)
hostis, hostis, m. – *enemy; (pl.) hostēs, hostium* – *the enemy* (29)
Hypermnestra, -ae, f. – *daughter of Danaus* (15R)

I

ibi – *there, in that place* (3)
Īcarus, -ī, m. – *son of Daedalus* (30R)
īdem, eadem, idem – *the same* (48)
idōneus, -a, -um – *suitable, appropriate* (+ dat.) (28)
igitur – *therefore* (22)
ignis, ignis, m. – *fire* (26)
ignōtus, -a, -um – *unknown, ignoble* (+ dat.) (49)
ille, illa, illud – *that, (pl.) those* (15)
imperātor, imperātōris, m. – *commander, general* (26)
imperātum, -ī, n. – *command, order* (44)
imperium, imperiī, n. – *command, power, rule* (59)
imperō, imperāre (1), **imperāvī, imperātus** – *command, order* (+ dat.) (56)
impetus, impetūs, m. – *attack; impetum facere in* (+ acc.) – *to make an attack on, attack* (42)
in – (+ abl.) *in, on; (+ acc.) into, onto* (4)
incipiō, incipere (3), **incēpī, inceptus** – *begin, take on* (33)
incola, -ae, f. – *inhabitant* (1)
īnfelīx, īfēlīcīs – *unfortunate* (34)

inimīcus, -ī, m. – *enemy (personal); inimīcus, -a, -um* – *unfriendly, hostile* (+ dat.) (22)
initium, -ī, n. – *beginning, start* (22)
inquit – *he, she, it says* (used for direct quotations) (3R)
īsigne, īsignis, n. – *badge, mark, decoration; (pl.) insignia* (36)
īnsula, -ae, f. – *island* (11)
integer, integra, integrum – *whole, entire, fresh* (64)
intellegō, intellegere (3), **intellēxī, intellecītus** – *understand, realize* (54)
inter (prep. + acc.) – *between* (2); *among (more than 2)* (17)
interficiō, interficere (3), **interfēcī, interfectus** – *kill* (31)
interim – *meanwhile* (28)
interior, interius – *inner, private (compar. adj.)* (50)
inūrō, inūrere (3), **inussi, inustus** – *brand* (28R)
inveniō, invenīre (4), **invēnī, inventus** – *find, come upon* (33)
īphigenīa, -ae, f. – *daughter of Agamemnon & Clytemnestra* (41R)
ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive adj. & pron.) – *him/her/itself, themselves; very* (50)
īra, -ae, f. – *anger, wrath* (28)
īrātus, -a, -um – *angry* (5)
is, ea, id – *this, that; 3rd pers. pron.* (19)
ita – *thus, so* (12)
Italia, -ae, f. – *Italy* (18R)
itaque – *and so, therefore* (4)
iter, itineris, n. – *route, journey, trip, march* (2.6); **iter facere** – *to march, make a journey* (33)
iterum – *again, a second time* (5)
Ithaca, -ae, f. – *Ithaka, island off the west coast of Greece* (53R)

J

jaceō, jacēre (2), **jacūī** – *lie, lie down* (32)

jaciō, jacere (3), **jēcī, jactus** – *throw, hurl* (31)
jam – *now, already; nōn jam, no longer* (11)
jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus – *order (+ acc. + infin.)* (17)
jūdex, jūdicis, m. – *judge, juror* (39)
jūdicium, -īi, n. – *judgement, decision* (39)
jūdicō, jūdicāre (1), **jūdicāvī, jūdicātus** – *judge, deem* (63)
jugum, -ī, n. – *yoke* (20R)
jungō, jungere (3), **jūnxī, jūnctus** – *join* (38)
Jūnō, Jūnōnis, f. – *queen of the gods and wife & sister of Jupiter* (9R)
Juppiter, Jovis, m. – *Jupiter, Jove, king of the gods, husband & brother of Juno* (9R)
jūs, jūris, n. – *right, rights, law* (64)
juvenis, juvenis, c. – *young man, youth* (38)
juvō, juvāre (1), **jūvī, jūtus** – *help, aid* (6)

L

L. – abbreviation for *Lucius*, a Roman praenomen (19R)
labor, labōris, m. – *work, effort, toil* (50)
labōrō, labōrāre (1), **labōrāvī, labōrātus** – *work, toil* (3)
labyrinthus, -ī, m. – *labyrinth, maze* (30R)
lacrimō, lacrimāre (1), **lacrimāvī, lacrimātus** – *weep, cry* (AR)
lacus, lacūs, m. – *lake* (11R)
Lāocoōn, Lāocoōntis, m. – *Trojan priest* (49R)
Latīnus, -a, -um – *Latin; Latīnus, -ī*, m. – *king of the Laurentians* (19R)
Lātōna, -ae, f. – *mother of Apollo & Diana by Jupiter* (9R)
lātus, -a, -um – *wide* (13)
laudō, laudāre (1), **laudāvī, laudātus** – *praise* (2)
laurus, -ī, f. – *laurel/bay tree* (27R)
Lāvīnium, -īi, n. – *town of ancient Latium founded by Aeneas* (18R)

legātus, -ī, m. – *officer, envoy, ambassador* (61)
legiō, legiōnis, f. – *legion* (24)
legō, legere (3), **lēgī, lēctus** – *gather, choose, read* (60)
lēx, lēgis, f. – *law* (23)
libenter – *willingly, freely* (35)
līber, lībera, līberum – *free* (10)
liber, librī, m. – *book* (17)
Libya, -ae, f. – *region in north Africa* (53R)
licet, licēre (2), **licuit or licitum est** – *(impers.) it is allowed/permited, one may (+ dat. + infin.)* (57)
lignum, -ī, n. – *wood* (56R)
lingua, -ae, f. – *tongue, language* (23)
lītus, lītoris, n. – *shore* (30)
locus, -ī, m.; (pl.: **loca, -ōrum**, n.) – *place, location* (1.15)
longē – *far, at a distance, by far* (17)
longus, -a, -um – *long* (2)
lōtus, -ī, m. – *lotus* (53R)
Lūcius Tarquinius Priscus, -ī, -īi, -ī, m. – *fifth king of Rome* (19R)
Lūcius Tarquinius Superbus, -ī, -īi, -ī, m. – *seventh king of Rome* (20R)
Lucrētia, -ae, f. – *Roman heroine* (20R)
lūmen, lūminis, n. – *light* (25)
lūna, -ae, f. – *moon* (5)
lupa, -ae, f. – *wolf* (18R); **lupus, -ī**, m. – *wolf* (25R)
lūx, lūcis, f. – *light, daylight; prīma lūx* – *first light, dawn* (34)
Lycāon, Lycāonis, m. – *king of Arcadia in Greece* (28R)
Lyncus, -ī, m. – *king of Scythia* (10R)
lynx, lyncis, c. – *lynx* (10R)

M

M. – abbreviation for *Marcus*, a Roman praenomen (13R)
maestus, -a, -um – *sad, gloomy* (43)
magicus, -a, -um – *magic* (63R)
magister, magistrī, m. – *teacher, master* (23)

- magnopere** – *greatly* (26)
- magnus, -a, -um** – *large, great* (1)
- male** – *badly* (13)
- mālum, -ī, n.** – *apple* (39)
- malus, -a, -um** – *bad, evil, wicked* (12)
- māne** – *in the morning* (22)
- manēō, manēre** (2), **mānsī, mānsus** – *remain* (12)
- Manlius, -īī, m.** – Roman family name (13R)
- manus, manūs, f.** – *hand; band (of men)* (45)
- Marcus, -ī, m.** – a Roman praenomen (13R)
- mare, maris, n.** – *sea, ocean* (25)
- maritimus, -a, -um** – *maritime, of the sea* (17R)
- Mars, Martis, m.** – Roman god of war (18R)
- māter, mātris, f.** – *mother* (23)
- mātrīmōnium, -īī, n.** – *marriage* (15R)
- maximē** – *very much, especially, most greatly; yes* (12)
- mē** (acc.) – *me (see ego)* (6; 43)
- medicāmentum, -ī, n.** – *drug* (63R)
- medius, -a, -um** – *middle, middle of* (24)
- Megara, -ae, f.** – town near Athens on the Saronic Gulf (11R)
- meminī, meminisce** – *remember, recollect* (perf. with pres. meaning) (17R)
- memoria, -ae, f.** – *memory mind; memorīa tenēre* - *to remember* (47)
- Menelāus, -ī, m.** – king of Sparta & husband of Helen (40R)
- mēns, mentis, f.** – *mind, attitude* (27)
- Mercurius, -īī, m.** – *Mercury, messenger of the gods* (14R)
- meus, -a, -um** – *my, mine* (9)
- mihi** (dat.) – *to/for me (see ego)* (3; 43)
- mīles, mīlitis, m.** – *soldier* (24)
- mīlle** (sing. - indecl. adj.) – *thousand, one thousand; (pl. - noun) mīlia, mīlium, n. – thousands; mīlle passūs* – *one mile; mīlia passuum* - *miles* (48)
- minaē, -ārum, f. pl.** – *threats* (38R)
- Minerva, -ae, f.** – goddess of war, weaving & wisdom (7R)
- minimē** – *least, not at all; no* (14)
- Mīnōs, Mīnōnis, m.** – king of Crete (11R)
- Mīnōtaurus, -ī, m.** – *Minotaur, half-man-half-bull creature on Crete* (30R)
- mīrus, -a, -um** – *wondrous, amazing, remarkable* (25)
- Mīsēnum, -ī, n.** – promontory & harbor near Naples (17R)
- miser, misera, miserum** – *wretched, miserable* (10)
- mittō, mittere** (3), **mīsī, missus** – *send* (30)
- moenia, moenium, n. pl.** – *fortifications, walls* (31)
- moneō, monēre** (2), **monūī, monitus** – *warn, advise* (12)
- Monēta, -ae, f.** – title of Juno as goddess of her temple on the Capitoline Hill (13R)
- mōns, montis, m.** – *mountain* (25)
- mōnstrō, mōnstrāre** (1), **mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus** – *show, display* (3)
- mōnstrum, -ī, n.** – *monster* (30R)
- mora, -ae, f.** – *delay* (25)
- mors, mortis, f.** – *death* (28)
- mortuus, -a, -um** – *dead* (14)
- moveō, movēre** (2), **mōvī, mōtus** – *move* (27R)
- mox** – *soon* (5)
- Mūcius, -īī, m.** – a Roman family name (26R)
- multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.** – *great number, crowd, multitude, majority* (59)
- multus, -a, -um** – (s.) *much, (pl.) many* (1)
- mūniō, mūnīre** (4), **mūnīvī, mūnītus** – *fortify, secure, build* (57)
- murmur, murmuris, n.** – *murmur, rumbling* (17R)
- mūrus, -ī, m.** – *wall* (17)
- mūtō, mūtāre** (1), **mūtāvī, mūtātus** – *change (into) (+in + acc.)* (10)
- Mycēnae, -ārum, f. pl.** – city on the Greek mainland, home of Agamemnon & Clytemnestra (52R)

N

Narcissus, -i, m. – Greek youth (21R)
narrō, narrāre (1), **narrāvī, narrātus** – *tell, relate* (2)
nātūra, -ae, f. – *nature, character, condition* (48)
nauta, -ae, m. – *sailor* (1)
nāvigō, nāvigāre (1), **nāvigāvī, nāvigātus** – *sail* (8)
nāvis, nāvis, f. – *ship* (30)
-ne – enclitic used to denote a neutral question (16)
nec – *nor, and not; nec...nec* – *neither...nor* (19); see also **neque**.
necō, necāre (1), **necāvī, necātus** – *kill* (3)
negō, negāre (1), **negāvī, negātus** – *say...not, deny* (58)
Nemesis, **Nemiseōs**, f. – goddess of vengeance (22R)
nēmō, nēminī (dat.), **nēminem** (acc.), c. – *no one, nobody* (50)
Neoptolemus, -i, m. – son of Achilles (50R)
neque, nec – *nor, and not; neque...neque* – *neither...nor* (19); see also **nec**.
nesciō, nescīre (4), **nescīvī, nescītus** – *not know, be ignorant* (54)
neuter, neutra, neutrum (gen. s. **neutrīus**; dat. s. **neutrī**) – *neither (of two)* (60)
nihil (indecl.), n. – *nothing* (31)
Niobē, -es, f. – legendary queen of Thebes (37R)
nisi – *if not, unless* (52)
Nīsus, -i, m. – king of Megara in Greece (11R)
nix, nivis, f. – *snow* (33R)
nōbilis, nōbile – *noble, well-born; nōbilis, nōbilis*, c. – *(a) noble (man/woman); (pl.) the nobles* (45)
nōbīs (dat. & abl.) – *us* (see **ego**) (28; 43)
noctū – *at night* (5)
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī – *be unwilling, not wish/want* (47)
nōmen, nōminis, n. – *name* (27)

nōn – *not* (1.1); **nōn jam** – *no longer* (11); **nōn sōlum...sed etiam** – *not only...but also* (32)
nōnne – interrog. adv. in a question expecting the answer *yes* (16)
nōnnūllī, -ae, -a – *some, several; some (people/things)* (47)
nōs (nom. & acc.) – *we, us* (see **ego**) (11; 43)
nōster, nostra, nostrum – *our* (26)
nota, ae, f. – *mark, brand* (28R)
nōtus, -a, -um – *well known, famous, familiar* (19)
novem (indecl. adj.) – *nine* (11)
novus, -a, -um – *new, strange, unusual* (7)
nox, noctis, f. – *night* (25)
nūdus, -i, m. – *naked, unclothed* (28R)
nūllus, -a, -um (gen. s. **nūllīus**; dat. s. **nūllī**) – *none, no* (9; 60)
num – interrogative adv. in a question expecting the answer *no* (16)
Numa Pompilius, -ae -ī, m. – 2nd king of Rome (19R)
numerus, -ī, m. – *number, amount* (29)
Numitor, Numitōris, m. – king of Alba Longa, father of Rhea Silvia (18R)
numquam – *never* (27)
nunc – *now* (3)
nūntiō, nūntiāre (1), **nūntiāvī, nūntiātus** – *announce, report* (14)
nūntius, -ī, m. – *messenger, message, news report* (14)
nymphā, -ae, f. – *nymph* (16R)

O

ob – (prep. + acc.) *on account of; quam ob causam* – *why?; therefore* (53)
obscūrus, -a, -um – *dark* (17R)
obtineō, obtinēre (2), **obtinuī, obtentus** – *hold, occupy* (53)
occīdō, occīdere (3), **occīdī, occīsus** – *kill, slay, slaughter* (45)
occupō, occupāre (1), **occupāvī, occupātus** – *seize, capture* (3)

occurrō, occurrere (3), **occucurrī or occurrī, occursum** – *run into, meet* (+ dat.) (58)

octō (indecl. adj.) – *eight* (37)

oculus, -ī, m. – *eye* (30)

ōdī, ōdisse ōsus(3) (defective) – *hate, dislike* (61)

odium, -īī, n. – *hatred* (36)

ōlim – *once, formerly, sometime* (6)

ōmen, ōminis, n. – *sign, omen* (18R)

omnis, omne – *all, every* (35)

oportet, oportēre (2), **oportuit** (impers.) – *it is right, one must* (+ acc. & infin.) (57)

oppidum, -ī, n. – *town* (11)

opprimō, opprimere (3), **oppressī, oppressus** – *overwhelm, crush* (62)

oppugnō, oppugnāre (1), **oppugnāvī, oppugnātūs** – *attack* (13)

opus, operis, n. – *(complete) work, fortification* (57)

ōra, -ae, f. – *shore, coast* (4)

ōrāculum, -ī, n. – *oracle* (28R)

Orcus, -ī, m. – *king of the Underworld* (35R)

Orestēs, Orestis, m. – *son of Agamemnon & Clytemnestra* (52R)

orior, orīrī (4), **ortus sum** – *arise, rise, spring (from)* (62)

ōrō, ōrāre (1), **ōrāvī, ōrātūs** – *beg, ask for, pray* (can take double acc.) (5)

Orpheus, -ī, m. – *mythical poet* (35R)

ōs, ūris, n. – *mouth, face* (28R)

os, ossis, n. – *bone* (Extra Rdg.)

ostendō, ostendere (3), **ostendī, ostentus** – *show, display, reveal* (40)

P

paene – *almost* (22)

pār, paris – *equal, like* (+ dat.) (61)

parātus, -a, -um – *prepared, ready* (18)

Paris, Paridis, m. – *prince of Troy* (39R)

Parnāsus, -ī, m. – *Parnassus, Greek mountain, site of Delphi* (28R)

parō, parāre (1), **parāvī, parātus** – *prepare* (10)

pars, partis, f. – *part, direction, section; in omnēs partēs* – *in all directions* (61)

parvus, -a, -um – *small* (1)

passus, passūs, m. – *pace, step; mille passūs* – *one mile; mīlia passuum – miles* (48)

pater, patris, m. – *father* (23)

Patroclus, -ī, m. – *friend of Achilles* (45R)

paucī, -ae, -a – *few; (noun) (a) few* (24)

paulō (adv.) – *a little, somewhat* (55)

pauper, pauperis – *poor* (17R)

pāx, pācis, f. – *peace* (23)

pecūnia, -ae, f. – *money* (2)

Pēnelopē, -ēs, f. – *wife of Ulysses* (53R)

Pēnēus, -ī, m. – *Greek river/river god* (27R)

per (prep. + acc.) – *through* (11)

Pergus, Pergī, m. – *Lake Pergusa* (in central Sicily, near Enna) (11R)

perīculōsus, -a, -um – *dangerous* (1)

perīculum, -ī, n. – *danger* (9)

persuādeō, persuādere (2), **persuāsī, persuāsus** – *persuade* (+ dat.) (55)

perturbō, perturbāre (1), **perturbāvī, perturbātūs** – *throw into confusion, alarm* (61)

perveniō, pervenīre (4), **pervēnī, perventum** – *arrive at, reach* (+ ad + acc.) (44)

pēs, pedis, m. – *foot* (26)

petō, petere (3), **petīvī, petītūs** – *seek, beg, ask for; attack* (29)

Phaedra, -ae, f. – *daughter of King Minos of Crete* (34R)

Phaethōn, Phaethonis, m. – *son of the sun-god* (AR)

Philippus, -ī, m. – *Philip, king of Macedon, conqueror of Greece & father of Alexander the Great* (29R)

Phoenīx, Phoenīcīs, m. – *friend of Achilles* (44R)

pinna, -ae, f. – *feather* (30R)

plastrum, -ī, n. – *wagon, cart* (20R)

Plinius, -īi, m. – *Pliny*, family name of the Elder Pliny and his nephew, the Younger Pliny (17R)

Pluto, Plūtōnis, m. – *Pluto* (kind of the Underworld) (11R)

pōculum, -ī, n. – *cup* (56R)

poeta, -ae, m. – *poet, singer* (35R)

polliceor, pollicērī (2), pollicitus sum – *promise* (63)

Polyphēmus, -ī, m. – Cyclops encountered by Ulysses (55R)

Pompeīi, -ōrum, m. pl. – a town near Naples & Mt. Vesuvius (17R)

pōnō, pōnere (3), posuī, positus – *place, put* (41)

pōns, pontis, m. – *bridge* (24R)

populus, -ī, m. – *people, nation* (14)

porcus, -ī, m. – *swine, pig* (63R)

Porsenna, -ae, m. – king of Clusium in Etruria (24R)

porta, -ae, f. – *gate* (21)

portō, portāre (1), portāvī, portātus – *carry, bring* (2)

portus, portūs, m. – *harbor, port* (46)

possum, posse, potuī – *be able, can* (+ infin.) (51)

post (prep. + acc.) – *after, behind* (11)

postea – *afterward, later* (7)

postquam (conj. + perf. indic.) – *after* (22)

postrīdiē – *(on) the next day* (11)

postulō, postulāre (1), postulāvī,
postulātus – *demand* (10)

potēns, potentis – *powerful* (34)

potentia, -ae, f. – *power* (39)

potestās, potestātis, f. – *power* (27)

potior, potirī (4), potitus sum – *get possession of* (+ abl.) (59)

praeacūtus, -a, -um – *very sharp* (56R)

praeficiō, praeficere (3), praefēcī,
praefectus – *put in charge (of)* (+ acc. + dat.) (56)

praemium, -īi, n. – *reward* (10)

praestō, praestāre (1), praestitī,
praestitum – *stand before, excel* (+ dat.) (64)

praeter (prep. + acc.) – *except, besides, past, beyond* (51)

Priamus, -ī, m. – king of Troy (43R)

prīmō – *at first, originally* (18)

prīmus, -a, -um – *first* (21); **prīma lūx** – *first light, dawn* (34)

prīnceps, prīcipis, m. – *leading citizen, chief, leader* (23)

prō (prep. + abl.) – *in front of, before, on behalf of* (8)

probō, probāre (1), probāvī, probātus – *approve (of)* (15)

procul – *at a distance, far away* (25)

proelium, -īi, n. – *battle* (14); **proelium facere** – *to fight a battle* (32)

proficīscor, proficīscī (3), profectus sum – *set out, start out* (49)

prohibeō, prohibēre, (2), prohibuī,
prohibitus – *prohibit, keep (from)* (+ ~/ ab + abl.); (+ acc. + infin.) *keep, prevent (someone from doing something)* (27)

prōmittō, prōmittere (3), prōmīsī,
prōmissus – *promise* (34)

prope (prep. + acc.) – *near* (19)

properō, properāre (1), properāvī,
properātus – *hurry, hasten, rush* (6)

propinquus, -a, -um – *near (to), nearby* (+ dat.) (3)

propter (prep. + acc.) – *on account of* (15)

Proserpina, -ae, f. – daughter of Ceres & wife of Hades (10R)

prōvincia, -ae, f. – *province* (28R)

puella, -ae, f. – *girl* (2)

puer, puerī, m. – *boy; (plur.) boys, children* (9)

pugna, -ae, f. – *fight* (36R)

pugnō, pugnāre (1), pugnāvī, pugnātum – *fight* (3)

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum – *beautiful, handsome* (3)

purpureus, -a, -um – *red, crimson* (11R)

putō, putāre (1), putāvī, putātus – *think, consider* (44)

Pyrrha, -ae, f. – Greek heroine & wife of Deucalion (28R)

Pythia, -ae, f. – title of the priestess of Apollo at Delphi (52R)

Q

quaerō, quaerere (3), **quaesīvī, quaeſītus** – ask, inquire, seek; ask of (someone) (+ ab + abl.) (54)
quam – how (in exclamations) (15); than (in comparisons) (37)
quam ob causam – why?; therefore (53)
quamquam – although (10)
quantus, -a, -um – how great? how large?; (pl.) how many? (54)
quattuor (indecl. adj.) – four (7)
-que (enclitic conj.) – and (31)
qui, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) – which? what? (17)
qui, quae, quod (relative pron.) – who, whose, whom, what, which (39)
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam – adj.) (indef. pron. & adj.) – a certain one; a certain, a particular, certain (48)
quidem (postposit. adv.) – indeed (35)
quīnquāgintā (indecl. adj.) – fifty (15R)
quīnque (indecl. adj.) – five (37)
quis, quid (interrog. pron.) – Who? What? Whose? Whom? (16)
quisque, quaeque quidque/quicque (indef. pron.) – each, each one, everyone (52)
quisque, quaeque, quodque (indef. adj.) – each, each one, each thing, every one (52)
quod (conj.) – because (1)
quoque – also, too (1)
quotannīs (adv.) – annually, every year (34R)

R

rāna, -ae, f. – frog (5)
rapiō, rapere (3), **rapuī, raptus** – seize, snatch, grab (50)

recēdō, recēdere (3), **recessī, recessum** – withdraw, go back (35)
recipiō, recipere (3), **recēpī, receptus** – take back, accept, rescue; sē recipere – to retreat (50); to recover (from) (58R)
recognōscō, recognōscere (3), **recognōvī, recognitus** – recognize (36)
recūsō, recūsāre (1), **recūsāvī, recūsātus** – refuse (AR)
redeō, redīre, redīt̄ **reditum** – go back, return (45)
reditus, -ūs, m. – return (48R)
rēgia, -ae, f. – palace (38)
rēgīna, -ae, f. – queen (14)
rēgnūm, -ī, n. – kingdom, rule, reign, throne (11)
regō, regere (3), **rēxī, rēctus** – direct, guide, rule (44)
relinquō, relinquere (3), **relīquī, relicitus** – leave, leave behind, abandon (29)
Remus, -ī, m. – brother of Romulus (18R)
repellō, repellere (3), **repulī, repulsus** – drive back, repulse, repel (51)
reperiō, reperīre (4), **repperī, repertus** – find out, discover, learn (56)
rēs, reī, f. – thing, matter, affair, circumstance, deed (46)
resistō, resistere (3), **restitī, — — resist, oppose** (+ dat.) (61)
respiciō, respicere (3), **respexī, respectus** – look back (at) (35)
respondeō, respondēre (2), **respondī, respōnsus** – answer, reply, respond (20)
rēx, rēgis, m. – king (23)
Rhea Silvia, -ae -ae, f. – mother of Romulus & Remus (18R)
rīdeō, rīdere (2), **rīsī, rīsus** – laugh, smile (8R)
rīmōsus, -a, -um – leaky, full of cracks (15R)
rogō, rogāre (1), **rogāvī, rogātus** – ask for, request; ask, inquire (can take double acc.) (22)
Rōma, -ae, f. – Rome (13)
Rōmānus, -a, -um – Roman; **Rōmānus, -ī, m.** – a Roman (13)

Rōmulus, -ī, m. – founder & first king of Rome (18R)
rota, -ae, f. – *wheel* (20R)

S

Sabīnus, -a, -um – *Sabine*; **Sabīnus**, -ī, m. & **Sabīna**, -ae, f. – *a Sabine* (19R)
saccus, -ī, m. – *bag, sack* (60R)
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum** – *sacred, holy* (21)
sacerdōs, **sacerdōtis**, m. – *priest* (12R)
saepe – *often* (1)
sagitta, -ae, f. – *arrow* (8)
salūs, **salūtis**, f. – *safety, salvation* (24)
sanguis, **sanguinis**, m. – *blood* (34)
sapiēns, **sapientis** – *wise* (37)
sapientia, -ae, f. – *wisdom, prudence* (39)
satis – (n. noun) *enough*; (adv.) *enough, sufficiently* (15)
saxum, -ī, n. – *rock, stone* (30R)
Scaevola, -ae, m. – cognomen of Gāius Mūcius (26R)
scelerātus, -a, -um – *wicked, criminal; profane* (20R)
scelus, **sceleris**, n. – *crime, wickedness; scelus facere* – *to commit a crime* (41)
scientia, -ae, f. – *knowledge, skill* (51)
sciō, **scire** (4), **scīvī**, **scītus** – *know, be aware* (41)
scribō, **scribere**, (3), **scrīpsī**, **scriptus** – *write* (36)
scūtum, -ī, n. – *shield* (13)
Scylla, -ae, f. – daughter of Nisus of Megara (11R)
Scythia, -ae, f. – region north-east of Greece (10R)
secundus, -a, -um – *second, favorable* (+ dat.) (43)
sed – *but* (1)
sedeō, **sedēre** (2), **sēdī**, **sessum** – *sit (down), settle* (24)
semper – *always* (6)
sentiō, **sentīre** (4), **sēnsī**, **sēnsus** – *realize, feel, perceive, believe* (40)
septem (indecl. adj.) – *seven* (29)

sequor, **sequī** (3), **secūtus sum** – *follow* (49)
serpēns, **serpentis**, c. – *snake, serpent* (49R)
Servius Tullius, -īī -īī, m. – 6th king of Rome (19R)
servō, **servāre** (1), **servāvī**, **servātus** – *save, preserve* (3)
servus, -ī, m. – *enslaved person, slave* (9)
sex (indecl. adj.) – *six* (11)
sī – *if* (24)
Sicilia, -ae, f. – *Sicily*, island off the southern tip of Italy (2R)
Siculī, -ōrum, m. pl. – *Sicilians* (28R)
signum, -ī, n. – *signal, (military) standard; statue* (42)
silva, -ae, f. – *forest, woods* (1)
simul atque – *as soon as* (55)
sine (prep. + abl.) – *without* (18)
Sīnōn, **Sīnōnis**, m. – Greek fighter at Troy (49R)
societās, **societātis**, f. – *alliance, association* (61)
socius, -īī, m. – *ally, companion* (16)
sōl, **sōlis**, m. – *sun* (30)
sōlus, -a, -um (gen. s. **sōliūs**; dat. s. **sōlī**) – *alone, only* (9; 50)
somnus, -ī, m. – *sleep* (33)
sōror, **sōrōris**, f. – *sister* (34)
sors, **sortis**, f. – *lot* (62R)
sortior, **sortīrī** (4), **sortītus sum** – *choose by lot* (62R)
Sparta, -ae, f. – city on mainland Greece (40R)
spatiūm, -īī, n. – *space, distance, interval* (55)
spectō, **spectāre** (1), **spectāvī**, **spectātus** – *look at, watch* (2)
spēlunca, -ae, f. – *cave* (54R)
spērō, **spērāre** (1), **spērāvī**, **spērātus** – *hope* (+ ind. stat.) (53)
spēs, **speī**, f. – *hope* (53)
statim – *immediately, at once* (10)
stō, **stāre** (1), **stetī**, **statum** – *stand* (5)

sub (prep.) – *under, at the foot of* (+ abl. w/ stationary verb); *under* (+ acc. w/ verb of motion) (20)

subitō – *suddenly* (6)

suī, sibi, sē, sē (s. & pl.) – *himself, herself, itself, themselves* (3rd pers. reflexive pron.) (21)

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus – *be, exist* (2)

summus, -a, -um – *highest, top of* (25)

superbus, -a, -um – *haughty, proud* (20R)

superō, superāre (1), **superāvī, superātus** – *defeat, conquer, overcome, surpass; win* (3)

suprā (prep. + acc.) – *above, over* (33)

suscipiō, suscipere (3), **suscēpī, susceptus** – *undertake* (53)

sustineō, sustinēre (2), **sustinuī, sustentus** – *withstand, endure, support* (62)

suus, -a, -um – *his own, her own, its own, their own* (3rd pers. reflexive adjective) (22)

Syracūsae, -ārum, f. pl. – *Syracuse, large Greek city on Sicily* (12R)

Syracūsanus, -ī, m. – *a Syracusean* (12R)

Syriacus, -a, -um – *Syrian, from Syria* (28R)

Syri, -ōrum, m. pl. – *Syrians* (28R)

T

tabernāculum, -ī, n. – *tent* (44R)

tālis, tāle – *such, of such a kind* (58)

tam – *so* (modifies adjs. & advs.) (58)

tamen – *nevertheless* (12)

tandem – *at last, finally* (59)

tangō, tangere (3), **tetigī, tactus** – *touch* (63R)

tantus, -a, -um – *so great, so much; (pl.) so many* (54)

Tarquinius, -ī, m. – family name of L. Tarquinius Priscus (19R) & L. Tarquinius Superbus (20R), 5th and 7th kings of Rome

Tartarus, -ī, m. – region of the Underworld in which famous sinners were placed (15R)

tē (acc.) – *you (s.; see tū)* (6; 43)

tēctum, -ī, n. – *roof, house* (14)

tegō, tegere, (3), **texī, tectus** – *cover, protect* (46)

tēla, -ae, f. – *loom* (7R)

tēlum, -ī, n. – *weapon, spear* (8)

templum, -ī, n. – *temple* (8)

temptō, temptāre, (1), **temptāvī, temptātus** – *try, attempt* (6)

tempus, temporis, n. – *time* (46)

teneō, tenēre (2), **tenuī, tentus** – *hold, keep* (28)

ter (adv.) – *thrice, three times* (46R)

tergum, -ī, n. – *back* (28R)

terra, -ae, f. – *land, earth* (1)

terreō, terrēre (2), **terrū, territus** – *frighten, terrify* (26)

territus, -a, -um – *frightened, scared, terrified* (6)

theātrum, -ī, n. – *theater* (28R)

Thēbae, -ārum, f. pl. – *Thebes, a city on mainland Greece* (37R)

Thēseus, -eī, m. – *Greek hero & king of Athens* (34R)

Thetis, Thetidis, f. – *sea goddess, wife of Peleus & mother of Achilles* (39R)

Tiberis, Tiberis, m. – *Tiber, river running through Rome* (18R)

tibi (dat.) – *to/for you (s.; see tū)* (7; 43)

timeō, timēre (2), **timuī, —** – *fear, be afraid (of)* (12)

timor, timōris, m. – *fear* (62)

tollō, tollere (3), **sustulī, sublātus** – *raise, raze, destroy* (49)

Torquātus, -ī, m. – *Roman cognomen* (31R)

torquēs, torquis, m. – *torque, necklace* (32R)

tōtus, -a, -um (gen. s. **tōtīus**; dat. s. **tōtī**) – *whole, entire* (21)

tractō, tractāre (1), **tractāvī, tractātus** – *touch, handle* (57R)

trādō, trādere (3), **trādidī, trāditus** – *hand over, surrender, hand down; sē trādere – to surrender* (55)

trahō, trahere (3), **traxī, tractus** – *drag, pull* (42)

trāns (prep. + acc.) – *across* (11)
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiū trānsitum go
across, cross (45)
tremor, tremōris, m. – *shaking* (17R)
trēs, tria – *three* (37)
Triptolemus, -ī, m. – Athenian youth (10R)
Trōja, -ae, f. – *Troy*, ancient city on the northwestern coast of Turkey (40R)
Trōjānus, -a, -um – *Trojan; Trōjānus, -ī*, m. – *a Trojan* (18R)
tū, tuī – *you* (2nd pers. pron.) (43)
Tullia, -ae, f. – *Tullia*, daughter of Servius Tullius (20R)
Tullus Hostīlius, -ī -īī, m. – 3rd king of Rome (19R)
tum – *then, at that time* (7)
tuus, -a, -um – *your, yours* (2nd s. possessive adj.) (9)

U

ubi – *when* (conj. + perf. indic.); *where* (5)
Ulixēs, Ulixis, m. – *Ulysses*, Greek hero at Troy, king of Ithaka (41R)
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum (gen. s. **ūlliūs**; dat. s. **ūllī**) – *any, some* (60)
ultimus, -a, -um – *last, final* (21R)
unda, -ae, f. – *wave* (30)
undique – *on all sides, from all directions* (25)
ūnus, -a, -um (gen. s. **ūniūs**; dat. s. **ūnī**) – *one, sole, only* (31; 60)
urbs, urbīs, f. – *city* (25)
uter, utra, utrum (gen. s. **utriūs**; dat. s. **utriī**) – *which? (of two)* (60)
uterque, utraque, utrumque (gen. s. **utriūsque**; dat. s. **utriīque**) – *each (of two), both* (60)
ūtor, ūtī (3), **ūsus sum** – *use, employ* (+ abl.) (59)
uxor, uxōris, f. – *wife* (24)

V

vadum, -ī, n. – *ford, shallow place, shallows* (30)
vagor, vagārī (1), **vagātus sum** – *wander, roam* (49)
vastō, vastāre (1), **vastāvī, vastātus** – *destroy, devastate* (13)
vātēs, vātis, m. – *prophet, seer* (41R)
vehō, vehere (3), **vēxi, vectus** – *carry, haul* (53)
vendō, vendere (3), **vendidī, venditus** – *sell* (17R)
veniō, venīre (4), **vēnī, ventum** – *come* (31)
ventus, -ī, m. – *wind* (30)
Venus, Veneris, f. – *goddess of desire & beauty* (39R)
verbum, -ī, n. – *word* (21R)
vereor, verērī, veritus sum – *fear* (64)
vērus, -a, -um – *true* (20)
vester, vestra, vestrum – *your, yours* (2nd pers. pl. possessive adj.) (22)
vestis, vestis, m. – *clothes, clothing* (28R)
Vesuvius, -īī, m. – a volcano on the bay of Naples (17R)
vetus, veteris – *old* (AR)
via, -ae, f. – *street, road, way* (7)
vīcus, -ī, m. – *street* (20R)
videō, vidēre (2), **vīdī, vīsus** – *see* (12); **videor** (pass.), *seem, appear* (18)
vigilō, vigilāre (1), **vigilāvī, vigilātum** – *keep watch, stay awake* (13)
vīgintī (indecl.) – *twenty* (51)
vinciō, vincīre (4), **vīnxī, vinctus** – *bind, tie up* (23R)
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus – *conquer, defeat* (31)
vīnum, -ī, n. – *wine* (10R)
vir, virī, m. – *man, male, husband* (10)
virgō, virginis, f. – *maiden, virgin* (27)
virtūs, virtūtis, f. – *manliness, courage, bravery* (55)
vīs, vīs, f. – *force, violence* (s.); **vīrēs, vīrium**, f. pl. – *strength, power* (43)
vīta, -ae, f. – *life* (1)
vix – *hardly, scarcely* (52)

vōbīs (dat. & abl.) – *you* (pl.; see **tū**) (23R; 43)

vocō, vocāre (1), **vocāvī, vocātus** – *call, summon* (3)

volō, velle, voluī – *be willing, wish* (47)

voluntās, voluntātis, f. – *wish, desire, will; will toward (+ in + acc.)* (44)

vōs (nom. & acc.) – *you* (pl.; see **tū**) (28; 43)

vōx, vōcis, f. – *voice* (23)

Vulcānus, -ī, m. – *Vulcan, god of fire and metal-working* (14R)

vulnerō, vulnerāre (1), **vulnerāvī, vulnerātus** – *wound, injure* (22)

vulnus, vulneris, n. – *wound* (57)

ENGLISH - LATIN GLOSSARY

ABBREVIATIONS: 1=1st conjugation; 2=2nd conjugation; 3=3rd regular or 3rd-io conjugation; 4=4th conjugation;
 abl.=ablative; acc.=accusative; adj.=adjective; adv.=adverb; AR= word used in an additional reading, Term 3;
 c.=common gender; compar.=comparative; conj.=conjunction; d.o.=direct object; dat.=dative; f.=feminine;
 gen.=genitive; impers.=impersonal; indecl.=indeclinable; indef.=indefinite; indic.=indicative; ind. stat.=indirect
 statement; infin.=infinitive; interrog.=interrogative; m.=masculine; n.=neuter; pass.=passive; perf.=perfect;
 pers.=person; pl.=plural; postposit.=postpositive; prep.=preposition; pres.=present; pron.=pronoun; R=word used in
 a reading passage; s.=singular; subj.=subjunctive; superlat.=superlative

Special Expressions are in standard form, i.e., with verb in the infinitive.

A

abandon – *relinquō*, *relinquere*, *reliquī*, *relictus* (3);
dēserō, *dēserere*, *dēseruī*, *dēsертus* (3)
 able, be – *possim*, *posse*, *potuī*
 about – *dē* (prep. + abl.)
 above – *suprā* (prep. + acc.)
 absent, be – *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*, *āfutūrus*
 abundance – *cōpia*, -ae, f. s.
 accomplish – *efficiō*, *efficere*, *effēcī*, *effectus* (3); to
 accomplish nothing – *nihil agere*
 accomplishments – *rēs gestae*
 across – *trāns* (prep. + acc.)
 action – *rēs*, *reī*, f.; *factum*, *factī*, n.
 advice – *cōsilium*, -ī, n.
 advise – *moneō*, *monēre*, *monuī*, *monitus* (2)
 affair – *rēs*, *reī*, f.
 afraid – *territus*, -a, -um
 afraid, be – *timeō*, *timēre*, *timuī*, — (2); *vereor*,
 verērī, *veritus sum* (2)
 after – post (prep. + acc.); *postquam* (conj. + perf.
 indic.)
 afterward – *posteā*
 again – *iterum*
 against – *contrā* (prep. + acc.)
 aid – *auxilium*, -ī, n.
 alarm – *perturbō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 all – *omnis*, *omne*
 alliance – *societās*, *societātis*, f.
 allowed, it is – *licet*, *licēre*, *licuit* or *licitum est*
 (impers. + dat.; 2)
 ally – *socius*, -ī, m.
 almost – *paene*
 alone – *sōlus*, -a, -um (gen. s. - *sōlīus*; dat. s. - *sōlī*)
 already – *jam*
 also – *quoque*
 altar – *āra*, -ae, f.
 although – *quamquam* (+ indic.); *cum* (+ subj.)
 always – *semper*
 amazing – *mīrus*, -a, -um
 among – *inter* (prep. + acc.)
 ancient – *antīquus*, -a, -um

and – et; -que
 and so – itaque
 anger – *īra*, -ae, f.
 angry – *īrātus*, -a, -um
 animal – *animal*, *animālis*, n.
 announce – *nūntiō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 another – *alius*, *alia*, *aliud* (gen. s. - *alīus*; dat. s. - *alīī*)
 any – *ūllus*, -a, -um (gen. s. - *ūllīus*; dat. s. - *ūllī*)
 appear (seem) – *videor*, *vidērī*, *vīsus sum* (pass. of
 videō); *sē ostendere*
 apple – *mālum*, -ī, n.
 approach (noun) – *adventus*, *adventūs*, m.
 approach – *appropinquō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (+ dat.; 1)
 appropriate – *idoneus*, a, um
 approve – *probō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 arise – *orior*, *orīrī*, *ortus sum* (4); *coorior*, *coorīrī*,
 coortus sum (4)
 arms – *arma*, -ōrum, n. pl.
 army – *exercitus*, *exercitūs*, m.
 around – *circum* (prep. + acc.)
 arrival – *adventus*, *adventūs*, m.
 arrive (at), reach – *perveniō*, -īre, *pervēnī*, *perventum*
 (+ ad + acc.; 4)
 arrow – *sagitta*, -ae, f.
 as soon as – *simul atque*
 ask – *rogō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); *quaerō*, -ere, *quaesīvī*,
 quaesītus (3); *petō*, -ere, *petīvī*, *petītus* (3)
 ask for – *rogō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); *ōrō*, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātus (1); *petō*, -ere, *petīvī*, *petītus* (3)
 assemble – *conveniō*, -*venīre*, -*vēnī*, -*ventum* (4)
 at a distance – *procul*
 at first – *prīmō*
 at home – *domī*
 at night – *noctū*
 at once, immediately – *statim*
 at that time – *tum*
 at the foot of – *sub* (prep. + abl.)
 attack – *impetus*, *impetūs*, m.
 attack – *oppugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); to make an
 attack upon – *impetum facere* in (+ acc.); *petō*,
 -ere, *petīvī*, *petītus* (3)
 audacity – *audācia*, -ae, f.
 await – *exspectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)

ENGLISH – LATIN GLOSSARY

away from – *ā, ab* (prep. + abl.)

B

bad – *malus*, -a, -um

badge – *īnsigne*, *īnsignis*, n.

badly – male

band (of men) – *manus*, *manūs*, f.

barbarian – *barbarus*, -ī, m.; *barbara*, -ae, f. (noun)

barbarous – *barbarus*, -a, -um

battle – *proelium*, -ī, n.

be – *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*

be able – *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*

be absent – *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*, *āfutūrus*

be afraid – *timeō*, *timere*, *timuī*, — (2); *vereor*, *verērī*,
 veritus sum (2)

be allowed, be permitted – *licet*, *licēre*, *licuit* or
 licitum est (impers.; 2)

be away – *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*, *āfutūrus*

be distant – *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*, *āfutūrus*

be ignorant – *nesciō*, *nescīre*, *nescīvī*, *nescītus* (4)

be present – *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfuī*, —

be right – *oportet*, *oportēre*, *oportuit* (impers.)

be unwilling – *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*

be willing – *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*

bear – *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*

beautiful – *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*

because – *quod* (conj.)

before – *ante* (prep. + acc.); *priusquam* (conj. + perf.
 indic.)

beg (for) – *ōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); *petō*, -ere, *petīvī*,
 petītus (3)

begin – *incipiō*, *incipere*, *incēpī*, *inceptus* (3);
 coepī, *coepisse*, *coeptus* (defective)

beginning – *initium*, -ī, n.

believe – *crēdō*, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditus* (3)

best – *optimus*, -a, -um (superlat. adj.); *optimē*
 (comparat. adv.)

better – *meliōr*, *meliōs* (compar. adj.); *meliōs*
 (compar. adv.)

between – *inter* (prep. + acc.)

beyond – *praeter* (prep. + acc.)

bird – *avis*, *avis*, f.

bitter – *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*

blood – *sanguis*, *sanguinis*, m.

body – *corpus*, *corporis*, n.

boldness – *audācia*, -ae, f.

book – *liber*, *librī*, m.

both – *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque* (gen. s. *utrīusque*;
 dat. s. *utrīque*)

both....and – *et...et*

boundary – *finis*, *finis*, m.

boy – *puer*, *puerī*, m.

brave – *fortis*, *forte*

bravely – *fortiter*

bravery – *virtūs*, *virtūtis*, f.; *animus*, -ī, m.

bring – *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*

brother – *frāter*, *frātris*, m.

build – *aedificō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)

burst out/forth – *ērumpō*, *ērumpere*, *ērūpī*, *ēruptus* (3)

but – sed

by – *ā*, *ab* (prep. + Abl. of Agent)

by far – *longē* (adv.)

C

call – *vocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); *appellō*, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātus (1)

camp – *castra*, *castrōrum*, n. pl.

can – *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*

capture – *occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); *capiō*, *capere*,
 cēpī, *captus* (3)

carry – *portō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*,
 lātus

carry on – *gerō*, -ere, *gessī*, *gestus* (3)

catch sight of – *cōnspicō*, *cōnspicere*, *cōnspexī*,
 cōnspectus (3)

cease – *dēsistō*, *dēsistere*, *dēstītī*, *dēstitutum*

(+ infin.; 3) certain – *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*
(indef. adj.); a certain one/thing – *quīdam*,
 quaedam, *quiddam* (indef. pron.)

certain, sure – *certus*, -a, -um

change – *mūtō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)

chief – *prīnceps*, *prīncipis*, m.

children – *puerī*, -ōrum, m. pl.

choose – *dēligō*, *dēligere*, *dēlēgī*, *dēlēctus* (3)

circumstance – *rēs*, *rēī*, f.

citizen – *cīvis*, *cīvis*, c.

city – *urbs*, *urbis*, f.

close – *claudō*, *claudere*, *clausī*, *clausus* (3)

coast – *ōra*, -ae, f.

collect – *cōgō*, *cōgere*, *coēgī*, *coāctus* (3)

column – *agmen*, *agminis*, n.

come – *veniō*, -īre, *vēnī*, *ventum* (4)

command – *imperātum*, -ī, n.

commander – *imperātor*, *imperātōris*, m.

commit a crime – *scelus facere*

companion – *socius*, -ī, m.; *comes*, *comitis*, c.

compel – *cōgō*, *cōgere*, *coēgī*, *coāctus* (3)

complete – *efficiō*, *efficere*, *effēcī*, *effectus* (3); *faciō*,
 facere, *fēcī*, *factus* (3)

comrade – *comes*, *comitis*, m.; *socius*, -ī, m.

concerning – *dē* (prep. + abl.)

conquer – *superō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); *vincō*, *vincere*,
 vīcī, *victus* (3)

consul – *cōnsul*, *cōnsulis*, m.

contend – *contendō*, *contendere*, *contendī*, *contentus*
 (3)

courage – *animus*, *animī*, m.; *virtūs*, *virtūtis*, f.

cover – *tegō*, *tegere*, *tēxī*, *tēctus* (3)

crime – scelus, sceleris, n.; to commit a crime –
 scelus facere
 cross – trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitum
 crowd – multitudō, multitudinis, f.
 cruel – crūdēlis, crūdēle
 crush – opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus (3)

D

danger – periculum, -ī, n.
 dare – audeō, -ēre, ausus sum (2)
 daring – audācia, -ae, f.
 daughter – filia, -ae, f.
 dawn – prīma lūx
 day – diēs, diētī, m.; the next day – postrīdiē (adv.)
 daybreak – prīma lūx
 dead – mortuus, -a, -um
 dear – cārus, -a, -um
 death – mors, mortis f.
 decide – cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus (3)
 decision – jūdicium, -ī, n.
 decoration – īsigne, īsignis, n.
 deed – factum, -ī, n.
 deep – altus, -a, -um
 defeat – superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); vincō,
 vincere, vīcī, victus (3)
 defend – dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus (3)
 delay – mora, -ae, f.
 demand (from/of) – postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (+ ab &
 abl.; 1)
 deny – negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 depart – excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum (3);
 ēgredī, ēgredī, ēgressus sum (3)
 desert – relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus (3);
 dēserō, dēserere, dēserū, dēsertus (3)
 desire (noun) – cupiditās, cupiditatis, f.
 desire – dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); cupiō, cupere,
 cupīvī, cupītus (3)
 desirous – cupidus, -a, -um (+ gen.)
 destroy – vastō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); dēleō, dēlēre,
 dēlēvī, dēlētus (2)
 difficult – durus, -a, -um; difficilis, difficile
 discover, find (out) – inveniō, invenīre, invēnī,
 inventus (4); reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus (4)
 disembark – expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus (3)
 do – faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (3)
 drag – trahō, trahere, traxī, tractus (3)
 drive – agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (3)
 drive back – repellō, repellere, repulī, repulsus (3)

E

each (indef. adj.) – quisque, quaeque, quodque
 each (one, each thing) (indef. pron.) – quisque,
 quaeque, quidque/quicque

each (of two) – uterque, utraque, utrumque (gen. s.
 utriusque, dat. s. utrīque)
 earth – terra, -ae, f.
 easily – facile
 easy – facilis, facile
 either...or – aut...aut
 encourage – hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum (1)
 end – fīnis, fīnis, m.
 endure - ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; sustineō, sustinēre,
 sustinuī, sustentus (2)
 enemy (personal) – inimīcus, -ī, m.
 enemy, the – hostēs, hostium, m. pl.
 enough – satis (adv. & n. noun)
 entire – tōtus, -a, -um (gen. s. - tōtī; dat. s. - tōtī)
 equal – pār, paris (+ dat.)
 escape – fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus (3)
 especially – maximē
 even – etiam
 every – quisque, quaeque, quidque/quicque (pron.);
 quisque, quaeque, quodque (adj.); omnis, omne
 every day – cotidiē
 everyone – omnēs, omnium, m. & f. pl.; quisque
 (pron.)
 everything – omnia, omnium, n. pl.; quidque/quicque
 (pron.)
 evil – malus, -a, -um
 excel – superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); praestō, praestāre,
 praestītī, praestītum (1) (+ dat.)
 except (for) – praeter (prep. + acc.)
 expect – exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 eye – oculus, -ī, m.

F

faithful – fidus, -a, -um (+dat.)
 famous – clārus, -a, -um
 far/by far – longē (adv.)
 far away – procul
 farmer – agricola, -ae, m.
 father – pater, patris, m.
 favorable – secundus, -a, -um
 fear (noun) – timor, timōris, m.
 fear – timeō, -ēre, timuī, — (2); vereor, verērī, veritus
 sum (2)
 few – paucī, -ae, -a (pl.); a few (men) – paucī, -ōrum,
 m. pl.
 field – ager, agrī, m.
 fierce – ācer, ācris, ācre
 fiercely – ācriter
 fight – pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
 finally – tandem
 find – inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus (4); reperiō,
 reperīre, repperī, repertus (4)
 find out – reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus (4)
 fire – ignis, ignis, m.
 first – prīmus, -a, -um

ENGLISH – LATIN GLOSSARY

five – quīnque (indecl.)
 flame – flamma, -ae, f.
 flee – fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus (3)
 fleet – classis, classis, f.
 flight – fuga, -ae, f.
 follow – sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (3)
 following, the – ille, illa, illud
 foot – pēs, pedis, m.
 for – acc. of duration of time
 for (conj.) – enim (postposit.)
 for a long time – diū (adv.)
 for the purpose of – ad + accus. of gerund/gerundive
 for the sake of – causā (abl.) + gen. of gerund / gerundive
 for this reason – quam ob causam
 force, violence (noun) – vīs, vīs, f.
 force, compel – cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus (3)
 forces (military) – cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.
 ford – vadum, -ī, n.
 foreign – barbarus, a, um
 foreigner – barbarus, -ī, m.; barbara, -ae, f.
 forest – silva, -ae, f.
 former, the – ille, illa, illud
 formerly – oīlim
 fortifications – moenia, moenium, n. pl.; opus, operis, n.
 fortify – mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus (4)
 fortunate – fēlīx, fēlīcis
 fortune – fortuna, -ae, f.
 four – quattuor (indecl.)
 free – līber, lībera, līberum
 fresh – integer, integra, integrum
 friend – amīcus, -ī, m.
 frighten – terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus (2)
 frightened (adj.) – territus, -a, -um
 frightened, be, be afraid – timeō, timēre, timuī (2); vereor, verērī, veritus sum (2)
 frog – rāna, -ae, f.
 from all sides – undique
 from here – hinc (adv.)
 front of, in – prō (prep. + abl.); ante (prep. + acc.)
 fury – furōris, m.

G

gate – porta, -ae, f.
 gather – cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus (3)
 general – imperātor, imperātōris, m.
 get possession of – potior, potīrī, potītus sum (4) (+ abl.)
 gift – dōnum, -ī, n.
 girl – puella, -ae, f.
 give – dō, dare, dedī, datus (1)
 gladly – libenter
 gloomy – maestus, -a, -um
 go – eō, īre, ītum

go across – trānseō, trānsīre, trānsīrī, trānsitum
 go away – abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum; discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (3)
 go on, be going on – geror, gerī, gestus (pass. of gerō)
 go out (of) – excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum (3); exeō, exīre, exīrī, exitum; ēgredī, ēgressus sum (3)
 god – deus, deī, m. (nom. pl. - dī; dat. & abl. pl. - dīs)
 goddess – dea, deae, f.
 gold – aurum, -ī, n.
 good – bonus, -a, -um
 grain – frūmentum, -ī, n.
 great – magnus, -a, -um
 great number – multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.
 greater – mājor, mājus
 greatest – maximus, -a, -um
 greatly – multum
 greed – cupiditās, cupiditātis, f.
 grief – dolor, dolōris, m.

H

halt – cōsistō, cōsistere, cōnstitī, — (3)
 hand – manus, manūs, f.
 hand over – trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (3)
 handful – manus, manūs, f.
 handsome – pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
 happen – accidō, accidere, accidī, — (3)
 harbor – portus, portūs, m.
 hard – dūrus, -a, -um
 harm – vulnērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 hasten – properō, -āre, -āvī, ātus (1); contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus (3)
 hate (noun) – odium, -ī, n.
 hate – ōdī, ōdisse, ōsus (defective)
 hatred – odium, -ī, n.
 have – habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2)
 have in mind – in animō habēre
 head – caput, capitī, n.
 hear – audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (4)
 heaven – caelum, -ī, m.
 heavy – gravis, grave
 help (noun) – auxilium, -ī, n.
 help – juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtus (1)
 her – ējus
 her/his/their (own) – suus, -a, -um (reflexive adj.)
 here – hīc
 high – altus, -a, -um
 hill – collis, collis, m.
 him, her, it, them – is, ea, id
 himself, herself, itself, themselves – suī, sibi, sē, sē (reflexive pron.)
 himself, herself, itself, themselves – ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive pron./adj.)
 his – ējus

his/her/their (own) – suus, -a, -um (reflexive adj.)
 hold – habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2); teneō,
 tenēre, tenuī, tentus (2); obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī,
 obtentus (2)
 home – tēctum, -ī, n.; at home – domī
 hope (noun) – spēs, spēt, f.
 hope – spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 horn – cornū, cornūs, n.
 horse – equus, -ī, m.
 hostile – inimīcūs, -a, -um (+ dat.)
 hour – hōra, -ae, f.
 house – tēctum, -ī, n.
 how – quam (adv. w/ adjs. & advs.)
 how great? – quantus, -a, -um
 how large? – quantus, -a, -um
 how many? – quantī, quantae, quanta
 human – homō, hominis, c.
 hundred – centum (indecl.)
 hurl – jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus (3); conjiciō,
 conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus (3)
 hurry – properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); contendō,
 contendere, contendī, contentus (3)
 husband – vir, virī, m.; conjūnx, conjugis, m.

I

if – sī (conj.)
 ignorant, be – nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītus (4)
 immediately – statim
 in – in (prep. + abl.)
 in front of – prō (prep. + abl.); ante (prep. + acc.)
 in respect to – abl. of respect
 in such a way – ita
 in the meantime – interim; interēā
 in the morning – māne
 in this way – ita
 increase – augēō, augēre, auxī, auctus (2)
 indeed – quidem (postposit.)
 indicate – mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 inner – interior, interius (compar. adj.)
 inquire – quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus (3)
 intend – in animō habēre
 interval – spatiū, -ī, n.
 into – in (prep. + acc.)
 island – īnsula, -ae, f.

J

javelin – hasta, -ae, f.
 join – jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus (3)
 journey – iter, itineris, n.
 joy – gaudium, -ī, n.
 judge (noun) – jūdex, jūdicis, m.
 judge – jūdico, -āre, -āvi, -ātus (1); arbitrō, arbitrārī,
 arbitrātus sum (1)
 judgement – cōnsilium, -ī, n.; jūdiciū, -ī, n.

juror – jūdex, jūdicis, m.
 justice – jūs, jūris, n.

K

keep – teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (2)
 keep (from doing) – prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī,
 prohibitus (2)
 keep awake – vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
 keep away (from) – prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī,
 prohibitus (2)
 keep watch – vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
 kill – necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); interficiō, interficere,
 interfēcī, imperfectus (3); occīdō, occīdere, occīdī,
 occīsus (3)
 kind – genus, generis, n.
 king – rēx, rēgis, m.
 kingdom – rēgnum, -ī, n.
 know – sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus (4); cognōvī,
 cognōveram (3)
 know not – nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītus (4)
 knowledge – scientia, -ae, f.

L

labor – labor, labōris, m.
 land – terra, -ae, f.
 large – magnus, -a, -um
 large number – multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.
 larger – mājor, mājus
 largest – maximus, -a, -um
 latter, the – hic, haec, hoc
 law – lēx, lēgis, f.
 lead – dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (3)
 leader – dux, ducis, m.
 leading citizen – prīnceps, prīncipis, m.
 learn – cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (3);
 reperiō, reperīre, repertus (4); accipiō,
 accipere, accēpī, acceptus (3)
 least – minimē (superlat. adv.)
 leave – excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum (3);
 discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessus (3); exeō,
 exīre, exīt, exitum; abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum
 leave (behind) – relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus
 (3)
 legion – legiō, legiōnis, f.
 less – minus (compar. adv.)
 letter – epistula, -ae, f.
 lie – jaceō, jacēre, jacuī, — (2)
 life – vīta, -ae, f.
 light – lūx, lūcis, f.; lūmen, lūminis, n.
 like – amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 line of battle – aciēs, aciēt, f.
 line of march – agmen, agminis, n.
 listen – audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (4)
 little (adj.) – parvus, -a, -um
 little, a little (adv.) – paulō

ENGLISH – LATIN GLOSSARY

live (in) – habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 long – longus, -a, -um
 look at – spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 look back – respicīō, respicere, respexī, respectus (3)
 lose – āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissus (3)
 love (noun) – amor, amōris, m.
 love – amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 loyal – fīdus, -a, -um (+ dat.)
 luck – fortuna, -ae, f.

M

madness – furor, furōris, m.
 maiden – virgō, virginis, f.
 make – faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (3)
 make an attack upon – impetum facere in (+ acc.)
 man – vīr, vīrī, m. (male); homō, hominis, c.
 (human)
 many – multī, -ae, -a
 many (men) – multī, -ōrum, m. pl.
 many things, much – multa, -ōrum, n. pl.
 march (noun) – iter, itineris, n.
 march – iter facere
 marching column – agmen, agminis, n.
 master – dominus, -ī, m.; magister, magistrī, m.
 may/be allowed – licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est
 (impers. + dat., 2)
 me – mihi (dat.); mē (acc. & abl.)
 meantime, in the – interim
 medal – īsigne, īsignis, n.
 meet – occurrō, occurrere, occucurrī or occurrī,
 occursum (+ dat; 3)
 memory – memoria, -ae, f.
 message – nūntius, -ī, m.
 messenger – nūntius, -ī, m.
 middle (of) – medius, -a, -um
 mile – mīlle passūs
 miles – mīlia passuum
 mind – mēns, mentis, f.; have in mind – in animō
 habēre
 miserable – miser, misera, miserum
 money – pecūnia, -ae, f.
 moon – lūna, -ae, f.
 more – plūs, plūris, n. sing. (noun); plūrēs, plūra pl.
 (comparat. adj.)
 more (adv.) – plūs (comparat. adv.)
 morning, in the – māne
 most (superlat. adj.); – plūrimus, -a, -um
 most (superlat. adv.) – plūrimum
 mother – māter, mātris, f.
 mountain – mōns, montis, m.
 much – multus, -a, -um (adj.); multum (adv.)
 multitude – multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.
 must (do) – see passive periphrastic, Lesson 62..
 my – meus, -a, -um

myself, yourself, him/herself, theirselves – ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum (intensive pron./adj.)

N

name (noun) – nōmen, nōminis, n.
 name – appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 nation – populus, -ī, m.; gēns, gentis, f.
 nature – nātūra, -ae, f.
 near/nearby (adj.) – propinquus, -a, -um (+ dat.); ad
 (prep. + acc. & stationary verb); prope (prep. +
 acc.)
 neither...nor – neque...neque; nec...nec
 never – numquam
 nevertheless – tamen
 new – novus, -a, -um
 news – nūntius, -ī, m.
 next – deinde
 next day, the – postrīdiē (adv.)
 night – nox, noctis, f.; at night – noctū
 nine – novem (indecl.)
 no (adj.) – nūllus, -a, -um (gen. s. - nūllīus, dat. s. –
 nūllī)
 no (interjection) – minimē
 no longer – nōn jam
 no one – nēmō, (dat.) nēminī, (accus.) nēminem, c.
 noble – nōbilis, nōbile (adj.); nobles – nōbilēs,
 nōbilium, m. pl.
 nor – neque, nec
 not – nōn
 not at all – minimē
 not know, be ignorant – nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī,
 nescītus (4)
 not only...but also – nōn solum...sed etiam
 not want, wish not – nōlō, nōlle, nōluī
 nothing – nihil, n. (indecl.)
 now – nunc; jam
 number – numerus, -ī, m.; great number – multitūdō,
 multitūdinis, f.

O

ocean – mare, maris, n.
 officer – legātus, -ī, m.
 often – saepe
 old – antīquus, -a, -um
 on – in (prep. + abl.)
 on account of – propter (prep. + acc.); ob (prep.
 + acc.)
 on behalf of – prō (prep. + abl.)
 once – oīlim
 one – ūnus, -a, -um (gen. s. - ūnīus; dat. s. - ūnī)
 one hundred – centum (indecl.)
 only – sōlus, -a, -um (gen. s. - sōlīus; dat. s. - sōlī)
 onto – in (prep. + acc.)
 open – aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus (4)
 opposed – adversus, -a, -um (+ dat.)

or – aut; either...or – aut...aut
 order (noun) – imperātum, -ī, n.
 order – jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus (+ acc. + infin.; 2);
 imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (+ dat.; 1)
 other – alius, alia, aliud (gen. s. alīus, dat. s. alīī)
 other (of two), the – alter, altera, alterum (gen. s.
 alterīus, dat. s. alterī)
 other, the (=the rest) – cēterī, -ae, -a (pl.; adj.)
 others, the – cēterī, -ōrum, m. pl.
 ought (to do) – dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (+ infin.;
 2)
 our – noster, nostra, nostrum
 out of – ē, ex (prep. + abl.)
 overcome – superō -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); vincō,
 vincere, vīcī, victus (3)
 overwhelm – opprimō, opprimere, oppressī,
 oppressus (3); superō -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 owe – dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (2)

P

pace – passus, passūs, m.
 palace – rēgia, -ae, f.
 part – pars, partis, f.
 peace – pāx, pācis, f.
 people – populus, -ī, m.
 perceive – accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (3);
 sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus (4)
 person – homō, hominis, m., f.
 persuade – persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī,
 persuāsus (2)
 pitch (camp) – pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (3)
 place (noun) – locus, -ī, m.; loca, -ōrum, n. pl.
 place – pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (3)
 plan – cōnsilium, -ī, n.
 pleasant – dulcis, dulce
 pleasing – gratus, -a, -um (+ dat.)
 power – potestās, potestātis, f.; potentia, -ae, f.
 powerful – potēns, potentis
 praise – laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 prepare – parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 present, be – adsum, adesse, adfuī, —
 preserve – servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 prevent – prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus
 (2)
 prohibit (from) – prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī,
 prohibitus (+ā/ab + abl.; 2)
 promise – prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmīsī, prōmissus
 (3); pollicor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum (2)
 protect – tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus (3)
 prudence – sapientia, -ae, f.
 pursue – sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (3)
 put – pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (3)
 put in charge of – praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī
 praefectus (+accus. & dat.; 3)

Q

queen – rēgīna, -ae, f.
 quickly – celeriter

R

rage – furōr, furōris, m.; īra, -ae, f.
 raise – tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus (3)
 rather (+ adj.) – comparative form of the adj.
 reach, arrive (at) – perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī,
 perventum (+ ad; 4)
 read – legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus (3)
 ready – pāratus, -a, -um
 realize – sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus (4)
 reason – causa, -ae, f.; mēns, mentis, f.
 receive – accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (3)
 recognize – recognōscō, recognōscere, recognōvī,
 recognitus (3)
 reject – repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus (3)
 relate – narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 remain – manēo, manēre, mānsī, mānsus (2)
 remarkable – mīrus, -a, -um
 repel – repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus (3)
 report (noun) – nūntius, -ī, m.; fāma, -ae, f.
 report – nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus (1); dēferō,
 dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus
 repulse – repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus (3)
 reputation – fāma, -ae, f.
 rescue – recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus (3)
 resist – resistō, resistere, restitī, – (+ dat.; 3)
 respond – responde, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus
 (2)
 rest (of), the (adj.) – cēterī, -ae, -a
 rest, the (noun) – cēterī, -ōrum, m. pl.
 retreat – sē recipere
 return – redeō, redīre, redīī, redditum
 reveal – aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus (4)
 reward – praemium, -ī, n.
 right (to do), it is – oportet, oportēre, oportuit
 (+ acc. + inf.; impers.; 2)
 right(s) – jūs, jūris, n.
 rise – orior, orīrī, ortus sum (4); coorior, coorīrī,
 coortus sum (4)
 river – flūmen, flūminis, n.
 road – via, -ae, f.
 roam – vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum (1)
 Roman (adj.) – Rōmānus, -a, -um
 Roman (noun) – Rōmānus, -ī, m.
 Rome – Rōma, -ae, f.
 route – iter, itineris, n.
 rule (noun) – rēgnum, -ī, n.; imperium, -ī, n.
 rule – regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus (3)

S

sacred – sacer, sacra, sacram

ENGLISH – LATIN GLOSSARY

sad – maestus, -a, -um; miser, misera, miserum
 safety – salūs, salūtis, f.
 sail – nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 sailor – nauta, -ae, m.
 same – īdem, eadem, idem
 save – servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 say – dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (3)
 scarcely – vīx
 sea – mare, maris, n.
 second – secundus, -a, -um
 see – videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus (2)
 seek – petō, petere, petīvī, petūtus (3)
 seem – videor, vidērī, vīsus sum (pass. of videō)
 seize – occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); capiō, capere,
 cēpī, captus (3)
 send – mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus (3)
 send ahead – praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī,
 praemissus (3)
 serious – gravis, grave
 set out – proficīscor, proficīscī, prefectus sum (3)
 settle – sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum (2)
 seven – septem (indecl.)
 several – nōnnūllī, -ae, -a
 severe – gravis, grave
 severely – graviter
 shield – scūtum, -ī, n.
 ship – nāvis, nāvis, f.
 shore – ḥora, -ae, f.; lītus, lītoris, n.
 short – brevis, breve
 shout – clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 show – mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus (1); ostendō,
 ostendere, ostendī, ostentus (3)
 sight – cōnspectus, cōnspectūs, m.
 signal – signum, -ī, n.
 since – cum (+ subj.)
 sister – sōror, sōrōris, f.
 sit – sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum (2)
 situation – rēs, reī, f.
 six – sex (indecl.)
 sky – caelum, -ī, n.
 slaughter – caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus (3)
 slave – servus, -ī, m.
 slay – occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus (3); interficiō,
 interficere, interfēcī, interfectus (3); necō, -āre,
 -āvī, -ātus (1)
 sleep – somnus, -ī, m.
 small – parvus, -a, -um; smaller – minor, minus
 (comparat. adj.) ; smallest – minimus, -a, -um
 (superlat. adj.)
 snatch – rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus (3)
 so (adv.) – ita (w/ adjs., advs., & verbs), tam (w/
 adjs. & advs.)
 so great – tantus, -a, -um
 so large – tantus, -a, -um
 so many – tantī, tantae, tanta

so much – tantus, -a, -um
 soldier – mīles, mīlitis, m.
 some – nōnūllī, -ae, -a
 son – filius, -ī, m.
 soon – mox
 sorrow – dolor, dolōris, m.
 sort – genus, generis, n.
 speak – dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (3)
 spear – hasta, -ae, f.; tēlum, -ī, n.
 speech – lingua, -ae, f.
 spirit – animus, -ī, m.
 spouse – conjūnx, conjugis, c.
 stand – stō, stāre, stetī, statum (1)
 stand before, surpass – praestō, praestāre, praestītū,
 praestitū (+ dat.; 1)
 state – cīvitās, cīvitātis, f.
 station – cōnstitūō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtūs
 (3)
 statue – signum, -ī, n.
 stay – manēō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus (2)
 stay awake – vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
 story – fābula, -ae, f.
 strange – novus, -a, -um
 stranger - barbarus, -ī, m.; barbara, -ae, f.
 strength – vīrēs, vīrium, f. pl.
 strong – firmus, -a, -um; fortis, forte
 successfully – fēlīciter
 such – tālis, tāle
 suddenly – subitō
 suffer – accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (3)
 sufficiently – satis (adv.)
 suitable – idōneus, -a, -um (+ dat.)
 summon – vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 sun – sōl, sōlis, m.
 supply – cōpia, -ae, f.
 sure – certus, -a, -um
 surely – certē
 surpass – superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); praestō,
 praestāre, praestītū, praestitū (+ dat.; 1)
 surrender – sē tradere
 surround – circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus (4)
 sustain – sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus (2)
 sweet – dulcis, dulce
 swift – celer, celeris
 sword – gladius, -ī, m.

T

take possession of – potior, potīrī, potītus sum (4)
 talk – dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (3)
 tall – altus, a, um
 teacher – magister, magistrī, m.
 tell – narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); dīcō, dīcere, dīxī,
 dictus (3)
 temple – templum, -ī, n.
 ten – decem (indecl.)

terrified – *territus*, -a, -um
 territory – *finēs*, *fīnum*, m. pl.
 than – *quam*; abl. of comparison, Lesson 3.1
 that, those – *ille*, *illa*, *illud*; *is*, *ea*, *id*
 their – *eōrum*, *eārum*
 them – *eī*, *eae*, *ea* (**is**, **ea**, **id** in appropriate case)
 themselves – *sūi*, *sibi*, *sē*, *sē* (reflexive pron.); *ipsī*,
 ipsae, *ipsa* (intensive pron./adj.)
 then – *tum*; *deinde*
 there – *ibi* (adv.)
 therefore – *itaque*; *igitur*; *quam ob causam*
 thing – *rēs*, *reī*, f.
 think – *putō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); *arbitror*, *arbitrārī*,
 arbitrātus sum (1)
 this, these – *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*; *is*, *ea*, *id*
 though – *quamquam*; *cum* (+ subj.)
 thousand – *mīlle* (indecl. adj.); thousands – *mīlia*,
 mīlīum (n. pl. noun)
 three – *trēs*, *tria*
 throne – *rēgnūm*, -ī, n.
 through – *per* (prep. + acc.)
 throw – *jaciō*, *jacere*, *jēcī*, *jactus* (3)
 throw into confusion – *perturbō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 thus – *ita*
 time – *tempus*, *temporis*, n.
 to, toward – *ad* (prep. + accus. w/ verbs of motion)
 today (adv.) – *hodiē*
 toil – *labor*, *labōris*, m.
 tomorrow – *crās* (adv.)
 tongue – *lingua*, -ae, f.
 top of – *summus*, -a, -um
 toward – *ad* (prep. + acc.)
 town – *oppidum*, -ī, n.
 transport – *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*
 tree – *arbor*, *arboris*, f.
 tribe – *gēns*, *gentis*, f.
 troops – *cōpiae*, -ārum, f. pl.
 true – *vērus*, -a, -um
 trust – *crēdō*, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditus* (+ dat.; 3)
 try – *temptō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); *cōnor*, *cōnārī*,
 cōnātus sum (1)
 twelve – *duodecim* (indecl.)
 twenty – *vīgintī* (indecl.)
 two – *duo*, *duae*, *duo*

U

unable, be – *nōn posse*
 under – *sub* (prep.: w/ verb of motion, + acc.; w/
 stationary verb, + abl.)
 understand – *intellegō*, *intelligere*, *intellēxī*,
 intellēctus (3)
 undertake – *suscipiō*, *suscipere*, *suscēpī*, *susceptus*
 (3)
 unfavorable – *adversus*, -a, -um (+ dat.)
 unfortunate – *īnfēlīx*, *īnfēlīcis*

unfriendly – *imimīcus*, -a, -um (+ dat.)
 unhappy – *miser*, *misera*, *miserum*
 unknown – *ignōtus*, -a, -um
 unless – *nisi* (conj.)
 unwilling, be – *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*
 upon – *in* + abl. (w/ stationary verb); *in* + acc. (w/
 verb of motion)
 urge – *hortor*, *hortārī*, *hortātus sum* (1)
 us – (dat. & abl.) *nōbīs*; (acc.) *nōs*
 use – *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum* (+ abl.; 3)

V

very (adj.) – *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum* (intensive adj.)
 very much – *maximē*
 violence, force – *vīs*, *vīs*, f.
 voice – *vōx*, *vōcīs*, f.

W

wage – *gerō*, *gerere*, *gessī*, *gestus* (3)
 wait, wait for – *exspectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 walk – *ambulō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
 wall – *mūrus*, -ī, m.; walls – *moenia*, *moenium*, n. pl.
 wander – *vagor*, *vagārī*, *vagātus sum* (1)
 want – *dēsiderō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); *cupiō*, *cupere*,
 cupīvī, *cupītus* (3); *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*
 want, not – *nōlō*
 war – *bellum*, -ī, n.
 warn – *moneō*, *monēre*, *monuī*, *monitus* (2)
 watch – *spectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
 water – *aqua*, -ae, f.
 wave – *unda*, -ae, f.
 way – *via*, -ae, f.
 we, us – *nōs*, *nostrūm*/*nostrī*
 weapons – *tēla*, *tēlōrum*, n. pl.; *arma*, -ōrum, n. pl.
 well – *bene* (adv.)
 well-known – *nōtus*, -a, -um
 what? – *quid* (interrog. Pron.); *quod* (interrog. adj.)
 what (=that which) – *quod* (relative pron.)
 when – *ubi* (conj. + perf. indic.); *cum* (conj. + subj.)
 where, where? – *ubi*; *quō* in locō
 which? – *quī*, *quae*, *quod* (interrog. adj.)
 which (of two)? – *uter*, *utra*, *utrum* (gen. s. *utrīus*,
 dat. s. *utrī*)
 while – *dum* (conj. + pres. indic.)
 who? what? whom? whose? which? – *quis*, *quid*
 (interrog. pron.)
 why? – *cūr*; *quam ob causam*
 wide – *lātus*, -a, -um
 wife – *uxor*, *uxōris*, f.; *conjūnx*, *conjugis*, f.
 will – *voluntās*, *voluntātis*, f.
 willing, be – *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*
 willingly – *libenter*
 win – *superō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
 wind – *ventus*, -ī, m.
 wing (of an army) – *cornū*, *cornūs*, n.

ENGLISH – LATIN GLOSSARY

wisdom – sapientia, -ae, f.
wise – sapiēns, sapientis
wish (noun) – voluntās, voluntātis, f.
wish – dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1); cupiō, cupere,
 cupīvī, cupītus (3); volō, velle, voluī
wish not – nōlō, nōlle, nōluī
with – cum (prep. + abl.)
withdraw – recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessum (3); sē
 recipere
without – sine (prep. + abl.)
woman – fēminaе, -ae, f.
wonderful – mīrus, -a, -um
wondrous – mīrus, -a, -um
woods – silva, -ae, f.
work (noun) – labor, labōris, m.
work – labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
worse – pējor, pējus (comparat. adj.); pējus
 (comparat. adv.)
worst – pessimus, -a, -um (superlat. adj.); pessimē
 (superlat. adv.)
wound (noun) – vulnus, vulneris, n.
wound – vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (1)
wretched – miser, misera, miserum
write – scribō, scribere, scrīpsī, scriptus (3)

Y

year – annus, -ī, m.
you – tū, tuī; (pl.) vōs, vestrī/vestrum
young man – juvenis, juvenis, m.
your – tuus, -a, -um (s.); vester, vestra, vestrum (pl.)
yourself – ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive pron./adj.)

INDEX

Numbers refer to pages. "n" refers to a footnote.

References to the forms and grammar in the appendices (above, pp.263ff.) are not included below.

- Ablative:
absolute, 111-112.
of accompaniment, 112.
of agent, 53.
of comparison, 150.
of manner, 112.
of means, 46, 53.
of respect, 180.
of time when & within which, 183-184.
with prepositions, 15.
with special deponent verbs, 242.
- Absum**, 61-62.
- Accent, xiv.
- Accompaniment, abl. of , 112.
- Accusative:
direct object, 4.
double, 19.
of duration of time, 183.
of extent, 192.
predicate, 73.
subject in indirect statements, 160.
with prepositions, 15.
- Active periphrastic, 201-202.
- Adjectives:
agreement, 3, 31-32, 36-37, 40-41, 90-91, 135.
comparison, 148-149, 153.
declension of comparative, 148.
demonstrative, 60-61.
first and second declensions, 31-32, 35-37, 40-41.
one adjective modifying two or more nouns, 105n.
pronominal, 245.
substantive use of, 32.
third declension, 135, 138-139.
two adjectives modifying one noun, 4.
with dat., 12.
- Adsum**, 61-62.
- Adverbial result clauses, 239
- Adverbs, formation and comparison, 153-154.
- Adversative **cum** clauses, 224.
- Agent, abl. of, 53.
dat. of, 251.
- Agreement:
adjective, 3, 31-32, 36-37, 90-91, 135.
participle, 106.
relative pronoun, 157.
verb, 4-5, 7-8.
- Alius**, declension, 245.
- Alphabet, xiii.
- Alter**, declension, 245.
- Appositive noun, 16.
- Cardinal numerals, 150, 191, 245.
- Case, 3.
- Case endings, see *Declension*.
- Causal **cum** clauses, 220.
- Circumstantial **cum** clauses, 220.
- Comparison, see *Adjectives and Adverbs*.
abl. of, 150.
with **quam**, 150.
- Complementary infinitive, 15.
- Compound verbs, meaning, 62.
eō, 179-180.
with dat., 231.
- Concessive **cum** clauses, 224.
- Condition, future more vivid, 208.
- Conjugation, see *Verb*.
- Cum**, enclitic, 84, 157, 173.
- Cum** clauses:
causal, 220.
circumstantial / situational, 220.
concessive / adversative, 224.
- Dative:
indirect object, 12-13.
of agent, 251.
of possession, 242.
with special adjectives, 12.
with special compound verbs, 232.
with special intransitive verbs, 228-229.
- Declension:
first, 15.
second, 30-32, 35-37, 40-41.
third, 90-91, 93-94, 97.
fourth, 170.
fifth, 183.
irregular, 41, 148, 150, 173, 180, 191, 245.
See also *Adjectives*, *Participles*, *Numerals*. For the declension of pronouns, see the particular words.
- Defective verbs, 239.
- Demonstrative pronouns, 60-63, 76 & see the particular words.
- Deponent verbs, 196-197, 219, 245.
with abl., 242.
- Deus**, declension, 41.
- Direct object, viii-ix, x, 4.

INDEX

- Double accus., 19.
Dum, pres. indic. with, 80-81.
Duo, declension, 150.
Duration, accus. of, 183.
Ego, declension, 173.
Endings, see *Declensions, Personal endings, Verb.*
English grammar, vii-xii.
Eo, conjugation, 179-180, 238.
 compounds of, 180.
Extent, accus. of, 192.

Fear, clauses of, 258.
Fero, conjugation, 187, 238.
Future tense, 17-18.
 1st conjugation, 17-18, 80.
 2nd conjugation, 50, 80.
 3rd, 3rd-**io** & 4th conjugations, 130-131.
Future perfect tense, formation, 207.
 in future more vivid condition, 208.
Future more vivid condition, 208.

Gender of nouns:
 1st and 2nd declension, 31, 35-36.
 3rd declension, 88, 90, 93, 97.
 4th declension, 170.
 5th declension, 183.
Genitive, 4.
 partitive, 191.
 possession, xii, 4.
Gerund, 201.
 uses, 201.
Gerundive, 248.
 uses 248, 251.
 with **sum** (passive periphrastic), 251.

Hic, declension, 60.
 use, 60.

Idem, declension, 192.
Ille, declension, 61.
 use, 61.
Imperative, formation, 18, 50, 116, 119, 121.
 irregular forms, 116, 123, 126, 179, 187-188, 204.
 negative, 204.
Imperfect tense, 26.
 1st conjugation, 26-27, 72-73.
 2nd conjugation, 49, 72-73.
 3rd, 3rd-**io** & 4th conjugations, 126-127.
 formation in subjunct., 219-220.
 tense sign, 26.
Impersonal verbs, 235.
Indefinite pronouns, 192-193, 208-209.
Indicative mood, 9.
Indirect dependent clauses, 258-259.

Indirect object, 12.
Indirect questions, 224-225.
Indirect reflexive, 161.
Indirect statements, 160, 165-166.
Infinitive, formation, 9, 49, 116, 119, 123, 164-165,
 196-197.
 complementary, 15.
 omission of **esse** in fut. act. and perf. pass., 230n.
 in indirect statements, 160, 165-166.
 use of tenses, 160, 164-166.
Intensive pronoun, declension, 200.
 use, 200.
Interrogative adjective, 69-70.
 pronoun, 65-66.
Intransitive verbs with dat., 228-229.
Ipse, declension, 200.
 use, 200.
Is, declension, 76.
 use, 76, 83, 173.

Latin language, 1.

Manner, abl. of, 112.
Means, abl. of, 46, 53.
Mille, declension, 191.
Mood:
 imperative, 18.
 indicative, 9.
 infinitive, 9.
 subjunctive, 219.

-ne, 66.
Nē, in clauses of fearing, 258.
 in clauses of purpose, 228.
 in substantive clauses of volition, 231.
Negative imperative, 204.
Neuter, declension, 245.
Neuter gender, 31.
Nōlō, conjugation, 187, 204, 238.
Nominative, subject, 3.
Nōnne, 66.
Noun clauses of desire, see *Substantive clause of volition.*
Nouns, see *Declension.*
Nullus, declension, 245.
Num, 66.
Number, 3, 7-8.
Numerals:
 declension, 150, 191, 245.

Object, direct, viii-ix, x, 4.
 indirect, 12.
Order of words, 5, 13, 15, 19.

INDEX

Participles, formation, 100, 142-144, 196-197.
declension, 100, 142-144, 180.
fut. act. and gerundive with **sum**, 201-202, 251.
agreement, 101.
translation, 99-100, 111-112, 144-145.

Partitive genitive, 191.

Passive periphrastic, 251.

Passive voice, 52.
formation, 52-53, 72-73, 80, 106, 119, 122-123, 126-127, 130-131, 176, 207, 219-220, 223-224, 234-235, 254.

Perfect tense, 22-23.
personal endings in indic. act., 22.
formation in indic. pass., 106, 123.
formation in subjunct., 254.
uses, 22-23, 87, 100-101, 106-107.

Periphrastic conjugation, active, 201-202.
passive, 251.

Person, 7-8.

Personal endings:
active, 8.
passive, 52.
perf. indic. act., 22-23.
pluperfect indicative active, 176
pres. imperat., 123.

Personal pronouns, declension, 173.
use of **is** for third person pronouns, 76, 173.

Pluperfect tense, formation in indic., 176.
formation in subjunct., 223-224.

Plūs, declension, 153.

Possession, dat. of, 242.
gen. of, 4.

Possessive adjectives instead of possessive gen., 173.

Possum, conjugation, 204.
formation in subjunct., 238.

Postquam, perf. indic. with, 87.

Predicate accus., 73.

Prepositions, x, 15, 46, 77, 84, 157, 173.

Present tense:
1st conjugation, 8, 53.
2nd conjugation, 49, 53.
3rd conjugation, 115-116.
3rd-**io** conjugation, 119.
4th conjugation, 122-123.
stem, 8.
formation in subjunct., 234-235, 238.
historical with **dum**, 80-81.

Principal parts, 9.
irregular third princ. part in first conj., 23.
summary, 57, 101-102.

Pronominal adjectives, 245.

Pronouns, see the particular word.

Pronunciation, xiii-xv.

“PUFF V” special deponents, 242.

Purpose:
adverbial clauses of, 228.
relative clauses of, 228.
gerund & gerundive with **ad** or **causā**, 201, 248.

Quam, in comparisons, 150.

Quantity, syllables, xiv.

Qui (interrogative), declension and use, 69-70.
Qui (relative), declension, 157.

Quidam, declension and use, 192-193.

Quis (interrogative), declension and use, 65-66.
Quisque, declension, 208-209.

Reflexive adjective, use, 87.

Reflexive pronoun, declension and use, 83-84, 161, 200.

Relative clauses, with indic., 156-157.
of purpose, 228.

Relative pronoun, declension, 156-157.
agreement, 157.

Respect, abl. of, 180.

Result, adverbial clauses of, 239.

Semi-deponent verbs, 245.

Sequence of tenses, 235, 254-255.

Situation, **cum** clauses of, 220.

Sōlus, declension, 245.

Subject:
in indirect statements, 160.
omission, 7-8.

Subjunctive, formation of pres., 234-235, 238; of imperf., 219-220; of perf., 254; of pluperf., 223-224.
in adverbial clauses of purpose, 228.
in relative clauses of purpose, 228.
in adverbial clauses of result, 239.
in clauses of fear, 258.
in **cum** situational clauses, 220.
in **cum** causal clauses, 220.
in **cum** concessive clauses, 224.
in indirect dependent clauses, 258-259.
in indirect questions, 224-225.
in noun clauses of desire, 230-231.
in substantive clauses of volition, 230-231.
use of tenses, 235, 254-255.

Substantive clause of volition, 230-231.

Substantive use of adjectives, 32.

Substantive use of participles, 101.

Sūi, declension and use, 83-84.

Sum, conjugation, 8-9, 18, 23, 27, 201-202, 204, 238.
before its subject, 5.

Suus, 87.

Syllables, xiv.
quantity, xiv.

INDEX

- Tenses, sequence of, 235, 254-255.
historical pres., 80-81.
use of infinitive tenses, 160, 164-165.
use of participle tenses, 106-107, 111-112, 144-145.
for formation and tense sign, see the name of the tense.
Time, accusative of duration of, 183.
ablatives of time when & within which, 183-184.
Tōtus, declension, 245.
Trēs, declension, 150.
Tū, declension, 173.
- Ubi**, perf. indic. with, 23.
Ullus, declension, 245.
Ūnus, declension, 245.
Ut, in adverbial clauses of purpose, 228.
in adverbial clauses of result, 239.
in clauses of fearing, 258.
in noun clauses of desire, 230-231.
in substantive clauses of volition, 230-231.
Uter, declension, 245.
Uterque, declension, 245.
- Verb, endings, see also *Personal endings*. For formation and tense sing, see the name of the tense; also *Infinitive*, *Participles*, *Gerund*, *Gerundive*.
For an easy reference of all verb forms, see the Forms Appendix, pp.278ff.
agreement, 4-5, 7-8.
defective, 239.
deponent, 196-197, 219, 242, 245.
impersonal, 235.
irregular, see the particular word.
active periphrastic, 201-201.
passive periphrastic, 251.
Vir, declension, 41.
Vīs, declension, 173.
Vocative, 19, 36, 46.
Voice, 8.
Volition, substantive clauses of, 230-231.
Volō, conjugation, 187, 238.
- Word order, 5, 13, 15, 19.